ETSI TR 145 050 V5.0.0 (2002-06)

Technical Report

Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Background for RF Requirements (3GPP TR 45.050 version 5.0.0 Release 5)

Reference
RTR/TSGG-0145050v500

Keywords
GSM

ETSI

650 Route des Lucioles
F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - NAF 742 C
Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la
Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° 7803/88

Important notice

Individual copies of the present document can be downloaded from:
http://www.etsi.org

The present document may be made available in more than one electronic version or in print. In any case of existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions, the reference version is the Portable Document Format (PDF). In case of dispute, the reference shall be the printing on ETSI printers of the PDF version kept on a specific network drive within ETSI Secretariat.

Users of the present document should be aware that the document may be subject to revision or change of status. Information on the current status of this and other ETSI documents is available at
http://portal.etsi.org/tb/status/status.asp

If you find errors in the present document, send your comment to:
editor@etsi.fr

Copyright Notification

No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission.
The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© European Telecommunications Standards Institute 2002.
All rights reserved.

DECTTM, **PLUGTESTS**TM and **UMTS**TM are Trade Marks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members.
TIPHONTM and the **TIPHON logo** are Trade Marks currently being registered by ETSI for the benefit of its Members.
3GPPTM is a Trade Mark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners.

Intellectual Property Rights

IPRs essential or potentially essential to the present document may have been declared to ETSI. The information pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, is publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: *"Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards"*, which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the ETSI Web server (http://webapp.etsi.org/IPR/home.asp).

Pursuant to the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

Foreword

This Technical Report (TR) has been produced by ETSI 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The present document may refer to technical specifications or reports using their 3GPP identities, UMTS identities or GSM identities. These should be interpreted as being references to the corresponding ETSI deliverables.

The cross reference between GSM, UMTS, 3GPP and ETSI identities can be found under www.etsi.org/key .

Contents

Foreword

This Technical Specification has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

- x the first digit:
    - 1 presented to TSG for information;
    - 2 presented to TSG for approval;
    - 3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.
- y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.
- z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

1 Scope

The present document gives background information on how the RF requirements of GSM 400, GSM 900 and DCS 1800 systems have been derived.

2 Information available

The present document collects together temporary documents of ETSI SMG and STC SMG2 which can be seen as base line material for the RF requirements in GSM 05.05. The documents are divided into eleven groups:

- DCS 1800 system scenarios;
- GSM 900 small cell system scenarios;
- GSM 900 microcell system scenarios;
- conversion factors to compare different requirements;
- repeaters;
- speech codec error patterns;
- simulation of performance;
- GSM 900 railway system scenarios;
- GPRS Performance;
- pico BTS RF scenarios;
- GSM 400 system scenarios.

In the following clauses there is a short description of the documents. The documents themselves are annexed to this report.

A list of phase 2 change requests to SMG2 related documents are annexed to the SMG meeting reports.

3 DCS 1800 system scenarios

There are two documents describing the basis of the DCS 1800 RF requirements. They are:

- DCS 1800 System scenarios (TDoc SMG 259/90, reproduced as TDoc SMG 60/91).
- Justifications for the DCS 1800 05.05 (TDoc SMG 260/90, revised as TDoc SMG 60/91)).

These documents have been derived first by the UK PCN operators and later by GSM2 ad hoc group working on DCS 1800 requirements during 1990. The documents were presented to TC SMG in October 1990.

DCS 1800 System Scenarios describes six scenarios which are considered to be the relevant cases for DCS 1800. The six scenarios described are

- Single MS - Single BTS.
- Multiple MSs - Multiple co-ordinated BTSs.
- Multiple MSs - Multiple uncoordinated BTSs.
- Co-located MSs, co-ordinated/uncoordinated.
- Co-located BTSs, co-ordinated/uncoordinated.

- Co-location with other systems.

On each of these scenarios the system constraints related to the scenario are described, the RF requirements affected by the scenario are identified and the input information needed to study the scenario in detail is listed.

Justifications for the DCS 1800 05.05 includes the analysis of the system scenarios to detailed RF requirements and presents and justifies the proposed changes to GSM 05.05 for DCS 1800. In the analysis part the relevant scenario calculations are made for each RF requirement and the most critical scenario requirement identified. The justification part then looks at the identified scenario requirement, compares it to the corresponding existing GSM 900 requirement and taking also into account the implementation issues and finally gives reasoning to the proposed change of the specific RF requirement.

These documents are in Annex A

The DCS 1800 requirements were originally developed for Phase 1 as a separate set of specifications, called DCS-specifications. For Phase two the DCS 1800 and GSM 900 requirements are merged. The main Phase 2 change requests of SMG2 in which the requirements for the DCS 1800 system were included into are listed below.

CR 05.01-04	Combination of GSM 900 and DCS 1800 specifications.
CR 05.05-37 rev1	Combination of 05.05 (GSM 900) and 05.05-DCS (DCS 1800) specifications.
CR 05.08-55 rev1	Combination of GSM 900 and DCS 1800 and addition of National roaming.

Further development of the DCS 1800 requirements for Phase 2 can be found in the other Phase 2 CRs of SMG2, the vast majority of which are valid both for DCS 1800 and GSM 900. The list of Phase 2 CRs of SMG2 can be found in Annex E.

4 GSM 900 small cell system scenarios

There is one document which discusses the small cell system scenarios for GSM 900. The document is

- Small cell system scenarios for GSM 900 (TDoc SMG2 104/92, revised as TDoc SMG2 104/92 rev1).

Small cell system scenarios for GSM 900 uses the DCS 1800 system scenarios and justification document and derives from them the scenario requirements for GSM 900 small cells. It also calculates the worst case requirements based on minimum coupling loss of 59 dB.

The document on GSM 900 small cell system scenarios is in Annex B.

CR 03.30-02 on "Propagation models for different types of cells" gives a definition for a small cell and the typical cell parameters to calculate the propagation loss in a small cell.

5 GSM 900 and DCS 1800 microcell system scenarios

GSM 900 and DCS 1800 microcells have been discussed by SMG2 in various meetings since late 1991. In SMG2#2 (May 1992) a small group was formed to collect together the various documents and make a proposal for the microcell RF parameters. As agreed by SMG2 there should be four microcell specific requirements, namely

- transmit power;
- receive sensitivity;
- wideband noise;
- blocking.

As a result of the subgroup and other SMG2 activities there are three documents which can be used as baseline material for the microcell requirements. They are:

- Microcell BTS RF parameters (TDoc SMG2 163/92);
- Comments and proposals on Microcell RF parameters (TDoc 144/92);

- Revised proposal for microcell RF parameters (TDoc SMG2 ad hoc 4/92).

Microcell BTS RF parameters and **Comments and proposals on Microcell RF parameters** are joint papers giving the microcell scenarios and the requirements. The first one describes the two microcell scenarios, namely range and proximity, and presents the method to derive the detailed requirements starting from the scenarios. The latter document includes some corrections/updates to the scenarios, and proposes the detailed requirements. As described in the documents there are three classes of microcells, depending on the expected Minimum Coupling Loss between BTS and MS. This is to guarantee the optimum choice of BTS transmit powers while maintaining the operability of the system. The last of the microcell documents, **Revised proposal for microcell RF parameters** includes updates to the detailed requirement figures.

All the microcell requirements were collected together and were presented to and approved by SMG#5.

The documents on GSM 900 and DCS 1800 microcells are in Annex C.

The relevant change requests where the detailed microcell requirements can be found, are listed below.

CR 03.30-04	Microcell Radio planning aspects;
CR 03.30-08	Microcell minimum coupling loss for small frequency offsets;
CR 05.05-69 rev1	Microcell BTS RF parameters;
CR 05.05-79 rev1	Alignment of microcell maximum peak power requirement presentation;
CR 05.05-90	Update of DCS 1800 microcell RF parameters.

6 Conversion factors

One of the tasks in ETSI/STC SMG2 has been to align the different RF requirements for the Phase 2 specifications. This was found necessary because in phase 1 some of the RF requirements dominated over others making them almost obsolete. Related to the alignment process it was found necessary to introduce a set of conversion factors to be able to compare different types of requirements measured with different measurement techniques. The original work assumptions were agreed on at SMG2#1 in February 1992 and they were reviewed in SMG2 ad hoc meeting in April 1992.

There are two documents related to the conversion factors. They are:

- Report of the ad hoc meeting on RF parameters (TDoc SMG2 61/92).
- Agreed SMG2 conversion factors (TDoc SMG2 287/92).

Report of the ad hoc meeting on RF parameters describes the process of deriving the conversion factors. In the ad hoc meeting there were number of input papers with practical measurement results of different measurement techniques, and in the ad hoc those measurement results were compared and the average of the results was chosen as a conversion factor. The following conversion factors were agreed on.

- conversion from maximum peak power to average power in a 30 kHz bandwidth on carrier:

  => - 8 dB.

- conversion from average power to maximum peak power in 30 kHz bandwidth:

  => + 8 dB at zero offset from carrier and + 9 dB at all other offsets.

- conversion from average power in 100 kHz bandwidth to maximum peak power in 30 kHz bandwidth:

  => + 5 dB at offset above 1800 kHz from carrier.

On the conversion factor from maximum peak power in 300 kHz bandwidth to maximum peak power in 30 kHz bandwidth no agreement was reached in the ad hoc meeting and hence the working assumption agreed on in SMG2 meeting is still assumed while pending for further validation.

=> - 8 dB at offset above 6 MHz from the carrier

Agreed SMG2 conversion factors lists the above agreed conversion factors and proposes further a conversion factor of + 5 dB for conversions from 100 kHz bandwidth to 300 kHz bandwidth at offsets above 1800 kHz from the carrier.

These documents are in Annex D

7 Repeaters

There are a number of documents describing the background to repeater scenarios. These are:

- Repeater operating scenarios (Tdoc SMG2 29/94);
- Repeater scenarios for DCS1800 (Tdoc SMG2 24/94);
- Repeater scenarios (Tdoc SMG2 25/94);
- Repeater out of band gain (Tdoc SMG2-RPT 20/94).

Repeater operating scenarios describes the many different scenarios for which a repeater device might be used.

Repeater scenarios for DCS 1800 describes two scenarios for DCS 1800 repeaters, the outdoor scenario and the indoor scenario. For each scenario, the performance requirements on the repeater are derived.

Repeater scenarios derives the equations that describe the uplink and downlink performance of a repeater. Co-ordinated and uncoordinated scenarios are analysed resulting in outline proposals for repeater hardware requirements in GSM 05.05 and outline planning guidelines in GSM 03.30.

Repeater out of band gain derives the requirements for the repeater out of band gain and provides planning guidelines when a repeater is in close proximity to other communication systems.

These documents are in Annex E.

The documents were presented to STC SMG2 in March 1994. In conclusion, it was decided that no single repeater specification would serve the large number of repeater scenarios that exist. As a consequence, it was agreed to add a specification for the repeater out of band performance to GSM 05.05 with guidelines for the specification and planning of repeaters in the GSM/DCS bands in GSM 03.30.

8 Error Patterns for Speech Coder Developments

TD 164/95 in Annex F describes available error patterns.

9 Simulations of Performance

Several documents in Annex G gives background information and simulation results of the GSM performance.

10 GSM 900 railway system scenarios

In 1993, the "Union Internationale de Chemin de Fer", UIC, decided to base a new railways pan-European system on GSM technology operating in the 900 MHz band.

In 1995, the CEPT, in recommendation T/R25-09, decided that " the international requirements without excluding national requirements of railways for non-public digital radiocommunication system in the 900 MHz band should be covered by selecting appropriate sub-bands from the designated band 876-880 MHz (mobile station transmit) paired with 921-925 MHz (base station transmit) with a duplex separation of 45 MHz."

During 1996, SMG2 in a two-step process discussed the RF parameters in GSM 05.05 for GSM-type equipments operating in this frequency band, called UIC equipments. Two documents were elaborated for this purpose. They are:

- UIC system scenarios requirements;
- UIC RF parameters.

In **UIC system scenarios requirements**, the relevant system and interference scenarios for UIC equipments are identified and the noise levels allowed and the signal levels arising out of the worst cases are derived, both as regards intra-systems performance of a UIC network and towards other GSM-type systems in the neighbouring frequency bands.

Basing on the former, **UIC RF parameters** discusses all the parameters in GSM 05.05 and determines the RF requirements for UIC equipments, to be in line with the scenario requirements where possible and feasible, or being a reasonable compromise where not. The specifications for other GSM900 and DCS1800 types of equipment are not affected, except possibly where there is absolutely no implications for their implementation.

These documents are in annex H.1 and H.2, respectively.

The resulting specifications were incorporated into GSM 05.05 by Change Request no. A027.

11 Simulation results for GPRS receiver performance

The documents in annexes K, L, M, N, P, Q and W give background information and simulation results of GPRS receiver performance

12 Pico BTS RF scenarios

The documents in annex R give background information on pico BTS RF scenarios.

13 CTS system scenarios

The document in annex S gives background information on CTS system scenarios.

14 GSM 400 system scenarios

There is one document describing the GSM 400 system scenarios. The present document is:

- GSM 400 system scenarios (Tdoc SMG2 190/99, revised as Tdoc SMG2 542/99).

GSM 400 System Scenarios document presents GSM 400 operation primarily in respect of the 05.05 series of recommendations. All relevant scenarios for each part of 05.05 are considered and the most critical cases identified. As a result the present document gives background information for GSM 400 RF requirements presented in 05.05 specification.

The present document on GSM 400 system scenarios is in Annex T.

15 MXM system scenarios

The document in Annex U gives background information for 850 and 1 900 MHz mixed mode system operation. 850 MHz and 1900 MHz mixed-mode is defined as a network that deploys both 30 kHz RF carriers and 200 kHz RF carriers in geographic regions where the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) regulations are applied.

16 LCS scenarios

The documents in annex V gives background information on LCS scenarios.

17 8-PSK Scenarios

The document in annex X gives background information on 8-PSK scenarios.

Annex A:
DCS 1800 System scenarios

ETSI GSM TC TDoc GSM 259/90

Corfu, 1-5 October 1990

Source: GSM2 Ad Hoc on DCS1800, Bristol

Title: DCS1800 - System Scenarios

0 INTRODUCTION

This paper discusses system scenarios for DCS1800 operation primarily in respect of the 05.05 series of recommendations. To develop the DCS1800 standard, all the relevant scenarios need to be considered for each part of 05.05 and the most critical case identified. The process may then be iterated to arrive at final parameters that meet both service and implementation requirements.

Each scenario has three sections:

a) lists the system constraints such as the separation of the MS and BTS, antenna height etc

b) lists those sections of 05.05 that are affected by the constraints

c) lists the inputs required to examine the implications of the scenarios

The following scenarios are discussed:

1) Single MS, single BTS

2) Multiple MS and BTS where operation of BTS's is coordinated

3) Multiple MS and BTS where operation of BTS's is uncoordinated

4) Colocated MS

5) Colocated BTS

6) Colocation with other systems

1 SCENARIO 1 - SINGLE BTS AND MS

1.1 Constraints

Aside from the frequency bands, the main constraint is the physical separation of the MS and BTS. The extreme conditions are when the MS is close to or remote from the BTS.

1.1.1 Frequency Bands and Channel Arrangement (Section 2 of 05.05)

The system is required to operate in the following frequency bands

- 1710 - 1785 MHz: mobile transmit, base receive;
- 1805 - 1880 MHz: base transmit, mobile receive;

with a carrier spacing of 200 kHz.

In order to ensure the compliance with the radio regulations outside the band, a guard band of 200 kHz between the edge of the band and the first carrier is needed at the bottom of each of the two subbands. Consequently , if we call F1(n) the nth carrier frequency in the lower band, and Fu(n) the nth carrier frequency in the upper band, we have

- Fl(n) = 1710.2 + 0.2*(n-512) (MHz) (512 < n < 885)

- Fu(n) = Fl(n) + 95 (MHz)

The value n is called the ABSOLUTE RADIO FREQUENCY CHANNEL NUMBER (ARFCN). To protect other services, channels 512 and 885 will not normally be used, except for local arrangements.

1.1.2 Proximity

Table 1 shows examples of close proximity scenarios in urban and rural environments. Different antenna heights are considered; 15 m high antennas are assumed to have lower gain (10 dBi) than 30 m high antennas (18 dBi).

Table 1: Worst case proximity scenarios

	Rural		Urban		
		Building [1]	Street	Building [1]	Street
BTS height, H_b (m)	20	15	15	30	30
MS height, H_m (m)	1.5	15	1.5	20	1.5
Horizontal separation (m) [4]	30	30	15	60	15
BTS antenna gain, G_b (dB) [2]	18	10	10	18	18
BTS antenna gain, G'_b (dB) [3]	0	10	2	13	0
MS antenna gain, G_m (dB)	0	0	0	0	0
Path loss into building (dB)		6		6	
Cable/Connector Loss (dB)	2	2	2	2	2
Body Loss (dB)	1	1	1	1	1
Path loss - antenna gain (dB)	71	66	65	69	71

Notes: 1) Handset at height H_m in building

2) Bore-sight gain

3) Gain in direction of MS

4) Horizontal separation between MS and BTS

Path loss is assumed to be free space i.e. 37.5 + 20 log d(m) dB, where d is the length of the sloping line connecting the transmit and receive antennas.

These examples suggest that the worst (ie lowest) coupling loss occurs in urban areas where the MS is in a street below the BTS. The coupling loss is then 65dB. The coupling loss is defined as that between the transmit and receive antenna connectors.

1.1.3 Range

Table 2 shows examples of range scenarios. The ranges quoted are the maximum anticipated for DCS1800 operation. In rural areas, this implies relatively flat terrain with little foliage loss. In urban areas, up to 1 km cells should be supported. In each case, an allowance must be made for in-building penetration loss. The figures shown are examples of those needed to achieve these cell sizes. In many situations, however, smaller cells may be used depending on the local conditions of terrain and traffic demand.

Table 2: Worst case range scenarios

	Rural	Urban
BTS height, H_b (m)	60	50
MS height, H_m (m)	1.5	1.5
BTS antenna gain, G_b (dB)	18	18
MS antenna gain, G_m (dB)	0	0
Path loss into building (dB)	[10]	[15]
Target range (km)	8	1

1.2 05.05 Paragraphs Affected

Paragraph	Title
2	Frequency bands and channel arrangement
4.1.	Output power
6.1.	Nominal error rates (maximum receiver levels)
6.2.	Reference sensitivity level

1.3 Inputs needed

Working assumptions

Propagation model	Hata model (down to 1 km)
	Free space (up to [200] m maximum)
Log normal shadow margin	[6] dB
Building penetration loss	- urban [15] dB
	- rural [10] dB
External noise (continuous and impulsive)	Negligible
MS noise figure:	[12] dB
BTS noise figure:	[8] dB
E_c/N_o:	6 dB + 2 dB (implementation margin)
Location probability, P_s:	75% at cell boundary
Implementation losses	

Body loss	[3] dB (typical)

2 SCENARIO 2 - MULTIPLE MS AND BTS, COORDINATED

Coordinated operation is assumed ie BTS's belong to same PLMN. Colocated MS's and colocated BTS's are dealt with in Scenarios 4 and 5, respectively.

2.1 Constraints

The constraints are the same as those for scenario 1.

2.2 05.05 paragraphs affected

Paragraph	Title
4.1.	Adaptive power control
	- reduces co- and adjacent- channel interference
	- controls near/far effect for multiple MS's to same BTS
4.2.	Output RF spectrum
	- to limit adjacent channel interference
4.3.	Spurious emissions (in-band)
	- near/far effect to same BTS
	- see Fig 2.1.
4.5.	Output level dynamic operation
	- near/far effect to same BTS
	- required limits comparable with spurious
4.7.1.	Intermodulation attenuation, BTS
	- see Fig 2.2.
4.7.2.	Intra BTS intermodulation attenuation
	- see Fig 2.3.
5.1.	Blocking, in-band
	- near/far effect
6.3.	Reference interference level

2.3 Inputs needed

Target Cluster size Assume 9 cell , i.e. 3 site, 120 degree sectored

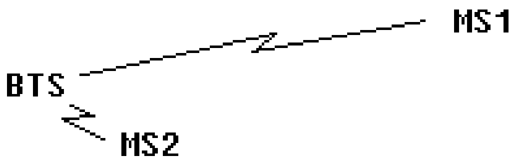
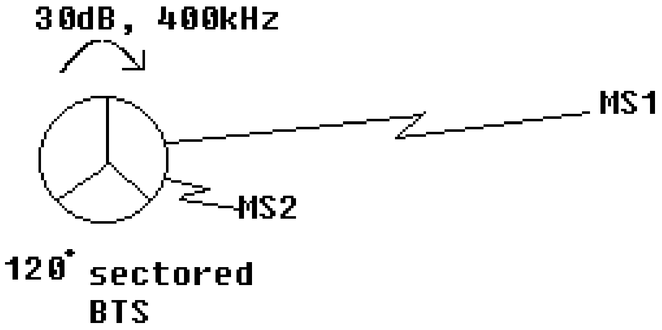


Fig 2.1: Near/far effect



3 cell, 120 degree sectored BTS.

400 kHz channel separation between

sectors.

30 dB BTS transmitter/receiver coupling or

transmitter/transmitter coupling.

Fig 2.2: Scenario for Intermodulation distortion

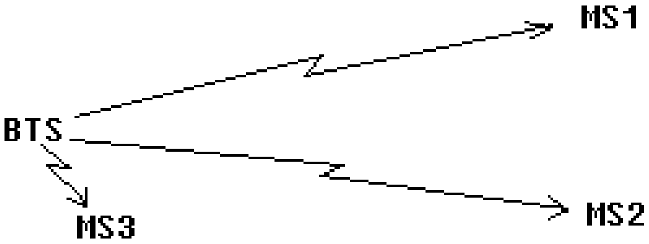


Fig 2.3: Intra BTS intermodulation attenuation

3 SCENARIO 3 - MULTIPLE MS AND BTS, UNCOORDINATED

BTS's and MS's may belong to different DCS1800 networks.

3.1 Constraints

The constraints are as in scenario 2 except that the MS's and BTS's belong to different PLMNS's and their operation is uncoordinated.

3.2 05.05 paragraphs affected

Paragraph	Title
4.2.	Output RF spectrum

4.3. Spurious emissions (in-band, up and down links)

- near/far effect to same BTS, see Fig 3.1

4.5. Output level dynamic operation

- near/far effect to same BTS

4.7 Intermodulation

See Fig 3.2

5.1. Blocking, in-band, up and down links

See Fig 3.1.

5.2. Intermodulation, in-band

See Fig 3.2.

5.3. Spurious response rejection

3.3 Inputs needed

Minimum frequency separation of carriers in BTS; assume 400kHz as for cluster size of 9.

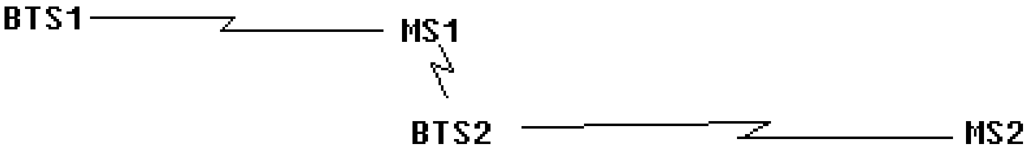
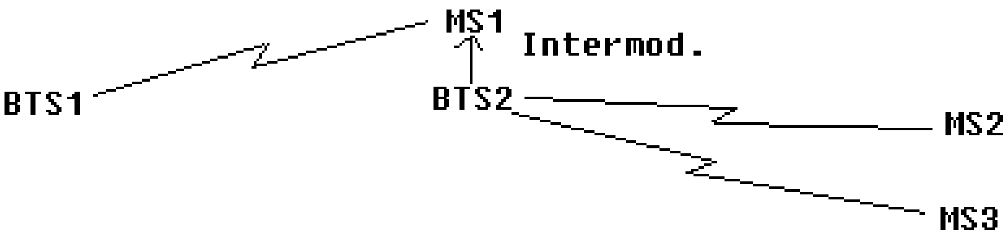
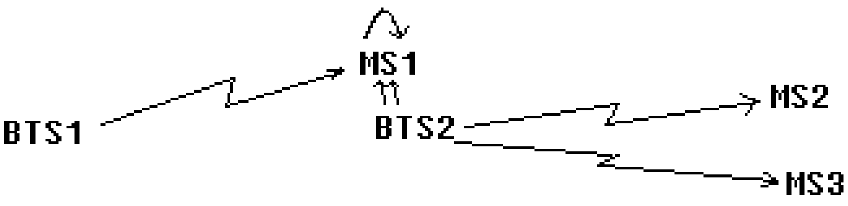


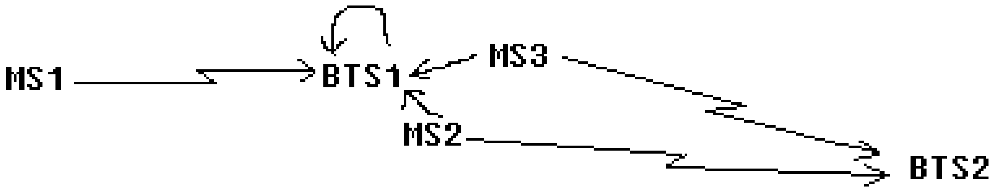
Figure 3.1: Blocking and Spurious





BTS1 and BTS2 belong to different PLMN's

MS1 affiliated to BTS1 PLMN; MS2 and MS3 affiliated to BTS2 PLMN



Intermodulation products in BTS1 receiver

Fig 3.2: Intermodulation

4 SCENARIO 4 - COLOCATED MS

Colocated MS which may be served by BTS from different networks ie MS's not synchronised.

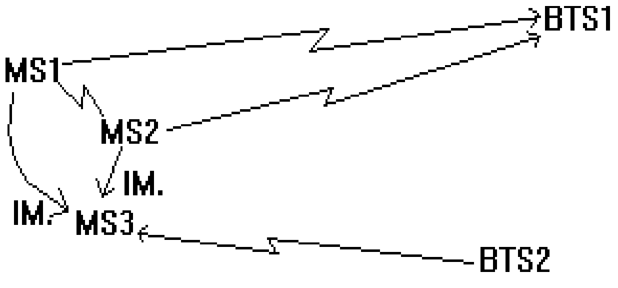
4.1 Constraints

Minimum separation of MS	1 m
Guard band between up and down links	20 MHz
Bandwidth of up and downlink bands	75 MHz.

4.2 05.05 paragraphs affected

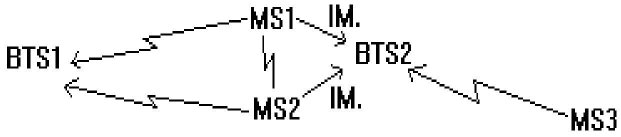
Paragraph	Title
4.3.3.	Spurious emissions, out-of-band
5.1.	Blocking, out-of-band
5.3.	Spurious response rejection
5.4.	Spurious emissions
[New 4.7.3	Intermodulation between MS]

See Fig 4.1.



Out-of-band intermods; MS1 and MS2 at full power

Received signal at MS3 from BTS2 at reference sensitivity. By symmetry, MS1 will be affected by an I.M. product from MS2 and MS3 whenever MS3 is affected as shown above.



In-band intermods.

Fig 4.1: Intermodulation between MS

4.3 Inputs needed

Additional body losses; assume [3dB]

5 SCENARIO 5 - COLOCATED BTS

Two or more colocated BTS possibly from different PLMN's.

5.1 Constraints

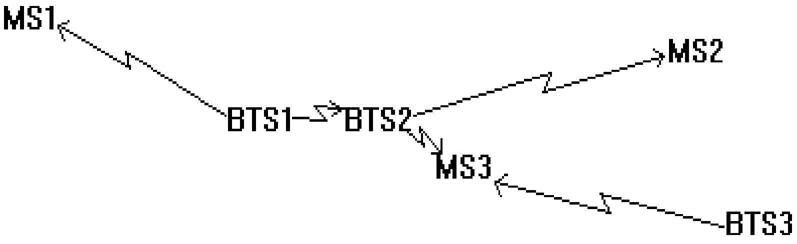
Coupling between BTS's may result either from the co-siting of BTS's or from several BTS's in close proximity with directional antenna. The maximum coupling between BTS' should be assumed to be [30] dB. This is defined as the loss between the transmitter combiner output and the receiver multi-coupler input.

5.2 05.05 paragraphs affected

Paragraph	Title
4.3.	Spurious emissions
4.7.1.	Intermodulation attenuation, BTS
	(See Fig 5.1.)
5.1.	Blocking
	[30] dB coupling between BTS TX - RX
	[30] dB coupling between BTS TX - TX
	[30] dB coupling between BTS RX - RX
	BTS either same or different PLMN
5.3.	Spurious response rejection
5.4.	Spurious emissions

5.3 Inputs needed

None



BTS3 different PLMN from BTS 1 and 2.

Intermodulation products at MS3 receiver.

Figure 5.1: Intermodulation scenario

6 SCENARIO 6 - COLOCATION WITH OTHER SYSTEMS

DCS1800 systems will have to work in the presence of other mobile radio systems.

6.1 Constraints

Operation of DCS1800 mobiles to be considered in close proximity with other systems.

GSM phase 1

GSM phase 2

DECT

Analogue cellular (TACS, NMT450/900, C450, R2000)

and CT2 mobiles.

6.2 05.05 paragraphs affected

Paragraph	Title
4.3.	Spurious emissions, out-of-band
5.1.	Blocking, out-of-band
5.3.	Spurious response rejection
5.4.	Spurious emissions

6.3 Inputs needed

Performance specifications of other systems.

ETSI GSM TC TDoc GSM 60/91

Saarbrucken, 14-18 January 1991

Source: GSM2

Title: Justifications for the proposed Rec. 05.05_DCS

I INTRODUCTION

The DCS1800 system requirements are defined in a paper entitled 'DCS1800 - System Scenarios' (GSM TDoc 259/90) and the parameters chosen either meet these requirements or represent a compromise between them and what can be manufactured at an appropriate cost. Changes to the 900 MHz standard have only been made where there is a specific system advantage or cost saving. Consideration has been given to methods of measurement for the changed specifications.

Section II expands the scenarios paper into more detailed requirements for RF parameters. Section III follows the section numbering of Rec 05.05 and justifies the desired changes for DCS1800. The present document does not comment on simple changes from GSM900 to DCS1800 frequency bands since this change is assumed.

II METHODOLOGY

Unless otherwise stated the results of scenario calculations assume transmit powers of 39 dBm for the base and a 30 dBm for the mobile, both measured at their respective antenna connectors. The equivalent noise bandwidth of the transmitted signal is taken to be 120 kHz and that of the receiver 180 kHz. Worst case scenarios usually involve a "near/far" problem of some kind, the component scenario assumptions (as given in the scenarios paper for "near" and "far" can be summarised as follows.

"Near"	Coupling loss (dB)
BTS -> MS	65
MS -> BTS	65
MS-> MS	40.5
BTS -> BTS	30

The coupling loss is defined between antenna connectors. The powers and sensitivities are discussed in section III of this paper, they are quoted here to enable scenario calculations to be performed. The transmitter power and receiver sensitivity are measured at the respective antenna connectors.

"Far"	Tx power (dBm)	Rx Sensitivity (dBm)
BTS	39	-104
MS	30	-100

Scenarios can involve uncoordinated or co-ordinated entities (MS or BTS) depending on whether they are from the same PLMN. With uncoordinated operation handover and power control are not used in response to the proximity of the BTS and more severe near/far problems can arise, however, co-ordinated scenarios are often more likely spatially and more likely to occur at lower frequency offsets. Unco-ordinated scenarios become critical when they involve mobiles being simultaneously on the edge of their serving cell and close to another operator's BTS, also the transmitter and affected receiver will be in different operator frequency allocations. It is most important that the co-ordinated scenario requirements are met where possible.

The probability and consequences of the various scenarios must be taken into account when choosing the actual specification. For example, jamming a whole base station is a more serious consequence than jamming a single mobile and intermodulation scenarios which involve the co-location of 3 entities are consequently less likely than those which only involve 2.

The remainder of this section outlines the key scenario calculations which affect the choice of parameters for Rec 05.05. Transmitted levels are those in the receiver bandwidth, although in many cases the test bandwidths are narrower because of the need to avoid switching transients affecting the measurement.

1 Transmitter

1.1 Modulation, Spurs and Noise.

1.1.1 Co-ordinated, BTS -> MS (Scenario 2, Fig 2.1)

Since the affected MS is close to its own base we only need to ensure adequate C/I at the BTS.

Max. Tx noise level in Rx bandwidth = [BTS power] - [Power control range] - [C/I margin] - [Multiple interferers margin] = 39 - 30 - 9 -10 = **-10 dBm**.

(BTS dynamic power control is optional, in the worst case it will be employed on the link to the affected MS but the other link will be at full power).

1.1.2 Uncoordinated, BTS -> MS (Scenario 3, Fig 3.1)

Max. Tx. level of **noise** in Rx. bandwidth = [MS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] - [Multiple interferers margin] + [Coupling loss] = -100 - 9 -10 + 65 = **-54 dBm**.

Max. Tx level of **spur** in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [Coupling loss] = -100 - 9 + 65 = **-44 dBm**.

1.1.3 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> BTS (Scenarios 2 & 3, Figs 2.1 &3.1)

Max. Tx level in Rx bandwidth = [BTS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [Coupling loss] = -104 - 9 +65 = **-48 dBm**.

Although the absolute spec. is the same the MS may find it easier to meet scenario 2 because it will be powered down.

1.1.4 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS->MS (Scenario 4)

Max Tx level in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [Coupling loss] = -100 - 9 + 40.5 = **-68.5 dBm**

1.1.5 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS->BTS (Scenario 5)

Max Tx level **noise** in Rx bandwidth= [BTS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] - [Multiple interferers margin] + [Coupling loss] = -104 - 9 - 10 + 30 = **-93 dBm**

1.2 Switching Transients

The peak level of transients in a 5 pole synchronously tuned measurement filter of bandwidth 100 kHz simulates their effect on the receiver. The transients only effect a few bits per timeslot and have approximately 20 dB less effect than continuous interference. Their peak level falls off at 20 dB decade both with increasing frequency offset and measurement bandwidth.

1.2.1 Uncoordinated MS -> BTS (Scenario 3, Fig 3.1)

Max. peak level in effective Rx BW at MS = [Base sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [Coupling loss] + [Transient margin] = -104 - 9 +65 + 20 = **-28 dBm**

1.2.2 Uncoordinated BTS -> MS (Scenario 3, Fig 3.1)

Max. peak level in effective Rx BW at BTS = [MS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [Coupling loss] + [Transient margin] = -100 - 9 + 65 + 20 = **-24 dBm**

1.3 Intermodulation

1.3.1 Co-ordinated, BTS -> MS (Scenario 2 , Fig 2.2 & 2 .3)

(Level of input signal 30 dB below wanted transmission).

Required IM attenuation in BTS = [C/I margin] + [BTS power control range] + [margin for other IMs] = 9 + 30 + 3 = **42 dB**

1.3.2 Uncoordinated, BTS ->MS (Scenario 3, Fig 3.2 top)

(Level of input signal 30 dB below wanted transmission).

Required IM attenuation in BTS = [BTS power] - {[Max. allowed level at MS1] + [coupling loss BTS2->MS1]} = 39 - {{-100 - 9 - 3} + 65} = **86 dB**

1.3.3 Uncoordinated, MS&MS-> BTS (Scenario 4, Fig 4.1 bottom)

(Level of input signal 40.5 dB below wanted transmission).

Required IM attenuation in MS = [MS power] - {[Max. allowed level at BTS2] + [coupling loss MS->BTS2]} = 30 - {{-104 - 9 - 3} + 65} = **81 dB**

1.3.4 Uncoordinated MS&MS-> MS (Scenario 4, Fig 4.1 top)

(Level of input signal 40.5 dB below wanted transmission).

Required IM attenuation in MS = [MS power] - {[Max. allowed level at MS3] + [coupling loss MS->MS3]} = 30 - {{-100 - 9 - 3} + 40.5} = **101.5 dB**

2 Receiver

2.1 Blocking

2.1.1 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS-> MS (Scenario 2&3, Fig 2.1 & Fig 3.1)

Max. level at MS receiver = [BTS power] + [Multiple interferers margin] - [Coupling loss] = 39 + 10 - 65 = **-16 dBm**

2.1.2 Co-ordinated MS-> BTS (Scenario 2, Fig 2.1)

Max level at BTS receiver = [MS power] - [Power control range] - [Coupling loss] =

30 - 20 - 65 = **-55 dBm**

2.1.3 Uncoordinated MS-> BTS (Scenario 3, Fig 3.1)

Max level at BTS receiver = [MS power] - [Coupling loss] = 30 - 65 = **-35 dBm**

2.1.4 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS-> MS (Scenario 4)

Max. level at MS receiver = [MS power] - [Coupling loss] = 30 - 40.5 = **-10.5 dBm**

2.1.5 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS-> BTS (Scenario 5)

Max. level at BTS receiver = [BTS power] + [Multiple interferers margin] - [Coupling loss] = 39 +10 - 30 = **19 dBm**

2.2 Intermodulation

2.2.1 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS-> MS (Scenarios 2 & 3, Fig 3.2 middle)

Max. received level at MS1 = [BTS power] - [Coupling loss BTS2->MS1] + [Margin for other IMs] = 39 - 65 + 3 = **-23 dBm**

Required IM attenuation in MS is 42 dB for scenario 2 and 86 dB for scenario 3. The Rec. 05.05 section 5.2 test simulates scenario 3.

2.2.2 Co-ordinated MS & MS -> BTS (Scenario 4)

Max. received level at BTS1 = [MS power] - [MS power control range] - [Coupling loss MS-> BTS1] + [Margin for other IMs] = 30 - 20 - 65 + 3 = **-52 dBm**

2.2.3 Uncoordinated MS & MS -> BTS (Scenario 4, Fig 3.2 lower)

Max. received level at BTS1 = [MS power] - [Coupling loss MS-> BTS1] + [Margin for other IM's] = 30 - 65 + 3 = **-32 dBm**

2.3 Maximum level

2.3.1 Co-ordinated MS -> BTS (Scenario 1)

Max level at BTS = [MS power] - [Coupling loss] = 30 - 65 = **-35 dBm.**

(The BTS must be capable of decoding the RACH which is at full power).

2.3.2 Co-ordinated BTS -> MS (Scenario 1)

Max level at MS = [BTS power] - [Coupling loss] = 39 - 65 = **-26 dBm.**

(BTS dynamic power control is optional, in the worst case it will not be employed, also the MS must be capable of decoding the BCCH carrier).

III JUSTIFICATIONS

1 SCOPE

2 FREQUENCY BANDS AND CHANNEL ARRANGEMENT:

The up and downlink frequencies have been changed to cover the 1.8 GHz band. The 374 carrier frequencies have been assigned ARFCNs starting at 512 .

3 REFERENCE CONFIGURATION:

4 TRANSMITTER CHARACTERISTICS:

4.1 Output power:

4.1.1 Mobile Station:

MS power classes of 1 and ¼W have been chosen for DCS1800 defined in the same way as for GSM900. With a 30 m antenna height Hata's model predicts that the higher MS power class will not quite meet the target ranges given in the system scenarios paper both for urban and rural areas. The requirement for a cheap, small, low power handset is also an important constraint. It is felt that the chosen power classes represent a reasonable compromise between these conflicting requirements.

A 20 dB power control range has been chosen for both classes of mobile since it is believed that this will give most of the available improvement in uplink co-channel interference.

Since the chosen power classes and hence power control levels are even numbers in dBm they will not fit into the existing numbering scheme, so a new one has been used. These numbers are only of editorial significance.

The absolute tolerance on power control levels below 13 dBm has been increased by

1 dB because of manufacturers' concerns about implementation.

4.1.2 Base Station:

Following GSM 900, the BTS power classes are specified at the combiner input. In order to provide the operator some flexibility four power classes have been specified in the range 34 to 43 dBm. In fact the four lowest power classes from GSM 900 have been retained although the numbering has been changed. The 39 dBm BTS power measured at the antenna connector might typically match a 30 dBm mobile.

The tolerance on the BTS static power control step size has been relaxed to simplify implementation, control of the BTS power to an accuracy of less than 1dB was felt to be unnecessary.

The penultimate paragraph has been reworded because a class 1 mobile no longer has 15 power steps.

4.2 Output RF spectrum:

The BTS is not tested in frequency hopping mode. If the BTS uses baseband frequency hopping then it would add little to test in FH mode; if it uses RF hopping then the test will be complicated by permissible intermodulation products (see section 4.7) from BTSs which do not de-activate unallocated timeslots.

4.2.1 Spectrum due to the modulation:

The relaxation for MSs with integral antennas has been removed.

The measurement has been extended to cover the whole transmit band and beyond 1800 kHz from carrier measurements are only taken on DCS1800 carrier frequencies using a 100 kHz bandwidth. This technique still avoids permissible switching transients, is fairly quick and closely reflects the receiver bandwidth and hence the system scenario. It is now a measurement of broadband noise as well as modulation.

The technique proposed in CR 30 for counting spur exceptions in FH mode for Rec 05.05 is also included here,

The table has been split into those parts which apply to the mobile and those which apply to the base reflecting the difference in their respective scenario requirements.

When operating at full power, the table below shows the frequency offset at which scenario requirements are met

	39 dBm BTS at ant. conn.	30 dBm MS
Scenario 2	400 kHz(1.1.1)	400 kHz (1.1.3)
Scenario 3	missed by 10dB at 6 MHz(1.1.2)	6 MHz (1.1.3)

The figures in brackets are the relevant scenario requirement sub-section numbers in section II of the present document.

Exceptions i and ii below the table define the maximum number of exception channels appropriate to the frequency bands tested. For the BTS permissible intermodulation products must be avoided.

Since the table entries are relative, as the power level of the transmitter is reduced, the absolute specification becomes tighter. Exceptions iii and iv stop the transmitters having to exceed the requirement of scenario 3. Further relaxations are permitted at low frequency offsets; for the MS scenario 3 is unlikely below 600 kHz and the requirement of scenario 2 is used; for the BTS, the 10 dB multiple interferers margin is excessive below 1800 kHz and the minimum level is increased by 5 dB.

4.2.2 Spectrum due to switching transients:

a) Mobile Station

The table has been modified in accordance with the new mobile power classes. The transients are always above the modulation at 400 kHz offset and so the table collapses to a single row.

Requirement 1.2.1 for scenario 3 becomes -38.5 dBm in 30 kHz. The current specification meets this requirement at offsets above 2.4 MHz while the 4.2.1 test only meets scenario 3 at offsets above 6MHz. The specification on transients is not the limiting case and need not be changed.

b) Base Station

Requirement 1.2.2 for scenario 3 becomes -34.5 dBm in 30 kHz. With the current specification a 39 dBm BTS meets this requirement at 600 kHz. Again no change is proposed. This figure assumes that "dBc" means relative to the on-carrier power in

30 kHz; a possible ambiguity in the wording has been removed.

4.3 Spurious emissions:

4.3.1 Principle of the specification:

Although 4.2.1 now covers the whole transmit band, the in band part of 4.3.1 is still required to check the behaviour of switching transients beyond 1800 kHz and to catch any spurs missed in 4.2.1.

4.3.2 Base Station:

The protection of frequencies outside the DCS1800 band is unchanged, but the spurious emissions in the transmit band are only permitted up to -36 dBm which is below the CEPT limit of -30 dBm but the same as Rec. 05.05. The same applies to the MS transmit band in 4.3.3. The new base receive band is given the same protection as before measured in the modified conditions of 4.2.1, this meets scenario requirement 1.1.5 scaled to a measurement bandwidth of 100 kHz. The GSM 900 base receive band is also protected but only when the co-siting of GSM and DCS BTSs occurs.

4.3.3 Mobile Station:

This section consists of two blanket specifications one for transmit mode and one for idle mode Specific tests of the MS receive band are also given.

When allocated a channel, the transmit band and out-of-band specifications are the same as for the BTS in 4.3.2. These are consistent with 4.2.1 and the CEPT specifications for spurious emissions.

In idle mode the CEPT specification below 1 GHz is also applied to the DCS transmit and receive bands using a 100 kHz measurement bandwidth, this specification also exceeds scenario requirement 1.1.3 for the MS transmit band. however, the number of mobiles in idle mode may be quite large.

The test of the MS receive band meets scenario requirement 1.1.4 and uses the modified conditions of 4.2.1. 5 exception channels are permitted for discrete spurious, it is rather unlikely that two MS will be one metre apart and receiving at one of these exception channels. Protection of the GSM 900 MS receive band is also provided. The specification is 6 dB tighter reflecting the reduced propagation loss between colocated MS at 900 MHz. The dependence of this test on power class has been removed since all mobiles are hand portables. No extra testing of the MS receive band in idle mode is made because it is unlikely to be worse than when allocated a channel.

4.4 Radio frequency tolerance:

4.5 Output level dynamic operation:

4.5.1 Base station:

This specification only affects the interference experienced by co-channel cells in the same PLMN. The requirement on the relative power level of unactivated timeslots has been relaxed from -70 to -30 dBc in line with the BTS power control range. It is understood that "dBc" includes the static but not dynamic power control.The specification has been extended to cover the whole transmit band because the residual power may not be highest on carrier.

The measurement bandwidth is specified as **at least** 300 kHz due to problems with ringing of the measurement filter just after an active burst has finished.

4.5.2 Mobile station:

The power level between active bursts from the MS affects the serving BTS receiver. The power measured in 100 kHz on carrier will be similar to that measured in the receiver bandwidth which must be less than -48 dBm to meet scenario requirement 1.1.3. The absolute specification has been tightened from -36 to -47 dBm in line with this requirement but the relative specification has been retained. Allowing 10 dB for the peak-to-mean ratio of the power between active bursts if it is noise-like, the relative specification will meet this scenario requirement for a 1W MS.

4.6 Phase accuracy:

4.7 Intermodulation attenuation:

The definition of intermodulation attenuation has been moved from 4.7.1 to 4.7 to make it clear that it applies to subsections 4.7.1, 4.7.2 and 4.7.3. A note concerning possible problems with VHF broadcast signals has been added because these are at the difference between the DCS up and downlink frequencies.

4.7.1 Base transceiver station:

4.7.2 Intra BTS intermodulation attenuation:

4.7.3 Intermodulation between MS:

Section 4.7.3 of the 900 MHz specification concerned the mobile PBX. The mobile PBX is no longer included in Rec. 02.06, there is no type approval for it and consequently the original section 4.7.3 text has been removed. The new section 4.7.3 relates to intermodulation between MS transmitters, an area which was not covered in the 900 MHz standard.

In the proposed measurement, the level of the interfering signal simulates that from a very close MS and the required IM attenuation is to protect MS or BS receivers in the vicinity. MS transmit intermods are covered by scenario requirements 1.3.3 and 1.3.4. If the product lands in the BTS receive band 81 dB IM attenuation is required, if the product lands in the MS receive band 101.5 dB IM attenuation is required in the MS transmitter which produces the IM.

Both these scenarios require the co-location of 3 objects (MS or BTS) with the correct frequency relationship. Experiments performed by manufacturers on 900 MHz PA's indicate that 50 dB attenuation is achievable at all frequency offsets. A tighter specification would require the use of an isolator or more linearity in the PA design. A specification of 50 dB tested at 800 kHz offset was agreed.

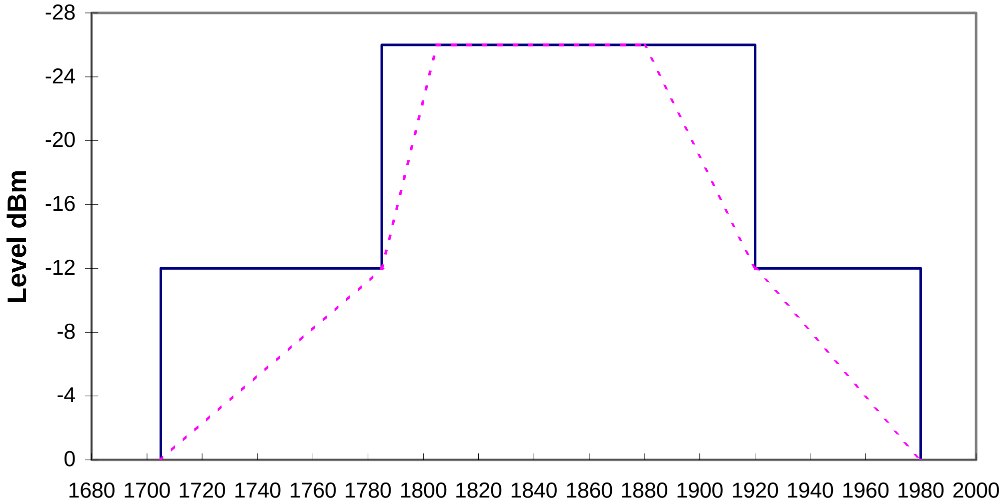
5 RECEIVER CHARACTERISTICS:

A clarification of the of the measurement point for the receiver specifications in line with that for the transmitter has been made.

5.1 Blocking characteristics:

The MS blocking specification close to the received channel has not been changed, this is limited by the receive synthesizer phase noise. At higher frequency offsets the blocking specification relates to the DCS1800 band and the feasibility of the receive filter. The proposed specification is shown below, the dashed line shows a possible receive filter frequency response.

The blocking specification at > 3 MHz offset in the receive band misses the scenario requirement 2.1.1 (-16 dBm) by 10 dB, but the transmit band specification meets scenario requirement 2.1.4 (-10.5 dBm). Power consumption considerations make it undesirable to tighten the receive band specification. The outside the DCS1800 band the 0 dBm specification has been retained. The combination of these proposals amounts to a filter specification over the MS receive band as shown below.



The BTS blocking requirement has been significantly relaxed because the MS power classes are lower. Scenario requirement 2.1.2 is -55 dBm which considers blocking from the bases own MS's. Requirement 2.1.3 is -35 dBm which is for mobiles from other operators. The proposal meets the scenario requirements even at 600 kHz offset and exceeds it by 10 dB beyond 800 kHz.

The consequence of failing to meet this scenario is that the whole base station is blocked. For this reason it is desirable for the base station to exceed the scenario requirement if possible.

The out-of-band specification has not been changed, although it does not meet scenario requirement 2.1.5 (19 dBm). This is because the 30 dB coupling loss assumption between base stations is rather pessimistic, it corresponds to two 18 dBi antennas on boresight 17 m apart. Under these circumstances, operators may need to adopt specific mutual arrangements (eg. extra operator specific receive filters) which need not form part of the DCS1800 standard.

5.2 Intermodulation characteristics:

The 900 MHz standard for handportables limits the maximum level to -49 dBm. Any tightening of this specification will increase the power consumption of the receiver. Since DCS1800 is designed for handportables this figure is now applied to all MSs. The proposed level of -49 dBm for the MS fails to meet scenario requirement 2.2.1 by

23 dB, but the only consequence is that the MS is de-sensed when close to a BTS with the appropriate transmitters active.

The worst case for BTS receiver IMs is when two MSs approach the base, the scenario requirement is covered in sections 2.2.2 & 2.2.3 and is -55 dBm for co-ordinated mobiles and -35 dBm for uncoordinated.

Again -49 dBm has been proposed since the probability of the uncoordinated scenario is low both spatially and spectrally. If the coupling loss between both MSs and the BTS increases by 1dB the level of a third order IM product will reduce by 3 dB, thus if the coupling loss assumption between MS and BTS is increased by 5 dB to 70 dB then the scenario would be met.

A note concerning the VHF broadcast problem has been added as in 4.7 for transmiiter intermodulation.

5.3 Spurious response rejection:

This section concerns exceptions to the blocking specification due to spurs in the receive synthesizer and mixer causing spurious responses. The numbers of exception channels has been doubled to reflect the wider receive band.For the BTS the in-band blocking specification can cover frequency offsets of

Ý 95 MHz depending on the receive frequency and including the 20 MHz extension of the receive band defined in section 5.1. Thus the boundary between parts a and b of the specification has been moved from 45 to 95 MHz because the receive band is now 50 MHz wider.

Following the above logic the breakpoint between parts a and b for the MS should occur at -95 and +115 MHz but in the interests of simplicity the same breakpoint is proposed as for the BTS.

5.4 Spurious emissions:

Since the MS receiver spurious emissions are covered by the idle mode aspect of 4.3.3 this section now only refers to the BTS.

6 TRANSMITTER/RECEIVER PERFORMANCE:

6.1 Nominal error rates (NER):

The scenario requirement for the maximum received level at the MS is -26 dBm (requirement 2.3.2). The figure of -23 dBm is also in approximate alignment with the blocking specification at > 3 MHz

The required NER for the static channel above at -23 dBm has been increased to ½% in line with CR 28

Under multipath conditions the peak signal level exceeds the mean level. In order to prevent significant clipping the maximum level under multipath conditions has been set to -40 dBm. Multipath reception conditions occur when there is no line of sight path and the received signal level is likely to be lower.

The same specifications have been applied to the BTS receiver.

6.2 Reference sensitivity level:

Simulations of TU50 and HT100 at 1.8 GHz have been performed and table 1 has been modified appropriately. The RA130 results at 1.8 GHz are taken from the RA250 results at 900 MHz. Allowance has been made for enhanced bad frame indication in accordance with CR 27.

The MS sensitivity has been relaxed by 2 dB to simplify the MS at the expense of a slightly higher BTS power requirement, to balance the up and downlinks.

6.3 Reference interference level:

TU1.5 and RA 130 results at 1.8 GHz in table 2 are taken from TU3 and RA250 in Rec 05.05 respectively. TU 50 at 1.8 GHz has been simulated and the results are incorporated in the table. Allowance has been made for enhanced bad frame indication in accordance with CR 27.

The effect of doubling the Doppler spread is in general to improve the performance without FH due to increased decorrelation between bursts and to slightly degrade performance with FH because the channel is less stationary during the burst.

6.4 Erroneous frame indication performance:

Annex B:
GSM 900 Small Cell System scenarios

ETSI/STC/SMG2 T.Doc 104/92 - Rev. 1

Strasbourg

1 - 4 September 1992

Title: Small Cell System Scenarios for GSM900.

Source: Vodafone, UK

Introduction

Small cells are defined in GSM 03.30 as having antennas above median roof height but below maximum, whereas Large cells have antennas above the maximum roof height. Median roof heights vary with location, in particular between City Centre and Suburban locations. Suburban median roof heights vary with type of housing and may often be characteristic of a particular country but are likely to fall between 8m and 20m.

Small cells feature much lower antennas than large cells and as such the minimum coupling loss between base and mobile antenna is significantly decreased. In practice small cells are likely to operate at a lower transmit power level, being aimed at providing limited coverage, but not necessarily capacity, in urban/suburban environments.

This paper presents the results of applying the propagation loss at 100m BTS to MS antenna separation from the 03.30 Small Cell example, to the system scenarios in TDoc GSM 61/91 which details system scenarios for DCS1800. The results are presented in a similar manner as TDoc GSM 60/91 and will be applicable to a 75% location probability.

A further set of results is presented for the worst case scenario where the agreed Minimum Coupling Loss (MCL) of 59dB from T.Doc SMG 49/91 is used.

Both sets of results assume a Class 2 coordinated and uncoordinated MS but the effect of MS power control is taken into account for the coordinated MS.

Small Cell Example

The definition of the small cell example in 03.30 Appendix A4 is as follows;

Base TX Configuration

Antenna Gain:	+16dBi	(BAG)
Antenna Height:	17m	
Roof Height	15m	
Antenna Feeder Loss:	2dB	(BFL)

Mobile RX Configuration

Antenna Gain:	2dBi	(MAG)
Antenna Height	1.5m	
Antenna Feeder Loss:	2dB	(MFL)

Propagation Loss

$$\text{Loss (dB)} = 132.8 + 38\log(d/\text{km})$$

The coupling loss for this scenario is then;

$$132.8 + 38\log(d/\text{km}) - BAG + BFL - MAG + MFL$$

= 80.8dB at a MS to base separation of 100m

The system scenarios at 100m are presented in Appendix 1.

Minimum Coupling Loss Case

The system scenarios based on the same small cell example as above but using a MCL of 59dB are presented in Appendix 2.

It should be noted that this produces worse case figures, assuming operation at limit sensitivity, i.e. in a noise limited environment. For the small cell case the MS at least, is likely to be operating in an interference limited environment with an effective sensitivity worse than limit sensitivity.

Appendix 1 - System Scenarios for Small Cell GSM900

Near	Coupling loss
BTS -> MS	81
MS -> BTS	81
MS -> MS	34,5
BTS -> BTS	25

Far	Tx power (dBm	Rx Sensitivity (dBm)
BTS	38	-104
MS	39	-104

BTS power control range	30
MS power control range	26
C/I margin	9
Multiple interferers margin	10
Transient margin	20
margin for other IMs	3

NOTE: All results are in dBm except for section 1.3 where the results are dB

1 Transmitter

1.1 Modulation, Spurs and Noise

1.1.1 Co-ordinated, BTS -> MS:

Max. Tx noise level in RX bandwidth = [BTS power]-[Pwr control range]-[C/I margin]-[Multiple interferers margin] = -11

1.1.2 Uncoordinated, BTS -> MS:

Max Tx level of noise in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity]-[C/I margin]-[multiple interferers margin]+[coupling loss] = -42

Max Tx level of spur in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity]-[C/I margin] + [coupling loss] = -32

1.1.3 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> BTS:

Max Tx level in Rx bandwidth = [BTS sensitivity]-[C/I margin]+[coupling loss] = -32

1.1.4 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> MS:

Max Tx level in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity]-[C/I margin]+[Coupling loss] = -78,5

1.1.5 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> BTS:

Max Tx level noise in Rx bandwidth = [BTS sensitivity]-[C/I margin]-[multiple interferers margin]+[coupling loss] = -98

1.2 Switching Transients

1.2.1 Uncoordinated MS -> BTS:

Max peak level in effective Rx BW at MS = [Base sensitivity]-[C/I margin]+[coupling loss]+[Transient margin] = -12

1.2.2 Uncoordinated BTS -> MS:

Max peak level in effective Rx BW at BTS = [MS sensitivity] -[C/I margin]+[coupling loss]+[transient margin] = -12

1.3 Intermodulation

1.3.1 Coordinated, BTS -> MS:

Required IM attenuation in BTS = [C/I margin]+[BTS pwr control range]+[margin for other IMs] = 42

1.3.2 Uncoordinated, BTS -> MS:

Required IM attenuation in BTS = [BTS power]-{[Max allowed level at MS1]+[coupling loss BTS2 -> MS1]} = 73

NOTE: [Max allowed level at MS1] = [MS sensitivity-C/I margin-margin for other IMs]

1.3.3 Uncoordinated, MS&MS -> BTS:

Required IM attenuation in MS = [MS power] - {[Max allowed level at BTS2] + [coupling loss MS -> BTS2]} = 74

NOTE: [Max allowed level at BTS2] = [BTS sensitivity-C/I margin-margin for other IMs]

1.3.4 Uncoordinated MS&MS -> MS:

Required IM attenuation in MS = [MS power]-{[Max allowed level at MS3]+[coupling loss MS -> MS3]} = 120,5

NOTE: [Max allowed level at MS3] = [MS sensitivity-C/I margin-margin for other IMs]

2 Receiver

2.1 Blocking

2.1.1 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> MS:

Max level at MS receiver = [BTS power]+[multiple interferers margin]-[coupling loss] = -33

2.1.2 Co-ordinated MS -> BTS:

Max level at BTS receiver = [MS power]-[Power control range]-[coupling loss] = -68

2.1.3 Uncoordinated MS -> BTS:

Max level at BTS receiver = [MS power]-[coupling loss] = -42

2.1.4 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> MS:

Max level at MS receiver = [MS power]-[coupling loss] = 4,5

2.1.5 Co-ordinated and Uncoordinated BTS -> BTS:

Max level at BTS receiver = [BTS power]+[multiple interferers margin]-[coupling loss] = 23

2.2 Intermodulation

2.2.1 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> MS:

Max received level at MS1 = [BTS power]-[coupling loss BTS2->MS1]+[margin for other IMs] = -40

2.2.2 Co-ordinated MS & MS -> BTS:

Max received level at BTS1 = [MS pwr]-[MS pwr control range]-[coupling loss MS -> BTS1]+[margin for other IMs] = -65

2.2.3 Uncoordinated MS & MS -> BTS:

Max. received level at BTS1 = [MS power]-[coupling loss MS -> BTS1]+[Margin for other IMs] = -39

2.3 Maximum level

2.3.1 Co-ordinated MS -> BTS:

Max level at BTS = [MS power]-[coupling loss] = 42

2.3.2 Co-ordinated BTS -> MS:

Max level at MS = [BTS power]-[coupling loss] = -43

Appendix 2 - System Scenarios for Small Cell GSM900. 59dB MCL

Near	Coupling loss
BTS -> MS	59
MS -> BTS	59
MS -> MS	34,5
BTS -> BTS	25

Far	Tx power (dBm	Rx Sensitivity (dBm)
BTS	38	-104
MS	39	-104

BTS power control range	30
MS power control range	26
C/I margin	9
Multiple interferers margin	10
Transient margin	20
margin for other IMs	3

NOTE: All results are in dBm except for section 1.3 where the results are dB

---

1 Transmitter

1.1 Modulation, Spurs and Noise

1.1.1 Co-ordinated, BTS -> MS:

Max. Tx noise level in RX bandwidth = [BTS power]-[Pwr control range]-[C/I margin]-[Multiple interferers margin] = -11

1.1.2 Uncoordinated, BTS -> MS:

Max Tx level of noise in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity]-[C/I margin]-[multiple interferers margin]+[coupling loss] == -64

Max Tx level of spur in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity]-[C/I margin] + [coupling loss] = -54

1.1.3 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> BTS:

Max Tx level in Rx bandwidth = [BTS sensitivity]-[C/I margin]+[coupling loss] = -54

1.1.4 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> MS:

Max Tx level in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity]-[C/I margin]+[Coupling loss] = -78,5

1.1.5 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> BTS:

Max Tx level noise in Rx bandwidth = [BTS sensitivity]-[C/I margin]-[multiple interferers margin]+[coupling loss] = -98

1.2 Switching Transients

1.2.1 Uncoordinated MS -> BTS:

Max peak level in effective Rx BW at MS = [Base sensitivity]-[C/I margin]+[coupling loss]+[Transient margin] = -34

1.2.2 Uncoordinated BTS -> MS:

Max peak level in effective Rx BW at BTS = [MS sensitivity] -[C/I margin]+[coupling loss]+[transient margin] = -34

1.3 Intermodulation

1.3.1 Coordinated, BTS -> MS:

Required IM attenuation in BTS = [C/I margin]+[BTS pwr control range]+[margin for other IMs] = 42

1.3.2 Uncoordinated, BTS -> MS:

Required IM attenuation in BTS = [BTS power]-{[Max allowed level at MS1]+[coupling loss BTS2 -> MS1]} = 95

NOTE: [Max allowed level at MS1] = [MS sensitivity-C/I margin-margin for other IMs]

1.3.3 Uncoordinated, MS&MS -> BTS:

Required IM attenuation in MS = [MS power] - {[Max allowed level at BTS2] + [coupling loss MS -> BTS2]} = 96

NOTE: [Max allowed level at BTS2] = [BTS sensitivity-C/I margin-margin for other IMs]

1.3.4 Uncoordinated MS&MS -> MS:

Required IM attenuation in MS = [MS power]-{[Max allowed level at MS3]+[coupling loss MS -> MS3]} = 120,5

NOTE: [Max allowed level at MS3] = [MS sensitivity-C/I margin-margin for other IMs]

2 Receiver

2.1 Blocking

2.1.1 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> MS:

Max level at MS receiver = [BTS power]+[multiple interferers margin]-[coupling loss] = -11

2.1.2 Co-ordinated MS -> BTS:

Max level at BTS receiver = [MS power]-[Power control range]-[coupling loss] = -46

2.1.3 Uncoordinated MS -> BTS:

Max level at BTS receiver = [MS power]-[coupling loss] = -20

2.1.4 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> MS:

Max level at MS receiver = [MS power]-[coupling loss] = 4,5

2.1.5 Co-ordinated and Uncoordinated BTS -> BTS:

Max level at BTS receiver = [BTS power]+[multiple interferers margin]-[coupling loss] = 23

2.2 Intermodulation

2.2.1 Co-ordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> MS:

Max received level at MS1 = [BTS power]-[coupling loss BTS2->MS1]+[margin for other IMs] = -18

2.2.2 Co-ordinated MS & MS -> BTS:

Max received level at BTS1 = [MS pwr]-[MS pwr control range]-[coupling loss MS -> BTS1]+[margin for other IMs] = -43

2.2.3 Uncoordinated MS & MS -> BTS:

Max. received level at BTS1 = [MS power]-[coupling loss MS -> BTS1]+[Margin for other IMs] = -17

2.3 Maximum level

2.3.1 Co-ordinated MS -> BTS:

Max level at BTS = [MS power]-[coupling loss] = 20

2.3.2 Co-ordinated BTS -> MS:

Max level at MS = [BTS power]-[coupling loss] = -21

Annex C:
Microcell System Scenarios

ETSI STC SMG2 No.3 T Doc SMG2 63 /92

lst- 4th September 1992

Strasbourg

Source: BTL (UK)

Subject: **Microcell BTS RF Parameters**

Background

Since the Ronneby meeting of SMG2 there have been a number of input papers concerning the specification of RP parameters for a microcell BTS. In particular T.Docs 184/91, 16/92, 28/92, 80/92, 86/92 and 90/92 from AT&T NSI, MPC, BTL and Alcatel propose specific RF parameters. At the Turin SMG2 meeting it was agreed that the best way to include a microcell BTS specification into the GSM recommendations was as an Annex to 05.05 that would specify :-

- Transmit powers
- Receive sensitivities
- Wideband noise
- Blocking

It was also agreed that it would not be practical to specify a single microcell BTS for all applications and that a number of BTS classes would need to be specified. It was noted that this may require guidelines to be added to 03.30 to ensure successful operation.

Scenario Requirements

In order to clarify the requirements for microcell BTS RF parameters we must first look at the scenario requirements. It was agreed at the Amsterdam meeting that the 2 groups of scenarios were 'range' and 'close proximity' as shown in Fig.1.

Range

The general requirements of the range scenario are that :-

- Maximum BTS receive sensitivity is required for some applications
- The uplink and downlink paths should be capable of being balanced

It has been agreed that the COST 231 propagation model will be used for microcell propagation when a fine of sight street canyon exist. This has been included in 03.30 for guidance (T.Docs 88/92 and 93/92). In order to estimate the maximum, worst case path loss experienced by a microcell BTS we would also have to define :-

Table 2: Close Proximity Parameters

	GSM900	DCS 1800
Minimum Coupling Loss (MCL)	44dB	50dB
Multiple Interferers Margin (MIM)	10dB	10dB
C/I margin	9dB	9dB

Before we can calculate the scenario requirements shown in Fig.1 we must identify some further MS RF parameters in addition to those in Table 1 :-

Table 3: Further MS RF Parameters

	GSM900 (class 5)	DCS1800 (class 1)
Most stringent blocking requirement	-23dBm	-26dBm
Wideband noise emission in 200kHz	-44dB	-48dB

* - Currently no specification for GSM900 MS wideband noise beyond 1.8MHz offset and therefore figures proposed at Aalborg meeting used (as shown in T.Doc 11 1/92).

The wideband noise figures in Table 3 have been adjusted by 3dB since they are specified in a 100kHz bandwidth in 05.05 but are required in a receiver bandwidth for the scenarios (200kHz).

BTS Tx power

This requirement (as shown in Fig.1) is the maximum microcell BTS transmit power that can be tolerated in order to prevent MS blocking.

BTS Tx power = [MCL] ~ [blocking requirement]

GSM900 BTS Tx power = 44 + (-23) = 21dBm

DCS1800 BTS Tx power = 50 + (-26) = 24dBm

BTS wideband noise

This requirement (as shown in Fig.1) is the maximum microcell BTS wideband noise that can be tolerated in order to prevent MS 'noise masking'. A signal lever lOdB above limit sensitivity is taken.

BTS wideband noise (in 100kHz) = [signal lever] - [C/I margin] - [MIM] + [MCL] - [200-100kHz BW conversion]

GSM900 BTS wideband noise = (-92) - 9 - 10 + 44 -3 = -70dBm DCS1800 BTS wideband noise = (-90) - 9 - 10 + 50 -3 = -62dBm

- Non fine of sight propagation model
- Log normal fading margin
- Rician fading margin
- Corner attenuation
- Building penetration loss

To find the range from this path loss we would have to define the link budget parameters such as antennae gains and cable losses. It is thought to be impractical to define all these parameters as part of this work. However, if we substitute some approximate numbers for the above parameters (such as those in T.Doc 80/92) we can see that with -104dBm receive sensitivity at the microcell BTS worst case ranges could still be as low as 200-300m.

In order to define relationships for path balancing we need only to identify the mobile RF parameters and any differences in the uplink and downlink paths (e.g. diversity). The assumptions made here are :-

- Class 5 MS for GSM900 and Class 1 MS for DCS1800
- Same antennae used for transmit and receive at MS and BTS (therefore gain cancers)
- No diversity
- Path balancing performed for maximum MS transmit power (to give absolute max. BTS transmit power required)

The following MS RF parameters are used :-

Table 1: MS RF Parameter

	MS Tx power	MS Rx sensitivity
GSM900	29dBm	-102dBm
DCS1800	30dBm	-100dBm

For balanced paths the uplink max path loss must equal the downlink max path loss. In other words:-

[MS Tx power] + [-BTS Rx sens] = [BTS Tx power] + [-MS Rx sens]

The following relationships can therefore be defined :-

GSM900 [BTS Tx power] + 73 = - [BTS Rx sensitivity]

DCS1800 [BTS Tx power] + 70 = - [BTS Rx sensitivity]

Close Proximity

At the Amsterdam microcell sub-group the Minimum Coupling Losses (MCL) for Microcell BTS to MS coupling were agreed (T.Doc 41/92 Rev 1). Further work showed that these figures were very worst case and had a low probability of occurring (T.Doc 90/92). The following parameters will be used in the close proximity scenarios :

BTS blocking

This requirement (as shown in Fig. 1) is the maximum signal lever that may be presented to a microcell BTS from an uncoordinated MS.

BTS blocking level = [MS Tx power] - [MCL]

GSM900 BTS blocking level = 29 - 44 = -15dBm

DCS1800 BTS blocking level = 30 - 50 = -20dBm

BTS Rx sensitivity

This requirement (as shown in Fig.1) is the maximum receive sensitivity a microcell BTS can have in order to prevent 'noise masking' from an uncoordinated MS.

BTS Rx sensitivity = [wideband noise from MS] + [C/I margin] - [MCL]

GSM900 BTS Rx sensitivity = -44 + 9 - 44 = -79dBm

DCS1800 BTS Rx sensitivity = ~8 + 9 - 50 = -89dBm

Practical specification

So far, we have identified the requirements for the range and close proximity scenarios for a microcell BTS. We now need to move towards a practical specification.

Microcell BTS Tx power and Rx sensitivity

If we study the scenario requirements for transmit power and receive sensitivity we find the following :-

- The Rx sensitivities needed to satisfy the close proximity scenarios are much less those required for the range scenarios.
- The Tx powers and Rx sensitivities from the close proximity scenarios lead to a 15dB downlink bias for GSM900 and a 5dB downlink bias for DCS1800.

In order to satisfy both the path balance relationships in the range scenario and the close proximity scenarios we can either reduce the Tx power or reduce the Rx sensitivity even further. Since the Rx sensitivity is well short of the range requirements already we shall choose to balance paths by reducing Tx power. This gives the following Tx powers :-

GSM900 BTS Tx power = -(-79) + 73 = 6dBm

DCS1800 BTS Tx power = -(-89) + 70 = 19dBm

However, if we want to specify microcell BTS classes with better Rx sensitivities than these (and hence higher Tx powers) then the value for MCL has to be increased in order to ensure the close proximity scenarios are satisfied. Popular Rx sensitivities to choose in order to optimise microcell BTS size and cost are -89dBm and -95dBm (from SMG2 input papers). Since the limiting close proximity scenario is MS wideband noise masking the microcell BTS

receiver we must use this to determine the new MCL requirements as follows :-

MCL = [wideband noise from MS] + [C/I margin] - [BTS Rx sensitivity]

Having clone this we can path balance to find the new Tx powers. These results are shown in Table 4.

Table 4: New MCLs with balanced Rx sens and Tx powers

	MCL	Rx sens	Tx power
GSM900	**44dB**	**-79dBm**	**6dBm**
	54dB	-89dBm	16dBm
	60dB	-95dBm	22dBm
	69dB	-104dBm	31dBm
DCS1800	50dB	-89dBm	19dBm
	56dB	-95dBm	25dBm
	65dB	-104dBm	34dBm

Microcell blocting

It has been agreed that by reducing the Rx sensitivity we do not want to imply a relaxation in the blocking requirements for the microcell BTS. Therefore the blocking values will simply be increased by the same amount as the Rx sensitivity has decreased.

Table 5 Change in blocking requirement

	Rx sens	Change in blocking values
GSM900	-79dBm	+25dB
	-89dBm	+15dB
	-95dBm	+9dB
	-104dBm	No change
DCS1800	-89dBm	+15dB
	-95dBm	+5dB
	-104dBm	No change

Microcell BTS wideband noise

The scenario requirement for wideband noise will obviously change with the MCL. The wideband noise specification currently in 05.05 is -80dBc at greater than 6MHz offsets. For low Tx power BTSs a noise floor of -57dBm is specified for DCS 1800 and 45dBm (>6MHz) for GSM900. Table 6 shows the scenario requirements for wideband noise with the -80dBc

values (relative to the microcell. Tx power - not shown) and the current specification values (i.e. either the -80dBc or the noise floor value).

Table 6: Wideband noise requirements

	MCL	Scenario Requirement	-80dBc values	Current Spec
GSM900	44dB	70dBm	-74dBm	-45dBm
	54dB	-60dBm	-64dBm	-45dBm
	60dB	-54dBm	-58dBm	-45dBm
	69dB	-45dBm	-49dBm	-45dBm
DCS1800	50dB	-62dBm	-61dBm	-57dBm
	56dB	-56dBm	-55dBm	-55dBm
	65dB	-47dBm	-46dBm	-46dBm

It can be seen that for DCS1800 the current specification satisfies the scenario requirements. However, for GSM900 there is up to a 25dB discrepancy. A noise floor of -60dBm is proposed for GSM900 which would change the specification to -60dBm, -60dBm, -58dBm and -49dBm in the top right hand 4 boxes of table 6. This meets the scenario requirement in three cases and exceeds it by 10dB in one case.

Proposed changes to GSM recommendations

The following changes have been Proposed to GSM 05.05 :-

Table 7: Microcell BTS Classes

	Microcell BTS Class	Tx power (dBm)	Rx sensitivity	Blocking (rel to current)
GSM900	1	31	-104	No change
	2	22	-95	+9dB
	3	16	-89	+15dB
	4	6	-79	+25dB
DCS1800	1	34	-104	No change
	2	25	-95	+9dB
	3	19	-89	+15dB

Although the longer classes came from the original MCL figures it is recommended that certainly the GSM900 Class 4 BTS be removed as not practical and possibly both Class 3 BTSs also. This is open for discussion.

We have also shown that :-

- The GSM900 MS wideband noise needs specifying to the band edge (as for DCS1800 MSs) with values at least as good as those proposed in Aalborg.
- The wideband noise floor for GSM900 microcell BTSs needs to be -60dBm. No change is required for DCS1800.

The following additions are proposed to 03.30 :-

The recommended MCL values for the different microcell BTS classes should be included in 03.30 for guidance on installation. These MCL values are connector to connector values and therefore include antennae effects. The following should be added :-

Table 8: Recommended MCLs

	Microcell BTS Class	Recommended MCL (dB)
GSM 900	1	69
	2	60
	3	54
	4	44
DCS 1800	1	65
	2	56
	3	50

Removing the GSM900 Class 4 BTS would eliminate the 44dB MCL from the table. It can be seen that higher MCLs are needed for GSM900 than for DCS 1800. This will translate into even larger separations in the field due to the 6dB fall in path loss when moving from 1.8GHz to 900MHz The only way to restore this balance is to specify a tighter MS wideband noise specification for GSM900 than that proposed in Aalborg.

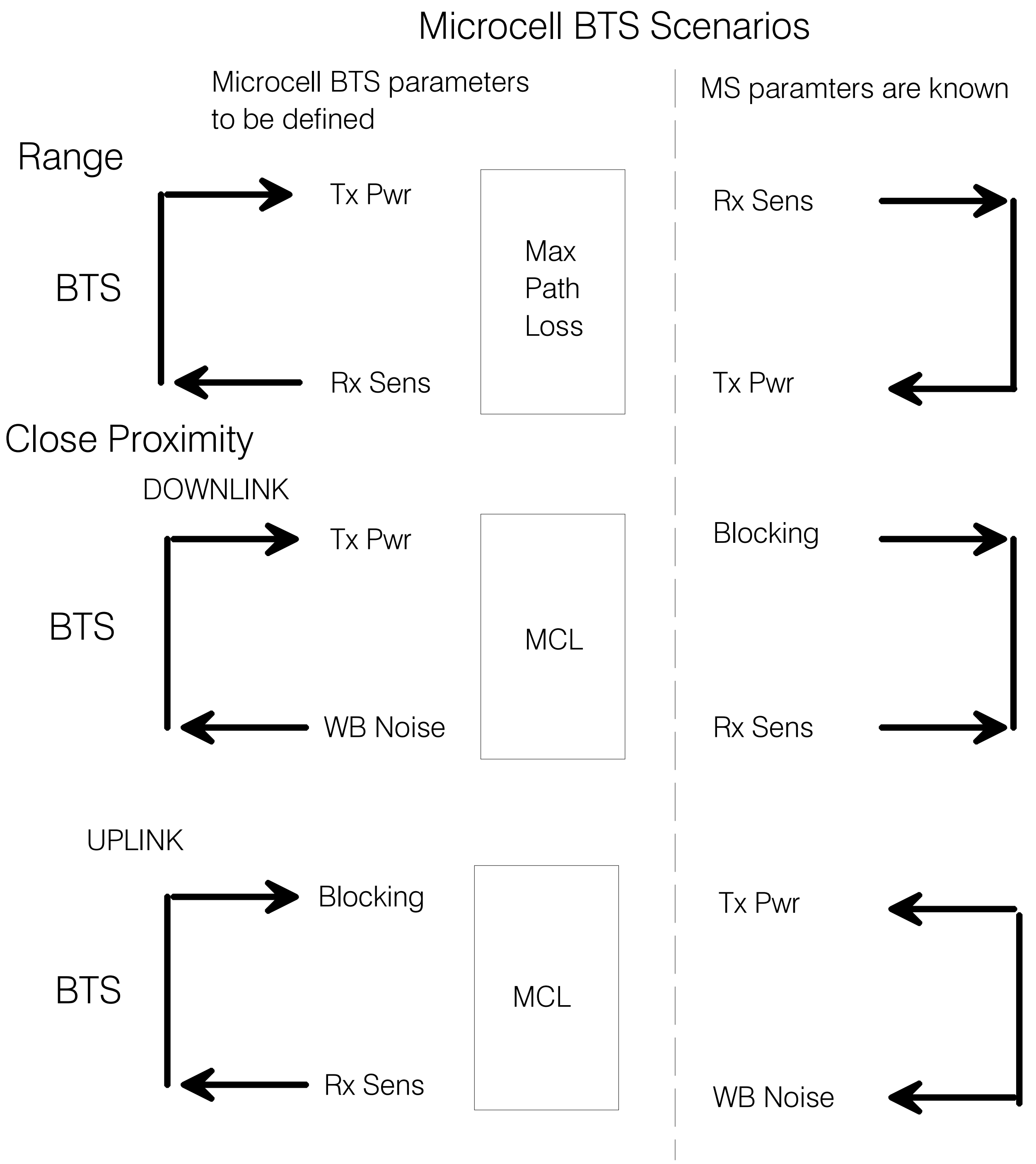

Microcell BTS Scenarios
Microcell BTS parameters to be defined
MS paramters are known
Range
BTS
Tx Pwr
Rx Sens
Max Path Loss
Rx Sens
Tx Pwr
Close Proximity
DOWNLINK
BTS
Tx Pwr
WB Noise
MCL
Blocking
Rx Sens
UPLINK
BTS
Blocking
Rx Sens
MCL
Tx Pwr
WB Noise

Figure 1

ETSI/STC SMG 2 T.doc.144/92

Strasbourg, 1-4 September 1992

Source: Mercury Personal Communications

Title: Comments and Proposals on Microcell RF Parameters

Having read the paper from BTL on this subject and as a result of discussions with the author, the following additional comments and proposals have been agreed with him.

1) uBTS classes can be defined to meet MCLs in 5 dB steps GSM {45, 50, 55, 60} DCS {50, 55, 60}. This will aid the cell planner and manufacturers in choosing appropriate equipment for a given ucell site. It is also simpler.

2) Since DCS 1800 r.f. parameters were defined using the scenarios approach used here for microcells, a DCS uBTS with a sensitivity of -104 dBm will be identical to a permitted normal BTS and there is therefore little point in defining it.

3) Diversity is possible in ucells. I suggest we allow 3 dB for this in the uBTS maximum power.

4) Parameters which affect the uBTS receiver should meet the MCL. Those which only affect the closest mobile can miss the MCL by 10 dB. The Telia research measurements (SMG2 T.doc. 90/92) show that this 10 dB translates a 0.1% probability to 10% probability of interference.

5) uBTS blocking should exceed the MCL requirement by 10 dB.

    a) to allow for interfering signals from outside the system

    b) because the consequences of the BTS being blocked are severe

    c) to improve the MCL performance with MSs which exceed their noise spec.

Proposed Procedure for Defining the Parameters (Similar to the BTL paper)

1) Choose uBTS sensitivity to match MS noise at MCL

2) Choose uBTS power to balance links

3) Set uBTS noise and blocking to be the same as for a normal BTS relative to the power and sensitivity respectively

4) Relax the uBTS noise and blocking where possible to the point where it just meets the MCL requirements.

Spread Sheets giving uBTS RF Parameters (Figures 1 to 3)

1) Microcell RF parameters proposed by BTL paper

2) Parameters after stages 1-3 in the procedure above.

3) Proposed parameters after stages 1-4 above.

The final proposals are in figure 3. Notice that the class 1 uBTS can be converted into a class 2 with the addition of 5 dB attenuators on transmit and receive paths.

	Baseline		Normal	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4	Normal	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3
	GSM	DCS	GSM	GSM	GSM	GSM	GSM	DCS	DCS	DCS	DCS
C/ I	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
BTS MIM	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
MS Margin	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
BTS Div. Gain	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
MS Power	29	30	29	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30
MS Noise	-44	-48	-44	-44	-44	-44	-44	-48	-48	-48	-48
MS Blocking	-23	-26	-23	-23	-23	-23	-23	-26	-26	-26	-26
MS Sensitivity	-102	-100	-102	-102	-102	-102	-102	-100	-100	-100	-100
BTS Power	21	24	34	31	22	16	6	37	34	25	19
BTS Noise	-67	-59	-49	-42	-51	-57	-67	-46	-44	-53	-59
BTS Blocking	-15	-20	-13	-13	-4	2	12	-25	-25	-16	-10
BTS Sensitivity	-79	-89	-104	-104	-95	-89	-79	-104	-104	-95	-89
Base MCL	44	50	69	69	60	54	44	65	65	56	50
Margins for MCLs (+ve = good);											
MS Blocking	0	0	12	15	15	15	15	2	5	5	5
BTS Noise	0	0	7	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0
BTS Blocking	0	0	27	27	27	27	27	10	10	10	10
MS Noise	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
D/L Bias	**15**	**5**	**3**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**3**	**0**	**0**	**0**
Max Loss	**108**	**119**	**133**	**133**	**124**	**118**	**108**	**134**	**134**	**125**	**119**
MCL	**44**	**50**	**69**	**69**	**60**	**54**	**44**	**65**	**65**	**56**	**50**
Dyn Range	**64**	**69**	**64**	**64**	**64**	**64**	**64**	**69**	**69**	**69**	**69**

Notes

See annex 1 for further information

Shaded boxes are changeable parameters

Max loss excludes any antenna gain / cable loss

Powers and sensitvities are specified at the antenna connector

Noise measured in 180 kHz.

Figure 1: Microcell RF Parameters as in BTL Paper

Baseline Normal Class 1 Class 2 Class 3 Class 4 Normal Class 1 Class 2 Class 3

	GSM	DCS	GSM	GSM	GSM	GSM	GSM	DCS	DCS	DCS	DCS
C/ I	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
BTS MIM	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
MS Margin	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
BTS Div. Gain	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
MS Power	29	30	29	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30
MS Noise	-44	-48	-44	-44	-44	-44	-44	-48	-48	-48	-48
MS Blocking	-23	-26	-23	-23	-23	-23	-23	-26	-26	-26	-26
MS Sensitivity	-102	-100	-102	-102	-102	-102	-102	-100	-100	-100	-100
BTS Power	21	24	34	25	20	15	10	37	32	27	22
BTS Noise	-67	-59	-49	-58	-63	-68	-73	-46	-51	-56	-61
BTS Blocking	-15	-20	-13	-4	1	6	11	-25	-20	-15	-10
BTS Sensitivity	-79	-89	-104	-95	-90	-85	-80	-104	-99	-94	-89
Base MCL	44	50	69	60	55	50	45	65	60	55	50
Margins for MCLs (+ve = good);											
MS Blocking	0	0	12	12	12	12	12	2	2	2	2
BTS Noise	0	0	7	7	7	7	7	2	2	2	2
BTS Blocking	0	0	27	27	27	27	27	10	10	10	10
MS Noise	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
D/L Bias	**12**	**2**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
Max Loss	**111**	**122**	**136**	**127**	**122**	**117**	**112**	**137**	**132**	**127**	**122**
MCL	**44**	**50**	**69**	**60**	**55**	**50**	**45**	**65**	**60**	**55**	**50**
Dyn Range	**67**	**72**	**67**	**67**	**67**	**67**	**67**	**72**	**72**	**72**	**72**

Notes

See annex 1 for further information

Shaded boxes are changeable parameters

Max loss excludes any antenna gain / cable loss

Powers and sensitvities are specified at the antenna connector

Noise measured in 180 kHz.

Figure 2: Microcell RF Parameters after Stages 1 to 3

	Baseline		Normal	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4	Normal	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3
	GSM	DCS	GSM	GSM	GSM	GSM	GSM	DCS	DCS	DCS	DCS
C/ I	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
BTS MIM	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
MS Margin	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
BTS Div. Gain	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
MS Power	29	30	29	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30
MS Noise	-44	-48	-44	-44	-44	-44	-44	-48	-48	-48	-48
MS Blocking	-23	-26	-23	-23	-23	-23	-23	-26	-26	-26	-26
MS Sensitivity	-102	-100	-102	-102	-102	-102	-102	-100	-100	-100	-100
BTS Power	21	24	34	25	20	15	10	37	32	27	22
BTS Noise	-67	-59	-49	-51	-56	-61	-66	-46	-49	-54	-59
BTS Blocking	-15	-20	-13	-21	-16	-11	-6	-25	-20	-15	-10
BTS Sensitivity	-79	-89	-104	-95	-90	-85	-80	-104	-99	-94	-89
Base MCL	44	50	69	60	55	50	45	65	60	55	50
Margins for MCLs (+ve = good);											
MS Blocking	0	0	12	12	12	12	12	2	2	2	2
BTS Noise	0	0	7	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0
BTS Blocking	0	0	27	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
MS Noise	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
D/L Bias	**12**	**2**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
Max Loss	**111**	**122**	**136**	**127**	**122**	**117**	**112**	**137**	**132**	**127**	**122**
MCL	**44**	**50**	**69**	**60**	**55**	**50**	**45**	**65**	**60**	**55**	**50**
Dyn Range	**67**	**72**	**67**	**67**	**67**	**67**	**67**	**72**	**72**	**72**	**72**

Notes

See annex 1 for further information

Shaded boxes are changeable parameters

Max loss excludes any antenna gain / cable loss

Powers and sensitvities are specified at the antenna connector

Noise measured in 180 kHz.

Figure 3: Microcell RF Parameters after Stages 1 to 4

Annex 1 Microcell RF Parameters

Abbreviations

P = Power (dBm)

N = Noise floor in Rx bandwidth (dBm) (> 6 MHz)

B = Blocking level (dBm) (> 3 MHz)

S = Reference sensitivity (dBm)

MIM = Multiple interferers margin from BTS (dB)

MSM = MS margin (dB) amount by which MS can fail the scenarios, cf base station

MCL = Minimum coupling loss (dB) between antenna connectors (proximity)

Max. loss = Maximum coupling loss (dB) between antenna connectors (range excluding antennas and cables)

C/I = Reference co-channel interference ratio, assumed to equal interference margin below sensitivity

Equations for Deriving Minimum uBTS specifications from those of the MS such that a given MCL is guaranteed

$$P_{BTS} = MCL + B_{MS} - MIM + MSM \quad (1)$$

$$N_{BTS} = MCL + (S_{MS} + MSM - C/I) - MIM \quad (2)$$

$$B_{BTS} = P_{MS} - MCL \quad (3)$$

$$S_{BTS} = N_{MS} - MCL + C/I \quad (4)$$

uBTS Performance Equations

$$[\text{Down link bias}] = P_{BTS} - S_{MS} - (P_{MS} - S_{BTS} + [\text{Diversity Gain}]) \quad (5)$$

$$[\text{Max. loss}] = \min(P_{BTS} - S_{MS}, \; P_{MS} - S_{BTS} + [\text{Diversity Gain}]) \quad (6)$$

$$MCL = \max(P_{BTS} + MIM - B_{MS} - MSM, \; N_{BTS} + MIM - (S_{MS} + MSM - C/I), \; P_{MS} - B_{BTS}, \; N_{MS} - S_{BTS} + C/I) \quad (7)$$

$$[\text{Dyn. Range}] = [\text{Max. loss}] - MCL \quad (8)$$

ETSI/STC SMG2 Ad Hoc **T.doc 4/92**

Bristol, 3-4 November 1992

Source: **The Technology Partnership (UK)**

Title: **REVISED PROPOSALS FOR MICROCELL RF PARAMETERS**

The present document is an update to SMG2 T.doc 144/92 presented in Strasbourg to include:

1) the new proposed GSM MS noise figures*
2) the method of interpreting 05.05 section 4.2.1 agreed at the SMG2 ad hoc in Malmesbury (a 2 dB correction).

The table below shows the calculation of the noise floor.

	MS power	**4.2.1 table entry**	**at frequency offset**	**level in 100 kHz**	**level in 180 kHz**
GSM	29 dBm	-71 dB	1.8 MHz	-50 dBm	-43 dBm
DCS	30 dBm	-75 dB	6 MHz	-53 dBm	-50 dBm

The conversion factor of total MS power to that measured in 30 kHz on carrier is taken to be 8 dB rather than the 6 dB assumed for phase 1 DCS1800.

The revised proposals are shown in Figure 1 and are otherwise calculated in the same manner as described in SMG2 T.doc 144/92. Since the MS noise was the limiting factor in close proximity performance, the change leads to a significant improvement in the overall system especially for microcells.

* The figures proposed in Strasbourg were

MS power	**4.2.1 table entry ≥ 1.8 MHz**
≥ 43 dBm	-81 dB
41 dBm . . . ≤ 33 dBm	-79 dB . . . -71 dB

	Baseline		Normal	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4	Normal	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3
	GSM	DCS	GSM	GSM	GSM	GSM	GSM	DCS	DCS	DCS	DCS
C/ I	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
BTS MIM	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
MS Margin	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
BTS Div. Gain	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
MS Power	29	30	29	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30
MS Noise	-47	-50	**-47**	**-47**	**-47**	**-47**	**-47**	-50	-50	-50	-50
MS Blocking	-23	-26	-23	-23	-23	-23	-23	-26	-26	-26	-26
MS Sensitivity	-102	-100	-102	-102	-102	-102	-102	-100	-100	-100	-100
BTS Power	21	24	34	28	23	18	13	37	34	29	24
BTS Noise	-67	-59	-49	-51	-56	-61	-66	-46	-49	-54	-59
BTS Blocking	-15	-20	-13	-21	-16	-11	-6	-25	-20	-15	-10
BTS Sensitivity	-82	-89	-104	-98	-93	-88	-83	-104	-101	-96	-91
Base MCL	44	50	69	60	55	50	45	65	60	55	50
Margins for MCLs (+ve = good);											
MS Blocking	0	0	12	9	9	9	9	2	0	0	0
BTS Noise	0	0	7	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0
BTS Blocking	0	0	27	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
MS Noise	0	2	3	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0
D/L Bias	**9**	**2**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
Max Loss	**114**	**122**	**136**	**130**	**125**	**120**	**115**	**137**	**134**	**129**	**124**
MCL	**44**	**50**	**66**	**60**	**55**	**50**	**45**	**63**	**60**	**55**	**50**
Dyn Range	**70**	**72**	**70**	**70**	**70**	**70**	**70**	**74**	**74**	**74**	**74**

Notes

Shaded boxes are changeable parameters

Max loss excludes any antenna gain / cable loss

Powers and sensitvities are specified at the antenna connector

Noise measured in 180 kHz.

NOTE: -71dB used for class 5 MS but is going to be -67dB, i.e. raises 4dB higher

Figure 1: Microcell RF Parameters with proposed GSM MS noise

Annex D: Conversion factors

REPORT OF AD HOC MEETING ON RF PARAMETERS

The aim of the meeting was to define BTS transmitter requirements that are consistent with each other (TD 42/92), the following are the specifications that were discussed:

Modulation Mask

Switching Transients

Spurious Emissions

Intermodulation

The following plan was agreed:

1. Agree normalised measurement conversion numbers.
2. Define the modulation mask based upon scenario requirements and what is practically feasible.
3. Define new specifications that provide consistent requirements and propose these changes at the next SMG2 meeting in May.

SCENARIO REQUIREMENTS

MPC presented TD 46/92 that described the scenario requirements for DCS1800 which are derived from GSM TDs 60/91 and 61/91. The following

principles are contained in TD 46/92:

A) Specifications should satisfy the requirements of the system scenarios unless evidence is presented that they are not practical.

B) Since all specifications must be met, only the most stringent is important.

C) So far as possible, a test should be the tightest constraint on what it is intended to measure. for example, the 4.2.1 test on modulation and noise should be the toughest requirement on these quantities.

The document proposes a change to the modulation mask at 1.8MHz offset to align with the spurious test. It was also stated that the intra-intermodulation requirement at 1.8MHz offset from carrier is tighter than the modulation test, TD 46/92 proposed that the test be modified to say that if the test failed, all carriers but the nearest one be switched off. If the measured level remains the same then the failure can be attributed to modulation and can be ignored. TD 46/92 also proposed a tightening of the modulation requirement at 6MHz offset to comply with the scenario requirement. There was much discussion on this subject and the values used in the scenario were questioned particularly the Minimum Coupling Loss (MCL) and the MS threshold level. It was stated by Motorola that -65dB appears to be too stringent for MCL. AT&T stated that it was unusual to design coverageor reference sensitivity at the cell boundary. AEG questioned the statistical reasoning behind a tightening of the specification for modulation. It was generally agreed that the more important scenario was with the BTS as the victim and not the MS as the victim.

Vodafone presented TD 52/92 that covered the system scenarios for GSM900, the MCL that was used for GSM900 was 59dB. In conclusion it was recommended to try to improve limits if at all possible.

NORMALISATION OF CONVERSION NUMBERS.

The TDs presented were 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 53, 54 and 55/92. It was decided to discuss TD 47/92 at the next SMG2 meeting. TD 48/92 (AT&T) was an updated version of TD 42/92 including the normalisation numbers agreed at the Amsterdam meeting of SMG2. TD 49/92 (CSELT) illustrates the differences between peak and average in a 30kHz bandwidth at different offsets using three different commercial spectrum analysers. A bandwidth of 300kHz is also used but due to the low offset from carrier it was commented that a resolution bandwidth of 300kHz was too large to be accurate. TD 50/92 (France Telecom) presented information on scaling factors to be used in the normalisation process. From the plots provided in TD 50/92 evidently below 1.8MHz offset the resolution bandwidth has to be set to less than or equal to 30kHz for an accurate representation of the signal. TD 51/92 (Vodafone) shows that an additional allowance needs to be considered depending on the effect of a particular kind of interference. The example shown is that switching transients have an effect that is 20dB less than continuous interference, therefore, a relaxation of modulation to allow consistency would have more of an effect than a relaxation of switching transients. TD 53/92 (Cellnet) investigates the propositions outlined in TD 42/92 using practical measurements. The paper supports all the propositions of TD 42/92 apart from one. TD 42/92 was in error in the description of the bandwidth used for the average to peak conversion, this error had been corrected in TD 48/92. TD 54/92 (BTL) describes normalisation parameters derived from measurement and states that the following measurements are equal to or below the modulation mask; GSM900 switching transients beyond 1200kHz to 1800kHz, all in-band spurious values and Intermodulation products less than 6MHz are masked by the modulation. TD 55/92 (Motorola) presents measured values of modulation at various offsets, using an average 30kHz bandwidth. Peak measurements using 30kHz, 100kHz and 300kHz bandwidths at various offsets are also presented. The conversion factors are then measured at varying offsets. On the basis of the conversion tables in TD 55/92 it was stated that a 100kHz resolution bandwidth is only meaningful at offsets greater than 1.2MHz and a 300kHz bandwidth is only meaningful at offsets greater than 6MHz. This corresponds with the plots in TD 50/92.

To derive the conversion numbers to be used in the normalisation process a comparison of all the numbers presented to the meeting was discussed.

It was agreed that the conversion process would be combined into three distinct steps, these steps are :

1. Average in a 30kHz BW to peak in a 30kHz BW. All offsets.
2. Average in a 100kHz BW to peak in a 30kHz BW. Offsets greater than or equal to 1.8MHz.
3. Peak in a 300kHz bandwidth to peak in a 30kHz bandwidth. Offsets greater than or equal to 6MHz.

During the meeting it was decided that a clarification of the definition of peak hold is required in 05.05 Section 4. MPC prepared a CR that stated what had been decided at the meeting. However, there was no time to discuss the CR and it will be presented at the next SMG2 plenary.

Difference between peak power and average (30kHz BW) zero offset

AT&T	8.0
CSELT	7.5
Cellnet	8.2
France Telecom	7.4
BTL	8.0
Motorola	7.3
Average	7.7

A value of 8dB was agreed.

Average to Peak in a 30kHz bandwidth.

Org.	0kHz	400kHz	600kHz	1200kHz	1800kHz	6MHz
AT&T	8dB	9dB				
FT	6.2dB					
CSELT	7.3dB	10.1dB	9.9dB	10.1dB		
BTL	9dB					
Motorola	7dB	8.5dB	8.3dB	10dB	9.4dB	8.6dB
Average	7.5dB	9.2dB	9.1dB	10dB	9.4dB	8.6dB

The agreed conversion factors are 8dB at zero offset and 9dB at all other offsets.

Average in a 100kHz bandwidth to Peak in a 30kHz bandwidth.

It was agreed that the conversion factor should be 5dB at offsets above 1800kHz.

Peak in a 300kHz bandwidth to Peak in a 30kHz bandwidth.

No agreement was reached on this value so the working assumption as agreed at SMG2 was assumed pending any further validation. The conversion factor is 8dB at offsets greater than or equal to 6MHz.

MODULATION MASK

It was agreed that the title for section 4.2.1 should be changed to 'Spectrum due to the Modulation and Wide band Noise'.

In accordance with TD 46/92 (MPC) the modulation mask was tightened at 1800kHz offset to align with the spurious requirement for DCS1800.

BTS power (dBm)	<33	35	37	39	41	>43
Table entry in 4.2.1 (dB)	-65	-67	-69	-71	-73	-75

This was also agreed for GSM900.

It was also agreed to define the modulation mask beyond 1800kHz for GSM900 and the value specified would be the same as the present DCS1800 requirements.

To account for lower GSM900 power levels an additional note will be added to 4.2.1:

vi) For GSM900 BTS, if the limit according to the above table between 1800kHz to 6MHz is below -40dBm, a value of

-40dBm shall be used instead. If the limit above 6MHz is below

-45dBm, a value of -45dBm shall be used instead.

It was noted that this additional note for GSM900 was based upon an alignment with the spurious requirement and the scenario requirement was not discussed.

ETSI/SMG2 **Tdoc 287/92**

The Hague

15-18 December 1992

Source: **SMG2**

Title: **Agreed SMG2 Conversion Factors**

Maximum peak power to average power in a 30 kHz bandwidth on carrier:

A conversion factor of -8 dB was agreed.

Average to Peak power in a 30 kHz bandwidth:

The agreed conversion factors are +8 dB at zero offset and +9 dB at all other offsets.

Average in a 100 kHz bandwidth to Peak in a 30 kHz bandwidth:

It was agreed that the conversion factor shall be +5 dB at offsets above 1800 kHz from carrier.

Peak in a 300 kHz bandwidth to Peak in a 30 kHz bandwidth:

No agreement was reached on this value so the working assumption as agreed at SMG2 was assumed pending any further validation. The conversion factor is -8 dB at offsets greater than or equal to 6 MHz.

Bandwidth conversion from 100 kHz to 300 kHz:

This was not discussed but a working assumption of +5 dB can be assumed at greater than 1.8 MHz offset from carrier.

EXAMPLE

To calculate the absolute level of wideband noise for a GSM900 BTS at greater than or equal to 1.8 MHz offset for BTS power greater than or equal to +43 dBm measured in a 300 kHz bandwidth.

The specification is -75 dB (100 kHz bandwidth) relative to an average measurement in a 30 kHz bandwidth at zero offset.

Therefore, the difference between peak power and average (30 kHz bandwidth) at zero offset = +8 dB.

Therefore, the absolute level = BTS power(+43 dBm) - 8 - 75

= -40 dBm (100 kHz)

= -35 dBm (300 kHz)

The above conversion factors can also be used to compare all transmitter parameters using a normalised peak measurement in a 30 kHz bandwidth.

Annex E:
Repeater Scenarios

ETSI SMG2 ad-hoc ~ Tdoc. 24/94

Rome, 8 March 1994

Title: REPEATER SCENARIOS FOR DCS1800

Source: Mercury One-2-One

1 INTRODUCTION

Repeaters represent a relatively low cost means of enhancing a network's coverage in certain locations. Their behaviour is fundamentally different to BTS's in that their output power levels are input level dependent. The RF requirements for these repeater should therefore not be automatically derived from existing BTS specifications, but rather should be derived from realistic scenarios, with due attention paid to what is feasible and economically reasonable to implement.

2 REPEATER APPLICATIONS - OUTDOOR AND INDOOR

Mercury One_2_One considers that most repeater applications fall into two types: outdoor and indoor.

In *outdoor* applications there is normally a need to cover a limited outdoor area into which propagation from existing cell sites is restricted due to terrain or other shadowing effects. Minimum coupling losses from the repeater to nearby MSs are similar to those for existing BTSs (65 dB), and the required gain to provide a reasonable area of effective enhancement is of the order of 70 dB.

Indoor applications are characterised by smaller minimum coupling losses (45 dB), and in order to avoid very high output powers towards the BTS as a result of close-by MSs, the gain of such indoor repeaters is smaller and of the order of 40 dB.

Both of these applications will be considered in more detail in the following sections.

3 OUTDOOR REPEATER SCENARIO

Figure 3 below illustrates a typical outdoor repeater scenario.

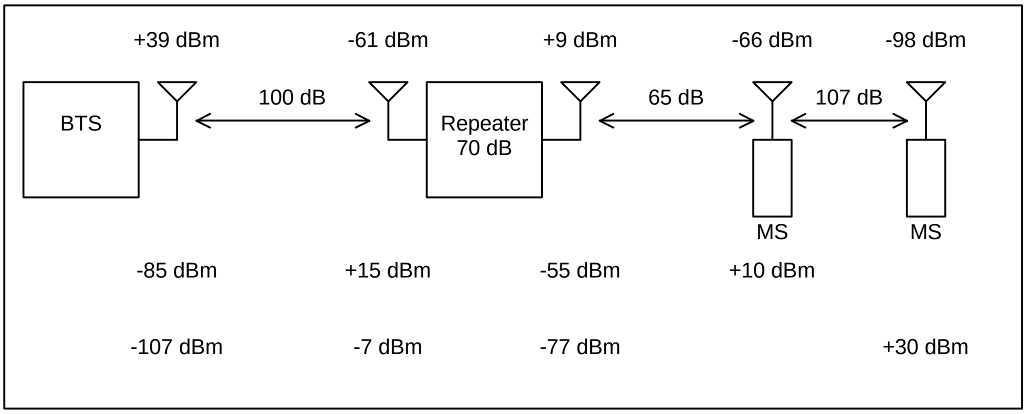


Figure 3: Outdoor Repeater Scenario

The repeater is typically located close to an area of marginal coverage (-95 dBm average signal strength at "ground level). By placing a directional antenna (20 dBi) on a tower (15 dB gain from extra height and shadowing avoidance), the received signal strength can be increased around -60 dBm, equivalent to a typical pattern loss between BTS and repeater antenna connectors of 100 dB. A variation of 10 dB either side of this figure is assumed to provide flexibility to deal with local site variations.

The minimum coupling loss between the MS and the repeater is assumed to be 65 dB, the same as a normal DCS 1800 BTS.

Two cases for differing mobile locations with respect to the repeater are shown in figure 3: an MS near to the repeater at the MCL values, and an MS at the edge of the repeater coverage area. A diversity gain of; 3 dB is assumed. The dynamic range of the repeater is seen to be 42 dB.

4 OUTDOOR REPEATER PERFORMANCE Requirements

In this section we consider the performance requirements for the outdoor repeater scenario.

4.1 Wideband Noise

The wideband noise requirement can be split into two separate case for inside and outside of the repeaters gain bandwidth.

Within the gain bandwidth, a co-ordinated scenario is applicable, whereby the noise should be an interference margin below the minimum signal likely be output by the repeater. For the downlink, the permitted in-repeater-band noise lever is therefore given by the following:

In-repeater-band Noise Level < Output Power -C/I - BTS_Power_Control_Range

(in 180 Hz) < +9 - 9 - 30

< - 30 dBm

The wideband noise level out of the repeaters gain bandwidth is a more serious problem and can desentise uncoordinated MSs belonging to other operators. The required level to prevent desensitisation is given by:

Out-of-rep.-band Noise level < MS Sensitivity - C/I +MCL

< - 100 - 9 + 65

< - 44 dBm

Note that, as compared to the BTS wideband noise calculations, there is no multiple interferer margin in the above calculation, as a single repeater can serve many carriers. Assuming no post amplification filtering is employed, this level is equivalent to a noise figure of 7 dB.

It is proposed that this value becomes applicable 400 kHz away from the bandedge of the repeater.

For the uplink direction, the in-repeater band noise level must be such as to not desensitise the BTS at the minimum path loss between repeater and BTS. The level is therefore given by:

In-repeater-band Noise lever < BTS_Senstivity - C/I + Min. BTS_Rep._Path_Loss

<104 - 9 + 90

<-23 dBm

For the out-of-band noise requirement, it is proposed that the same lever of -44 dBm as calculated for the downlink is adopted. This will protect desensitisation of uncoordinated BTSs with path losses of greater than +69 dB.

4.2 Intermodulation Products and Spurious Emissions

From a scenario perspective, the lever of downlink spurious emissions and intermodulation products that might cause desensitisation of uncoordinated MSs is the same level as for wideband noise, i.e. -44 dBm. However, for normal BTSs, since spurious emissions and intermodulation products are limited in frequency extent and would be difficult to reduce, the maximum level was relaxed for BTSs to -36 dBm. It is proposed that the same **-36 dBm** limit should apply to outdoor repeaters.

For intermodulation products in the downlink direction, if we take the minimum BTS to repeater path loss of 90 dB, for the resultant output power of +19 dBm in the downlink direction, we can calculate the required third order intercept point (TOI) for intermodulation products falling within the downlink transmit band:

TOI > (l.5 x Output Power) - (0.5 x Intermodulation Product Power)

> (1.5 x 19) - (0.5 x -36)

> **+47.5 dBm**

For broadband repeaters with duplexors in which it is possible for intermodulation products generated in the downlink direction to fall into the uplink; repeater pass band, additional protection is required. The intermodulation product at the MS end of the repeater should at least 9 dB less than the minimum input levels for MSs at the edge of coverage served by that repeater (-86 dBm in scenario considered, and -96 dBm for scenario with 90 dB BTS to repeater path loss).

In the uplink direction, the output power of the repeater when the MS at the MCL distance is +15 dBm. The required third order intercept point is therefore given by:

TOI >Output Power) - (0.5 x Intermodulation Product Power)

>1.5 x 15) - (0.5 x -36)

> +40.5 dBm

It should be noted that the above maximum uplink output of **+15 dBm** only applies to powered-down MSs. At the start of a call the MS will be at higher power and this may cause a higher temporary intermodulation product if two mobiles at the start of calls are both transmitting in the same timeslot. It is recommended that this unlikely transient scenario is ignored.

4.3 Output Power

In the downlink direction, the maximum single carrier output power of +19 dBm with a BTS to repeater path loss of 90 dB needs to multiplied by a factor to allow for the amplification of multiple carriers. If we assume 10 carriers, this gives a maximum output power of the repeater, as determined by the 1 dB compression point, of **+29 dBm**.

In the **uplink** direction, it is important that the repeater does not seriously distort the initial access bursts transmitted at full power by a nearby mobile. The required 1 dB compression point for correct amplification of such bursts is therefore **+35 dB**.

4.4 Blocking by Uncoordinated BTS

The bandedge filtering should provide adequate rejection of other operators frequencies to ensure that the output power and intermodulation product requirements specified in section 4.2 and 4.3 are not exceeded if the repeater is placed close to a BTS of a different operator.

In order to ensure this the limit to the gain for the operators channels is given by:

Gain in other operator's band < Max repeater output - BTS Output Power +

Min_BTS_Rep_Path_Loss

< 19 -39 +69

< **49dB**

This represents a rejection of 21 dB compared to the repeaters in-band gain.

4.5 Summary of Outdoor Repeater Requirements

Table 4.4 below summarises the outdoor repeater requirements

Table 4.4: Outdoor Repeater Requirements

	Downlink	**Uplink**
Gain	**70 dB**	**70 dB**
Noise Level	**-30 dBm (in-repeater-band)** **-44 dBm (out-of-rep.-band)**	**-23 dBm (in-repeater-band)** **-44 dBm (out-of-rep.-band)**
Spurious	**-36 dBm**	**-36 dBm**
Third Order Intercept	**+47.5 dBm**	**+40.5 dBm**
1 dB Compression Point	**29 dBm**	**+35 dBm**

5 INDOOR REPEATER SCENARIO

Figure 5 below illustrates a typical indoor repeater scenario.

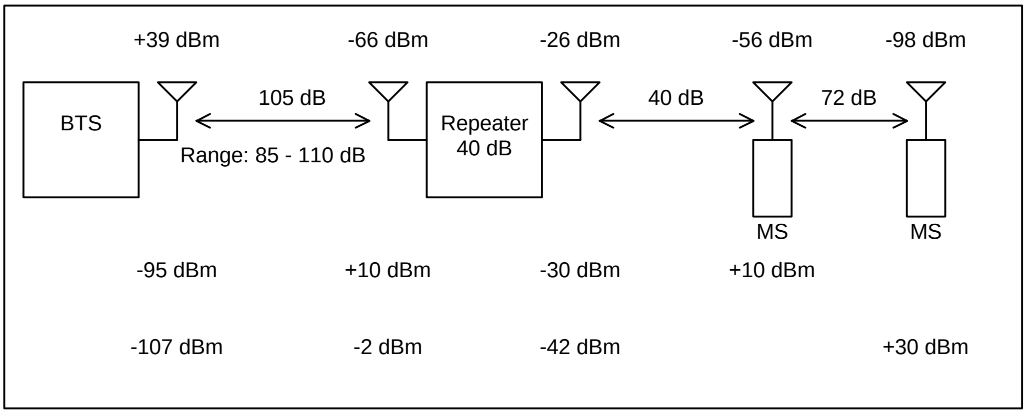


Figure *5:* Indoor Repeater Scenario

The repeater is typically located in an area of marginal outdoor coverage (-95 dBm average signal strength at ground level) where in-building coverage cannot be achieved. By placing a directional antenna (20 dBi) on the roof of the building (l0 dB gain from extra height and shadowing avoidance), the received signal strength can be increased to around *-65* dBm, equivalent to a typical path loss between BTS and repeater antenna connectors of 105 dB. A variation of +5, -20 dB either side of this figure is to provide flexibility to deal with local site variations.

The minimum coupling loss between the MS and the repeater is assumed to be 40 dB, equivalent to a free space distance of 1.33 m.

It should be noted that with the -105 dB path loss between the BTS and repeater, the receive level at the BTS is -95 dBm, assuming the MS is fully powered clown and at the MCL distance. This will be close to the minimum BTS signal level threshold required for powering clown the mobile. Therefore, for BTS to repeater path losses of more than 105 dB, the MS may not get fully powered_down when at the MCL distance.

6 INDOOR REPEATER PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

6.1 Wideband Noise

For the downlink, using the same calculation as in 4.1, the maximum wideband noise levels are:

In-repeater-band Noise Level < 0utput Power -C/I - BTS Power Control Range

(in 180 kHz) < -26 - 9 -30

< -65 dBm

Out-of-rep.-band Noise level < MS Sensitivity - C/I + MCL

< -100 -9 + 40

< -69 dBm

Assuming no post amplification filtering is employed, the out-of-repeater-band level is equivalent to a noise figure of 12 dB, which is readily achievable.

For the uplinlink, the in-repeater maximum noise lever is given by:

In-repeater-band Noise lever < BTS_Senstivity - C/I + Min._BTS_Rep._Path_Loss

< -104 - 9 + 85

<-28 dBm

For the uplink out-of-band noise requirement it is proposed that the same lever of **-44 dBm** is adopted as in the outdoor repeater case. This will protect desensitisation of uncoordinated BTSs with path losses of greater than +69 dBm.

6.2 Intermodulation Products and Spurious Emissions

In the downlink direction, its is proposed to reduce the permissible spurious and intermodulation product levels by 25 dB, from -36 to -61 dBm because of the reduced MCL.

For the intermodulation product with an output lever of -6 dBm (for BTS to repeater path loss of 85 dB), this equates to a third order intercept point of:

TOI > (1.5 x Output Power) - (0.5 x Intermodulation Product Power)

> (1.5 x -6) - (0.5 x -61)

> +21.5 dBm

For the uplink to minimise costs of the indoor repeater amplifiers, it is proposed that the CEPT input of **-30 dBm** should apply to interrnodulation products, rather than the **-36 dBm** GSM figure. This is justified on the basis that the much smaller coverage area of the indoor enhancer will make it unlikely for two MSs close to the enhancer to be using the same timeslot at the same time.

In calculating the third order intercept point requirement for intermodulation products the uplink repeater output lever in figure 5 is increased by 5 dB in order to cover the case where the MS is not fully powered down. The third order intercept point therefore becomes:

TOI > (1.5 x Output Power) - (0.5 x Intermodulation Product Power)

> (I.5 x 15) - (0.5 x -30)

> **+37.5 dBm**

6.3 Output Power

In the downlink direction, allowing for ten carrier each at an output power of -6 dB (value for BTS to repeater path loss of 95 dB), the maximum output power, as determined the 1 dB compression point is **+4 dBm**.

In the uplink direction, as in the case of the outdoor repeater, it is important that the repeater does not seriously distort the initial access bursts transmitted at full power by a nearby MS. The required 1 dB compression point for correct amplification of such bursts is **+30 dB**.

6.4 Blocking by Uncoordinated BTS

The bandedge filtering should provide adequate rejection of other operators frequencies to ensure that the output power and intermodulation product requirements specified in section 6.2 and 6.3 are not exceeded if the repeater is placed close to a BTS of a different operator.

In order to ensure this the limit to the gain for the operators charnels is given by:

Gain in other operator's band < Max repeater output - BTS Output Power +

Min_ BTS_Rep._Path_Loss

< - 6 - 39 + 69

< 24 dB

This represents a rejection of 16 dB compared to the repeater's in-band gain. From a scenario perspective, this could be relaxed if higher downlink; output powers and TOI were implemented.

6.5 Summary of Indoor Repeater Requirements

Table 6.4: Indoor Repeater Requirements

	Downlink	Uplink
Gain	40 dB	40 dB
Noise level (in 180 kHz)	-65 dBm (in-repeater-band) -69 dBm (out -of-rep.-band)	-18 dBm (in-repeater-band) -44 dBm (out-of-rep.-band)
Spurious	-61 dBm	-30 dBm
Third Order Intercept	+21.5 dBm	+37.5 dBm
1 dB Compression point	+4 dBm	+30 dBm

ETSI SMG2 (Ad hoc meeting - Repeaters), **Tdoc SMG2 25/94**

Meeting 1/94,

Rome,ITALY.

Title: **Repeater Scenarios**

Source: **Vodafone**

Date **8 March 1994**

1 Introduction

Tdoc SMG2 274/93 presented to the Madrid meeting introduced the concept of repeaters for use in rural and urban applications and the idea of shared repeaters through coordination between operators

This paper analyses the parameters affecting the performance of repeaters and the necessary constraints on the repeater device. Basic equations governing their performance are derived and applied to different repeater scenarios. This results in a draft specification for repeater devices and a number of planning rules that should be considered when installing repeaters.

2 Repeater performance

In this section the basic equations defining the operation of a repeater are derived. The situation where two BTS, A and B (which may belong to different operators) are in the vicinity of a repeater is illustrated in figure 1. CL1 represents the BTS to repeater coupling loss and CL2 the MS to repeater coupling loss (terminal to terminal).

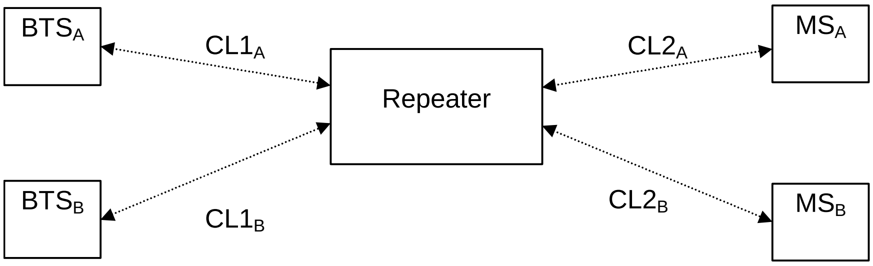


Figure 1

In the analysis, the following are assumed:

- Equal gain, G, is used in the uplink; and downlink; paths to maintain balance.
- The repeater complies with the CEPT requirements for spurious and lM3.

2.1 Link Equations

Consider the case for BTS$_A$. Assume that MS$_A$ is power controlled through the repeater and a noise free system. Given a scenario requirement for the minimum MS$_A$ to repeater coupling loss, CL2$_A$ min, and BTS$_A$ to repeater coupling loss, CL1$_A$, in the uplink direction:

$[MS_A\_TXpwr\_min] - [CL2_A min] + [G] - [CL1_A] = [BTS_A\_RXIev\_max]$ Eq. 1

$=> G = [BTS_A\_RXlev\_max] - [MS_A\_TXpwr\_min] + [CL1] + [CL2min]$

Where MS$_A$_TXpwr_min is the minimum transmit power for MS$_A$ G the repeater gain and BTS$_A$_RXlev_max, the maximum allowed receive level at the BTS before MS power control is applied. At the maximum coupling loss between MS$_A$ and repeater, CL2$_A$max:

$[MS_A\_TXpwr\_max] - [CL2_A max] + [G] - [CL1_A] = [BTS_A\_sensitivity]$

where $MS_A\_TXpwr\_max$ is the maximum MS transmit power for MS_A and $BTS_A\_sensitivity$, the reference sensitivity level for BTS_A. The operating dynamic range for MS_A is:

$CL2_A max] - [CL2_A min] = [MS_A\_TXpwr\_max] - [MS_A\_TXpwr\_min] -$

$[BTS_A\_sensitivity] + [BTS_A\_RXlev\_max]$ Eq. 2

and the repeater output powers in the uplink; and downlink; directions given by the equations:

Uplink operating power = $[MS_A\_TXpwr\_min] - [CL2_A minl + [G]$

Max. uplink RACH power = $[MS_A\_TXpwr\_max] - [CL2_A min] + [G]$

Downlink operating power = $[BTS_A\_TXpwr] - [CL1_A] + [G]$

2.2 Co-ordinated Scenario

In the co-ordinated scenario, MS_B is also power controlled by BTS_B through the repeater. A similar analysis for BTS_B, leads to the following equations for the minimum MS transmit power, operating dynamic range and repeater output powers:

$[MS_B\_TXpwr\_min] - [CL2_B min]+[G] - [CL1B] = [BTS_B\_RXlev\_max]$ Eq. 3

$[CL2_B max] - lCL2_B min] = [MSB\_TXpwr\_max] - [MSB\_TXpwr\_min] -$

$[BT_B\_sensitivity] + [BTS_B\_RXIev\_max]$ Eq. 4

Uplink operating power = $[MS_B\_TXpwr\_min] - ECL2_B min] + [G]$

Max uplink; RACH power = $[MS_B\_TXpwr\_max] - [CL2_B min] + [G]$

Downlink operating power = $[BTS_B\_TXpwr] - [CL1_B] + [G]$

If the following assumptions are made,

$MS_A\ TXpwr\_max - MS_B\_TXpwr\_max$

$CL2_A min = CL2_B min$

and $BTS_A\_sensitivity = BTS_B\_sensitivity$

Then, subtracting Equation 4 from Equation 2, and using equations 1 and 3 to eliminate the minimum MS transmit powers leads to the difference in operating dynamic range between the two systems:

$[CL2_A max] - lCL2_A min] - ([CL2_B max] - [CL2_B min]) = CL1_B - CL1_A$

It can be seen that both BTS_A and BTS_B, must be equally coupled into the repeater if the operating dynamic range is to be optimised for both donor BTS.

In the co-ordinated scenario the repeater would be configured to operate across the whole of the GSM band.

2.3 Uncoordinated Scenario

In the uncoordinated scenario, MS_B will not be power controlled through the repeater. This is only true if the BTS-repeater-MS path loss is greater than the direct BTS-MS path loss.

It is important that the repeater wideband noise (see section 2.4) does not desense an uncoordinated MS. The repeater gain to uncoordinated signals also needs to be controlled, which will require filtering within the repeater device. At the minimum coupling loss, the level of enhanced signal/WBN for an uncoordinated MS should be at least 9 dB lower than the uncoordinated wanted signal level.

2.4 Wideband Noise

Noise considerations are likely to limit the maximum useable gain of the repeater. Considering thermal noise, in the GSM receiver bandwidth (assuming a bandwidth in kHz), the noise output of a repeater with noise figure NF and gain G is described by the equation:

Noise output in GSM Rx BW = -144 + 10*log(RX_BW) + G + NF

For low CL2min and high gains, the wideband noise generated by the MS may be amplified by the repeater to a significant level. To prevent degradation of the BTS receivers, the repeater gain will be limited to the minimum value of G_1 or G_2 calculated from the following equations:

G_1 = [BTS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] - [MS WBN in Rxr BW] + [CL2min] + [CL1]

G_2 = [BTS sensitivity] - [C/I margin]+[CL1] - (-144 + 10*log(RX_BU))-[NF]

2.5 3rd order Intermodulation (IM3) performance/Spurious emissions:

If N carriers, each with output powers RPT_TXpwr, are amplified by a repeater with a 3rd order intercept point ICP, the highest level of 3rd order intermodulation tones produced P_{IM3} is given by the formula:

P_{IM3} = RPT_TXpwr - 2(ICP - [RPT_TXpwr]) + 20 log (N/2)

Therefore, to meet the CEPT limits of -36dBm below 1 GHz and -30 dBm above 1 GHz, the repeater should have an output intercept point calculated as follows:

ICP = (3*[RPT_TXpwr] - [CEPT limit])/2 + 10log(N/2)

Where an IM3 tone is generated in the duplex passband, sufficient isolation is required between the duplex paths of the repeater to prevent re-amplification of the IM3 product in the duplex path. The requirement on the BTS IM3 products in the BTS receive band of -91 dBm exists to protect the BTS receivers from their respective transmitters and co-located operators BTS transmitters. In practice close coupling between a BTS and repeater should be avoided if spurious/IM3 products or wideband noise from a BTS is not to be amplified by the high repeater gain. Therefore, the -91 dBm BTS requirement is not necessary for the repeater. With careful planning of the repeater site the CEPT limits are sufficient.

Spurious emissions should meet the -36 dBm CEPT requirement.

In normal operation, the IM3 products generated by the repeater will be largely due to intermodulation between BCCH/TCH bursts. However, during RACH bursts increased levels of IMP will be produced in the uplink path. Automatic gain control (AGC) that is activated at a threshold above the normal uplink operating power may be necessary to prevent these increased levels from exceeding the CEPT limits.

The AGC threshold will be set 3 dB above the maximum allowed power per tone for two tones whose IM3 products just meet the CEPT limits. Careful design of the attack and delay characteristics of the AGC is required to prevent adverse interactions with MS power control and this is for further study. When AGC is activated, all channels operating, through the repeater will be subject to a gain reduction.

3 Repeater scenarios

Example repeater scenarios are presented below. The figures have been calculated using the equations derived in sections 2 and 3.

3.1 Rural scenario

Typical parameters for a repeater operating in a rural environment are:

CL1:	90 dB
CT2min:	75 dB

MS_TXpwr_max: 39 dBm (class 2)

MS_sensitivity: -104 dBm

BTS_TXpwr 43 dBm

BTS_Rxlev_rnax: -70dBm

Repeater noise figure 8 dB

N (no of carriers) 4

Assuming that the MS is powered controlled clown to 30 dBm at CL2min (MS_TXpwr_min = 30 dBm), the repeater operating parameters are as follows:

Dynamic range: 43 dB

Gain: 65 dB

Uplink operating power: 20 dBm

Downlink operating power: 18 dBm

Min. 3rd order ICP 51 dBm (based on 20 dBm operating power)

3.2 Urban Scenario

Typical parameters for a repeater operating in a rural environment are:

CL1: 80 dB

CL2min: 45dB

MS_TXpwr_max: 33 dBm (class 4)

MS_sensitivity: -102 dBm

BTS Txpwr: 36 dBm

BTS_Rxlev_max: -70 dBm

Repeater noise figure 6 dB

N (no of carriers) 2

Assuming that the MS is powered controlled down to 20 dBm at CL2min (MS_TXpwr_rnin = 20 dBm), the repeater operating parameters are as follows:

Dynamic range: 47 dB

Gain: 35 dB

Uplink; operating power: 10 dBm

Downlink; operating power: -9 dBm

Min. 3rd order ICP 36 dBm

4 Summary

It has been illustrated how repeater devices operate in the co-ordinated and uncoordinated environments. Example figures have been presented based on urban and rural scenarios. The following repeater specification and planning considerations are proposed.

4.1 Repeater Specification

Selectivity out of band (i.e. outside the GSM band):

Offset from band edge	Filter rejection
1 Mhz	30 dB
2 MHz	50 dB

Spurious Emissions (including wideband noise):

Below 1 GHz:	less than -36 dBm measured in 100 kHz bandwidth.
Above 1Ghz:	less than -30 dBm measured in 100 kHz bandwidth.

Intermodulation products:

Below 1 GHz:	less than -36 dBm measured in 100 kHz bandwidth.
Above 1 Ghz:	less than -30 dBm measured in 100 kHz bandwidth.

4.2 Planning considerations

The following planning rules are proposed:

- Where a number of BTS operate through a repeater, operators must consider carefully the coupling between BTS and repeater. The operating dynamic range will only be optimised for all BTS when they are equally coupled into the repeater.

- When selecting a repeater site consideration needs to be given to the proximity of the repeater to uncoordinated BTS. IM3 products/WBN generated in the BTS receive band by the repeater may be transmitted at a level defined by the CEPT limit. This requires a minimum coupling loss:

  [CL1min] = [CEPT limit] - [BTS sensitivity] + [C/l margin]

Below 1 GHz this equates to 77 dB. Where IM3 products generated by the repeater are the limiting factor, separate repeater transmit and receive antennas can be used to reduce the minimum coupling loss.

- For co-ordinated MS, the maximum repeater gain shall be the minimum value of G_1, G_2 and G_3, calculated from the following equations.

  G_1 = [BTS sensitivity] - [C/l margin] - [MS WBN in Rxr BW] + [CL2min] + [CL1]

  G_2 = [BTS sensitivity] - [C/l margin] + [CL1] - (-144 + l0*log(RX_BW)) - [NF]

  G_3 = [BTS_A_RXlev_max] - [MS_A_TXpwr_min] + [CL1] + [CL2min]

- For uncoordinated MS, filtering is necessary to reject the uncoordinated frequencies from the repeater. When selecting a repeater site, operators should implement sufficient filtering of uncoordinated frequencies to ensure that the following is satisfied. At CL2min (the minimum coupling loss between MS and repeater), uncoordinated frequencies enhanced by the repeater shall be at last 9 dB below the wanted signals of the uncoordinated operator.

- These factors will require review during the lifetime of the repeater to account for the developments in both the co-ordinated and uncoordinated networks.

ETSI SMG-2 ad-hoc

Sophia Antipolis 12 July 1994

REPEATER OUT OF BAND GAIN

Source: Hutchison Telecom.

This paper proposes additional text to GSM 05. O5 Annex E (normative): Repeater characteristics and GSM 03.30-RPT Version Annex D PLANNING GUIDELINES FOR REPEATERS. There is also text describing the background to the requirements.

GSM 05.05 Annex E (normative): Repeater characteristics

4 Out of band Gain

The following requirements apply at all frequencies from 9 kHz to 12.75 GHz excluding the GSM/DCS1800 bands defined in GSM 05.05 and declared by the manufacturer as the operational bands for the equipment.

The out of band gain in both directions through the repeater shall be less than +25 dB at [5] MHz and greater from the GSM and DCS1800 band edges. The repeater gain shall fall to 0 dB at [10] Mhz and greater from the GSM and DCS 1800 band edges.

In special circumstances additional filtering may be required out of band and reference should be made to GSM 03.30.

5 Planning guidelines for repeaters

6 Indoor Repeater Scenario

For equipment used inside public buildings where other communication systems could operate in very close vicinity (less than [5]m) of the repeater ,antennas special care must be taken such that out of band signals are not re-radiated from within the building to the outside via the repeater system and vice versa. When using repeaters with an antenna mounted on the outside of a buildings the effect of any additional height gain should be considered. If the close coupled communication system is usually constrained, within the building it may be necessary to consider the negation of building penetration loss when planning the installation. It is the operator's responsibility to ensure that the out of band gain of the repeater does not cause disruption to other existing and future co-located radio communication equipment. This can be done by careful, choice of the repeater antennas and siting or if necessary, the inclusion of in-line filters to attenuate the out of band signals from other systems operating in the close vicinity of the repeater.

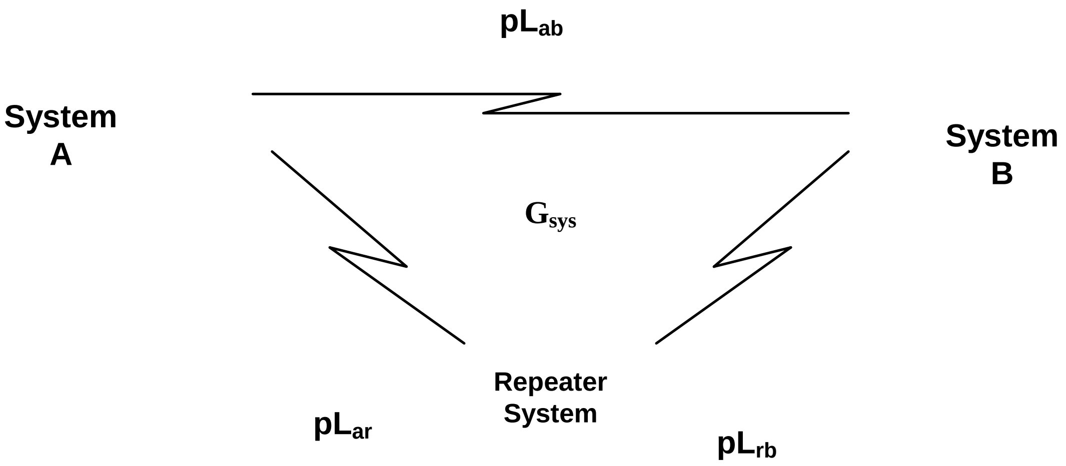
The following equation can be used to ensure an adequate safety margin in these cases:

$$G_{sys} \leq G_{com\_3} + CL_3 - M_s$$

Where G_{sys} is the out of band repeater gain plus the gain of external repeater ,antenna less the cable loss to that antenna. G_{com_3} is the antenna gain of the close coupled communication system (use 2dBi if not known).CL_3 is the measured or estimated out of band coupling loss between the close coupled communication system and the repeater (terminal to terminal) and M_s is the safety margin which should include the height gain of the external repeater antenna plus, if appropriate, the out of band building penetration loss (use 15dB If not known). See above.

REPEATER OUT OF BAND REQUIREMENT BACK GROUND

Consider the signals passing between two systems, which could be any desired radio communication systems (eg. mobile to base) or incompatible systems (eg. two different mobiles or bases operating on the same frequency). There will be a path loss between these systems which we need to ensure is not significantly affected by the addition of a GSM/DCS repeater in the environment. These systems are uncoordinated with GSM/DCS and the words *out of band are* used below to refer to the repeater performance outside of the allocated GSM/DCS bands. See below:



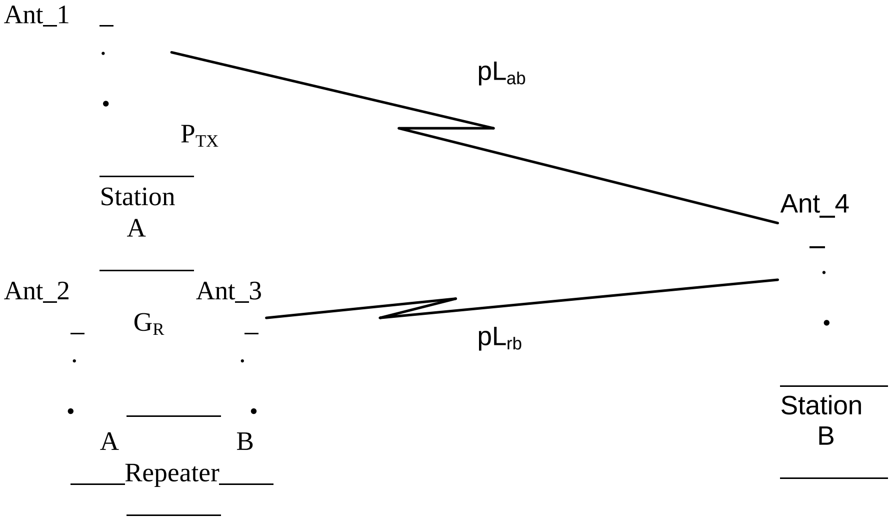
Taking the simple outdoor case first and assuming a general propagation loss model of the form C +klog(r) the total gain budget between System A and System B via a repeater system with out of band gain G_{sys} (which includes antenna gain) is:

$$-pL_{ar} + G_{sys} - PL_{rb} = -2C - k(\log x + \log y) + G_{sys} \quad \text{dB}$$

Where x is the distance from System A to the repeater system and y is the distance between the repeater and System B.

Thus the minimum total path loss occurs when either x or y is at its minimum value independent of the propagation type. In other words the worse case situation will arise when the repeater is physically close to one or other of the systems (A or B). In this case the "direct" path loss pL_{ab} can be assumed to be very similar to the path loss from the repeater system to the far system excluding, for the moment, any differences in the height gain. i.e.: $pL_{ab} \cong pL_{rb}$ for System A close to the repeater System.

The coupling losses between the radio stations in each system will also depend upon the respective antenna gains. In the following situation a repeater and Station A are closely coupled.



Since the path loss between System B and the repeater (pL_{rb}) and System A and B (pL_{ab}) is similar for a closely coupled situation it is useful to compare the EIRP of a signal transmitted from Station A with the signal re-transmitted from the repeater.

$$EIRP_A = P_{TX} + G_{ANT\_1}$$

$$EIRP_R = P_{TX} - C_{ar} + G_R + G_{ANT\_3}$$

Where C_{ar} is the close coupling loss between the terminals of System A and the repeater, G_R is the gain of the repeater in the direction A to B, G_{ANT_1} and G_{ANT_3} are the gain of Ant_1 and Ant_3 respectively (including cable loss).

If we constrain $EIRP_R$ to be less than $EIRP_A$ by a safety margin M_s dB to "protect" System B against height gain differences between Ant_1 and Ant_3 and any other implementation factor we wish to include (eg: building penetration losses) then:

$$EIRP_R + M_S + EIRP_A$$

And the repeater gain at a given frequency out of band should be:

$$GR \leq G_{ANT\_1} + C_{ar} - G_{ANT\_3} - M_S$$

The above also holds for the effect of System B upon A if the value of repeater gain out of band in the direction B to A is substituted for G_R.

This value of gain would ensure that an out of band system would see an added component via the repeater no greater than the "direct" path. This must be considered further for the case when the systems A and B are part of a desired radio communication link. The worse case scenario would be if a direct sine of sight exists between Ant_4 and Ant_1 and also Ant_3, producing strong Rayleigh fading. Although this is unlikely since Ant_1 and Ant_2 must be closely coupled and Ant_2 must be physically remote from Ant_3 to achieve the desired isolation in band operators should take steps to avoid this occurrence. In a typical urban situation a large number of multipath components are more likely and the effect of the repeater would be to increase the signal mean (about 3 dB?) and erode some of the fade margin. This should be well within the implementation margin of all mobile communication systems. It is not anticipated that static communication systems would suffer either (however if the unforeseen case arose the repeater antenna could be easily re-sited to give the required isolation). Note that the susceptible area will depend upon the directional properties of Ant_3 and therefore will be smaller for a higher gain antenna.

Since the out of band frequency response adjacent to the inband frequencies will be the most design critical the values for parameters in band are used for the out of band frequencies. Thus the values given in GSM 03.30 can be used in the limiting case to calculate the safety margin for the adjacent out of band systems.

Taking the scenario for a repeater antenna mounted on a building or tower with undesired close coupling between an out of band system and the repeater at ground lever, GSM 03.30 gives a value for height gain of 9 dB for a change in reference height from 1.5 to 10 m. A safety margin of +9dB is proposed for the outdoor case.

A practical figure of 50dB for the close coupling (terminal to terminal) is proposed for C_{ar}. The worst case re-radiation of undesired signals arises when the gain of Ant_3 is much larger than the gain of Ant_1, therefore the following figures are used to calculate the out of band gain for the repeater from the equation above:

M_S = +9 dB

C_{ar} = 50 dB

G_{ANT_3} = +18 dBi

G_{ANT_1} = +2 dBi

This gives the maximum bi-directional out of band gain for the repeater as + 25 dB for the worst outdoor case.

In the vast majority of cases the coupling loss between the repeater and the out of band communication system will be greater than 50 dB and the safety margin accordingly much higher. For out of band frequencies far from the inband frequencies the safety margin above will not degrade therefore a roll off in the repeater response does not seem to be necessary but has been included in the specification to avoid leaving the gain wideband and uncontrolled. Further study is required to check that transmitted power levers from out of band systems will not compromise the in-band performance with this level of gain.

In-building Public, Case

The scenario below is relevant to a repeater installed in a public building where other out of band communication systems may be operating in close vicinity. If close coupling between an indoor out of band system and a repeater with an externally mounted antenna takes place the normal building penetration loss are not experienced by the out of band system, this will affect the safety margin. Figures for building penetration losses are notoriously varied and a range of values for building penetration losses are discussed in GSM 03.30. A value of 15 dB is proposed as representative. Building penetration losses tend to increase with frequency and this will affect the safety margin. On the other hand path losses are greater at higher frequencies so that the areas that might be affected are smaller. It is possible that the externally mounted repeater antenna may have additional height gain if it is mounted on an upper floor. In these cases it is the responsibility of the operator to ensure that close coupling between an out of band system and the repeater is avoided or reduced to cause no disruption to other radio communication systems.

Because of the range in operational and installation possibilities it is more appropriate to give general guidance in GSM 03.03 on the use of in-building repeaters rather than a specify a gain figure for indoor applications. A simple formulae to estimate the maximum gain the repeater should be set to is given in GSM 03.30 to allow the operator to plan installations on a site by site basis.

Annex F:
Error Patterns for Speech Coder Development

F.0 Introduction

This Annex attempts to summarise all necessary background information for "Error Patterns for Speech Codec Development", (Change request SMG 117/96 to GSM 05.50, SMG2 TDoc 164/95). The Annex contains information on the file structure and the usage of given soft decision values.

F.1 Channel Conditions

The number of test conditions have to be limited in order not to have to many subjective test conditions. Therefore pure rayleigh fading has been chosen as a propagation condition. This condition represents all multipath conditions which have a delay spread significant shorter than one bit period (3,7 μ seconds.). Therefore the pure rayleigh fading statistics of bit errors is similar to those of TU and RA (although this is a rice statistic) propagation conditions. Even for HT the energy of pathes with big delay is small compared to the energy transmitted in the first bit period. Therefore the HT bit error statistics is not so far away from pure rayleigh fading. Significant differences can be expected for EQ conditions or a real two path model with equal strength of both pathes. Nevertheless pure rayleigh fading seems to be sufficient for speech codec optimization.

For the FH case vehicular speed within one time slot is assumed to be zero and consecutive time slots are completely decorrelated (ideal FH). It has to be noted that up to 200 /100 km/H for GSM /DCS the variation of the channel impulse response within one time slot can be neglected. Also for RA250 / 130 the effect is not very big. Therefore no vehicle speed within one time slot is a reasonable assumption. Complete decorrelation of consecutive time slots can be achieved by a vehicle speed of 70 / 35 km / h for GSM/ DCS without FH or by FH over a sufficient frequency range depending on the vehicular speed (4 frequencies spread over 10 Mhz should be sufficient to achieve almost ideal FH performance at low vehicular speed). Therefore ideal FH is a good assumption for a lot of cases in GSM. Especially at the beginning of GSM FH is not always available. Therefore for TCH / HS development two error patterns without FH and 3 km / h were provided.

As a disturbance source co-channel interference has been chosen .It can be stated that the bit error statistics for the noise and adjacent channel interference is similar to co-channel interference. Therefore this condition is sufficient for codec development.

F.1.1 Simulation Conditions

All simulations are based on floating point calculations in all parts of the transmission chain. No quantization effects are taken into account. Channel filtering is assumed in order to achieve the performance for co-and adjacent channel performance. No tolerance of the filter bandwidth are taken into account . The equalizer consists of a 16 state viterbi equalizer.

F.1.2 Available Error Patterns

For TCH/ HS 6 error patterns were available. They are described in the attached documents from 1991. Due to the fact that this error patterns are not available anymore at ETSI 4 new patterns with ideal FH and co-channel interference have been produced and will be distributed SEG (4, 7, 10 and 13 dB).

F.2 Test Data for the half rate speech coder

F.2.1 File description

This section gives a description of the test pattern available for the development of the half rate speech coder and the associated channel coding.

All files mentioned in the present document are recorded on 1600 BPI.

There are six different test patterns : EP1, EP2, EP3, EP4, EP5 and EP6. Two files are available for each error pattern. The first one contains the soft decision values and chip errors and the second the error patterns of the corresponding TCH / FS channel. All test patterns are generated under the condition of rayleigh fading and co-channel interference.

EP1/ 2 / 3 are without any speed (no doppler spectrum) but with frequency hopping over an unlimited number of frequencies. This means, that the fading of different time slots is uncorrelated.

EP4 and EP5 is without frequency hopping and the mobile speed is 3 km/h.

EP6 is with a random input (noise).

In the following table the file names are given for each test pattern.

Test pattern	**File name Soft decision values and chip error patterns**	**File name Error pattern TCH / FS**
EP1	SDCEPCI10RFFH_1.DAT	EPTCHFSCI10RFFH_1.DAT
EP2	SDCEPCI7RFFH_1.DAT	EPTCHFSCI7RFFH_1.DAT
EP3	SDCEPCI4RFFH_1.DAT	EPTCHFSCI4RFFH_1.DAT
EP4	SDCEPCI10RFNFH_1.DAT	EPTCHFSCI10RFNFH_1.DAT
EP5	SDCEPCI7RFNFH_1.DAT	EPTCHFSCI7RFNFH_1.DAT
EP6	SDCEPRAN_1.DAT	EPTCHFSRAN_1.DAT

F.2.2 Soft decision values and chip error patterns

Each file consists of 6001 records with a fixed record length of 512 byte.

The program RCEPSD.FOR can read these files (FORTRAN 77). The error patterns and soft decision values of selected records are written to SYS$OUTPUT. The first record contains some parameters of the simulation in the order as described in the following:

1. NTSLOT : number of times slots (INTEGER*4)
2. EBN : Chip energy divided by noise density (REAL*4)

   if greater than 50 no noise at all
3. SIDB : co-channel interference C/I (REAL *4)

   if greater than 50 no interference at all
4. LFN : Indication frequency hopping (LOGICAL* 4)

   =.TRUE with frequency hopping

   =.FALSE. without frequency hopping

In the following records the time slots of a GSM full rate TCH are stored (two half rate channels). The test data are starting at the beginning of a 26-frame multiframe. One record contains four time slots and each time slot consists of 2*57=114 bytes (one byte for one info chip of a time slot). The last 56 byte of each record are not used. Each byte contains a seven bit integer value and a sign (twos complement representation, range -128 to 127). This data representation is supported by VAX FORTRAN 77 BYTE representation. The soft decision value of a demodulated chip can be calculated by dividing the stored integer value by eight and by taking the absolute value. If the chip is demodulated correctly, the sign is positive and in the case of an chip error the sign is negative. The soft decision information is given by the following equation:

$$sd = - \ln(P_e /(1-P_e))$$

P_e - error probability of a chip

In the case of a TCH/FS the error patterns can be used in the following way (multiplication of the bits with the soft decision values including the sign):

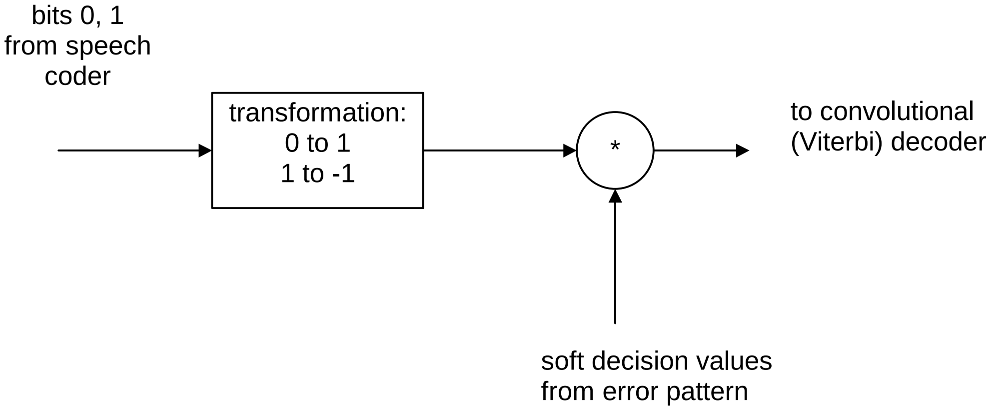


Figure A.1

The input of the Viterbi decoder can be used for the metric computation in the usual way. For the TCH / HS the error patterns can be used in the same way for convolutional coding. If block codes with hard decision only are used the soft decision has to be exchanged by the hard decision value.

F.2.3 Error patterns of corresponding TCH/FS

These error patterns are generated from the soft decision values described above. They consist of the error positions of the speech frames. The program REPTCHFS.FOR can read files containing error patterns of a TCH / FS (FORTRAN 77). The record length used in the files is not fixed. The following table gives the structure of the file. Each line is one record:

NBITCI, NBICHII, IDUMMY	3 values INTEGER*4
NLOOP	1 value INTEGER*4
LFH	1 value LOGICAL*4
EBN	1 value REAL*4
SIDB	1 value REAL*4
DUMMY	1 value REAL*4
ILOOP	1 value INTEGER*4
NFEHLERG, IED	2 values INTEGER*2
IFV(I), I=1,.....,NFEHLER	NFEHLERG values INTEGER*4

ILOOP	1 value INTEGER*4
NFEHLERG, IED	2 values INTEGER*2
IFV(I), I=1,.....,NFEHLER	NFEHLERG values INTEGER*4
ILOOP	1 value INTEGER*4
NFEHLERG, IED	2 values INTEGER*2
IFV(I), I=1,.....,NFEHLERG	NFEHLERG values INTEGER*4
-1	1 value INTEGER*4
PFEHLCI,PFEHVCII,DUMMY	3 values REAL*4

In the following example the variables are described with more details:

NBITCI - number of bits in class I

NBITCII - number of bits in class II

EBN, SIDB, LFH - as described above

NLOOP - number of the next speech frames

ILOOP - position of the next speech frame with bit errors
1 i= ILOOP i= NLOOP

NFEHLERG - number of errors in this speech frame

IED - bad frame indication of this speech frame
= 1 : bad frame detected
= 0 : no bad frame detected

IFV (I) - array with all error positions in this speech frame:
possible positions of class I : 1,....,182
possible positions of class II : 183,....,260

PFEHLCI - error probability class I

PFEHLCII - error probability class II

DUMMY,
IDUMMY - these values have no information
(for compatibility reasons necessary)

Speech frames without any errors are not included in the error pattern.

The number of correct speech frames can be calculated by the difference of numbers ILOOP. The end of the error pattern is indicated by the ILOOP =-1.

In the data delivered by the TCH / FS speech coder bits have to be changed at the positions indicated in the error patterns.

Annex G: Simulation of Performance

G.1 Implementation Losses and Noise Figure

All simulations are based on floating point calculations in all parts of the transmission chain. No quantization effects are taken into account. Channel filtering is assumed in order to achieve the performance for co.- and adjacent channel performance. No tolerance of the filter bandwidth are taken into account. In order to cover the performance of a real receiver an additional implementation margin of two dB shall be allowed. This means, that a simulated value at 7 dB C/I_c corresponds to the performance of a real receiver at 9 dB C/I_c. Taking a reasonable noise figure (8 dB) into account a simulated value of 6 dB Eb/N0 corresponds to the performance of a real receiver at 8 dB Eb/N0 which corresponds to the ref. Sensitivity input level of GSM 05.05.

G.1.1 Assumed Equalizer

The equalizer consists of a 16 state viterbi equalizer.

G.1.2 Accuracy of Simulations

At very low error rates the accuracy of the simulations become poor. The following table gives the lowest error rate for a certain GSM channel at which error rates can be taken from the simulations.

TCH / F4.8	10^{-4}
TCH / F2.4	10^{-5}
TCH / H2.4	10^{-4}

In case that a simulated value is below the given minimum in the curves the minimum is indicated.

G.1.3 Simulation Results

Fig 1 to 18 show the performance (simulated values) for ref.sensitivity and dynamic propagation conditions.

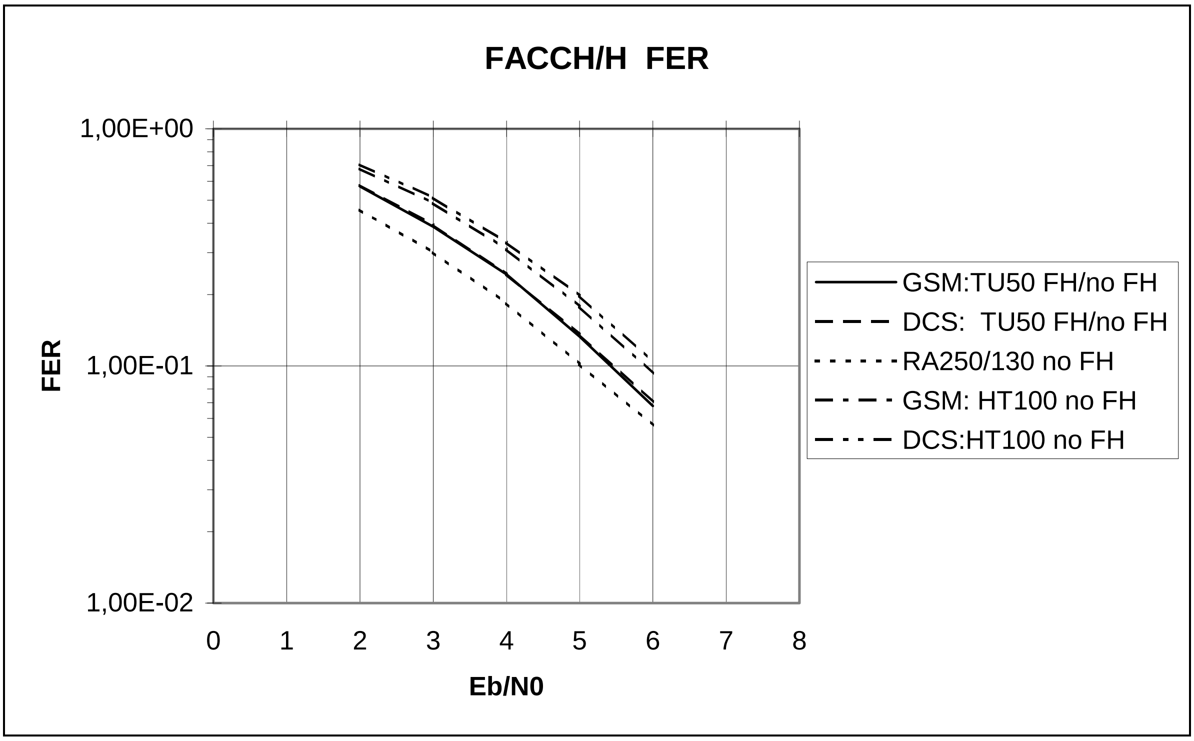


Figure 1

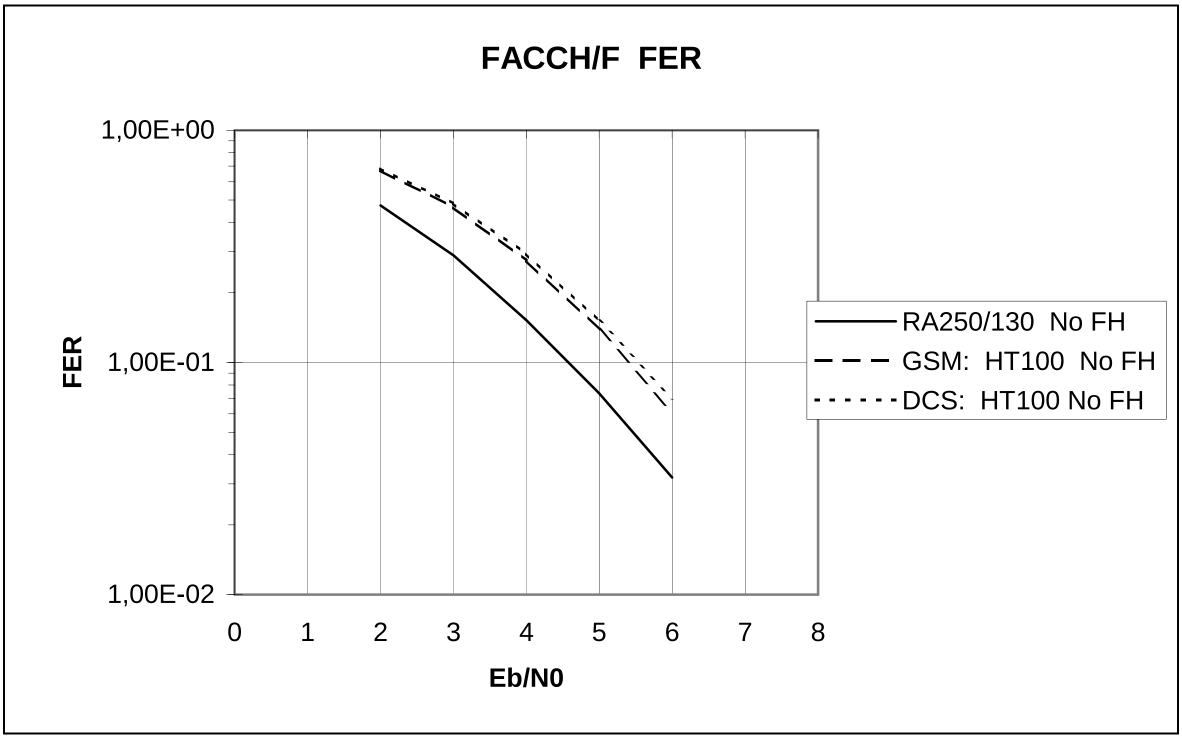


Figure 2

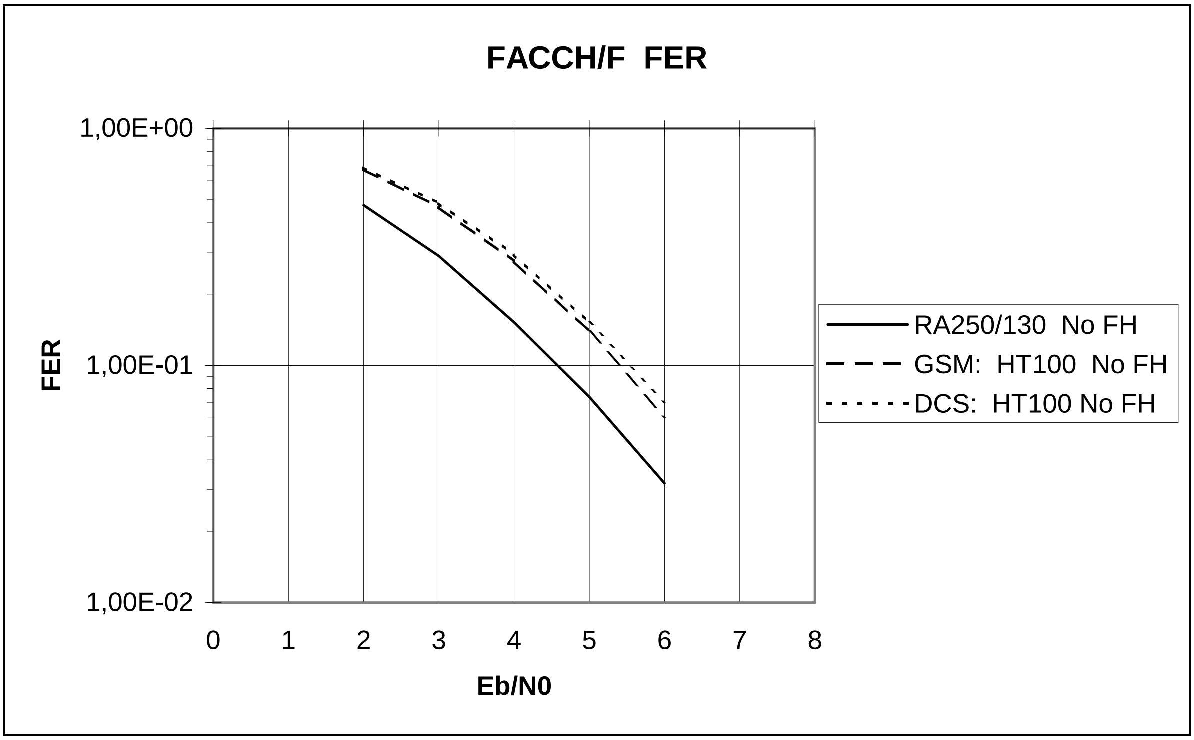


Figure 3

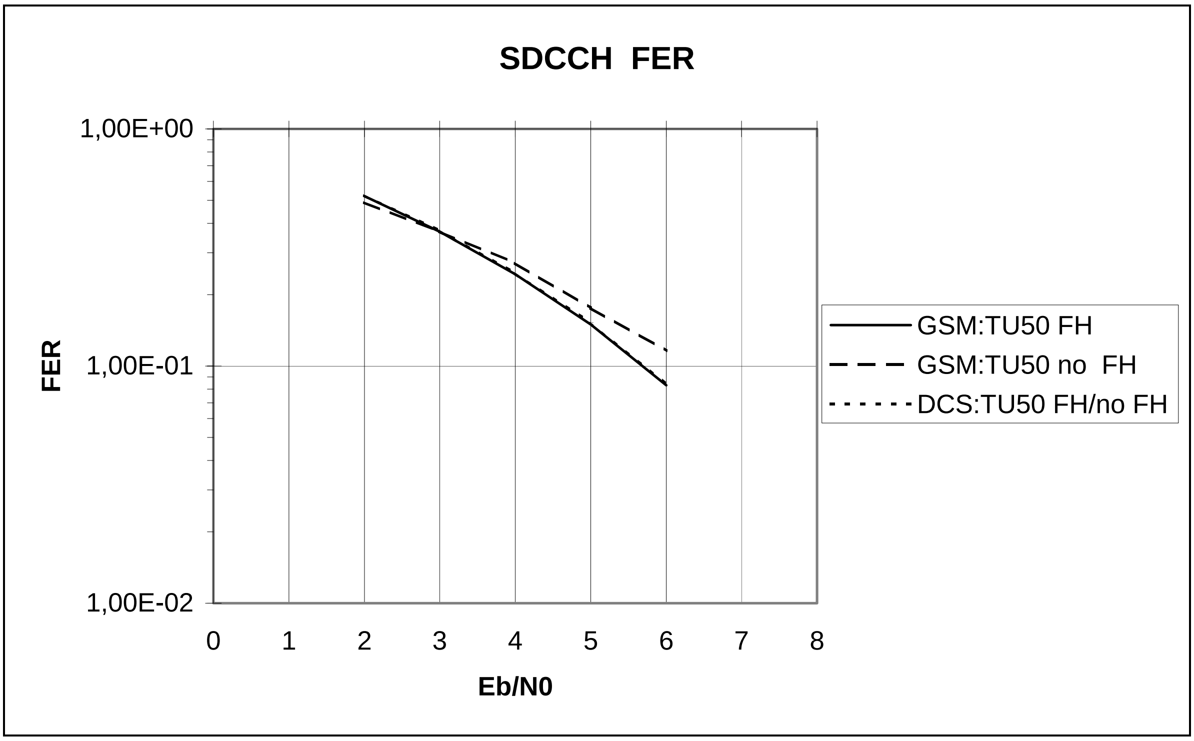


Figure 4

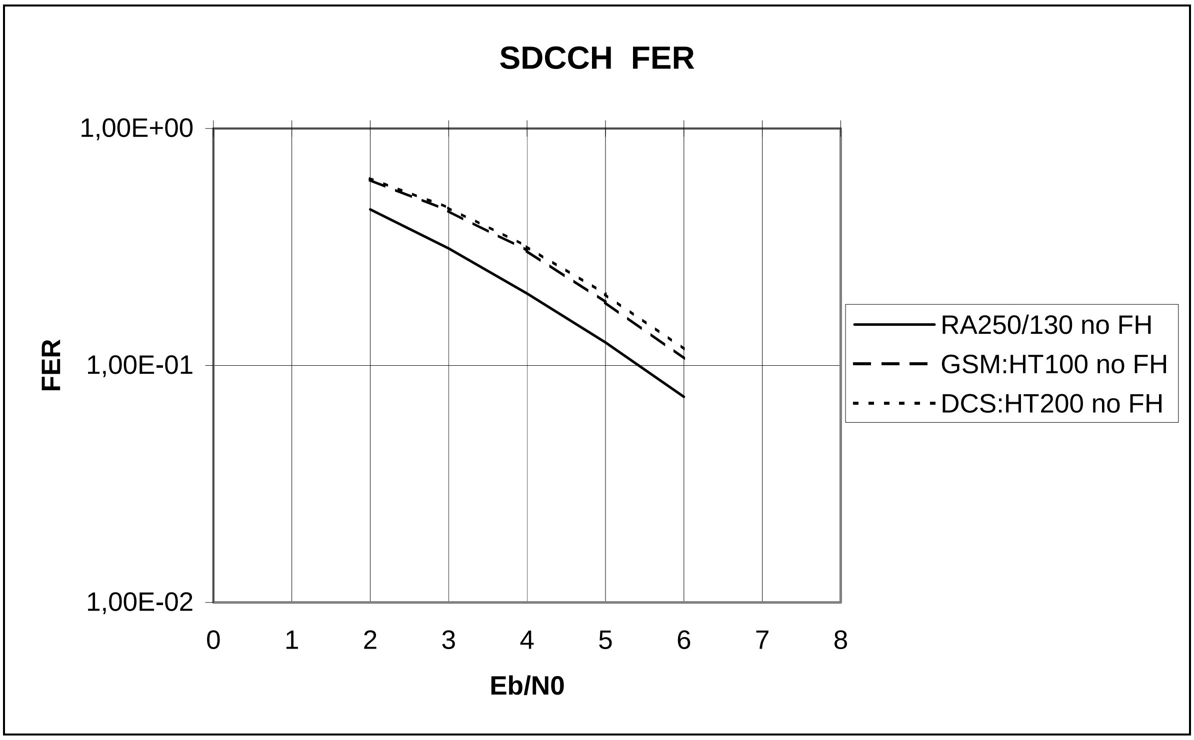


Figure 5

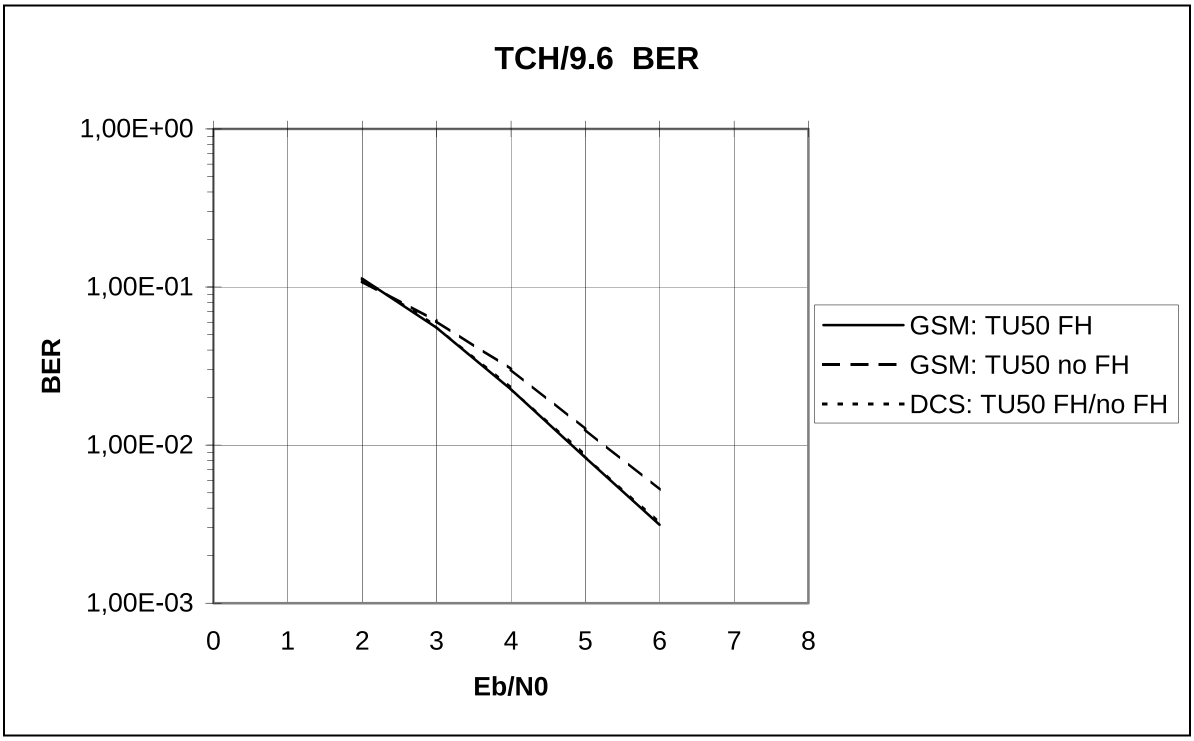


Figure 6

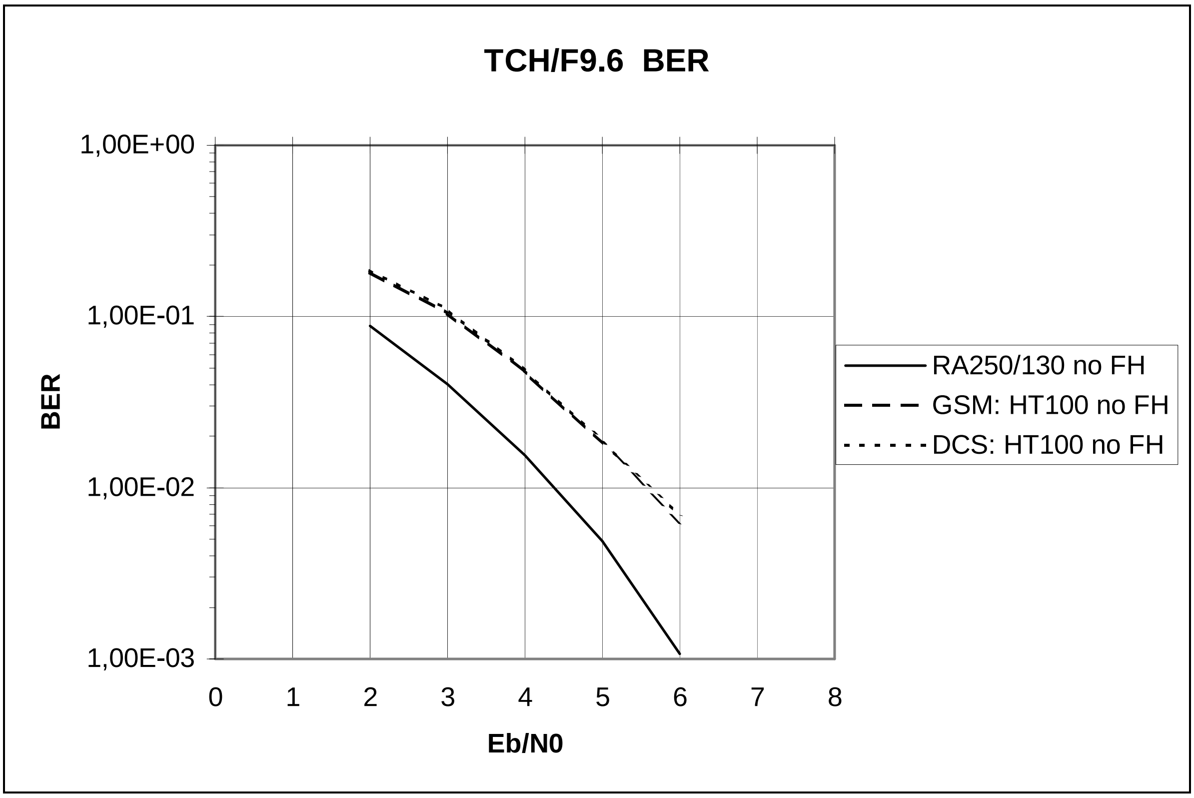


Figure 7

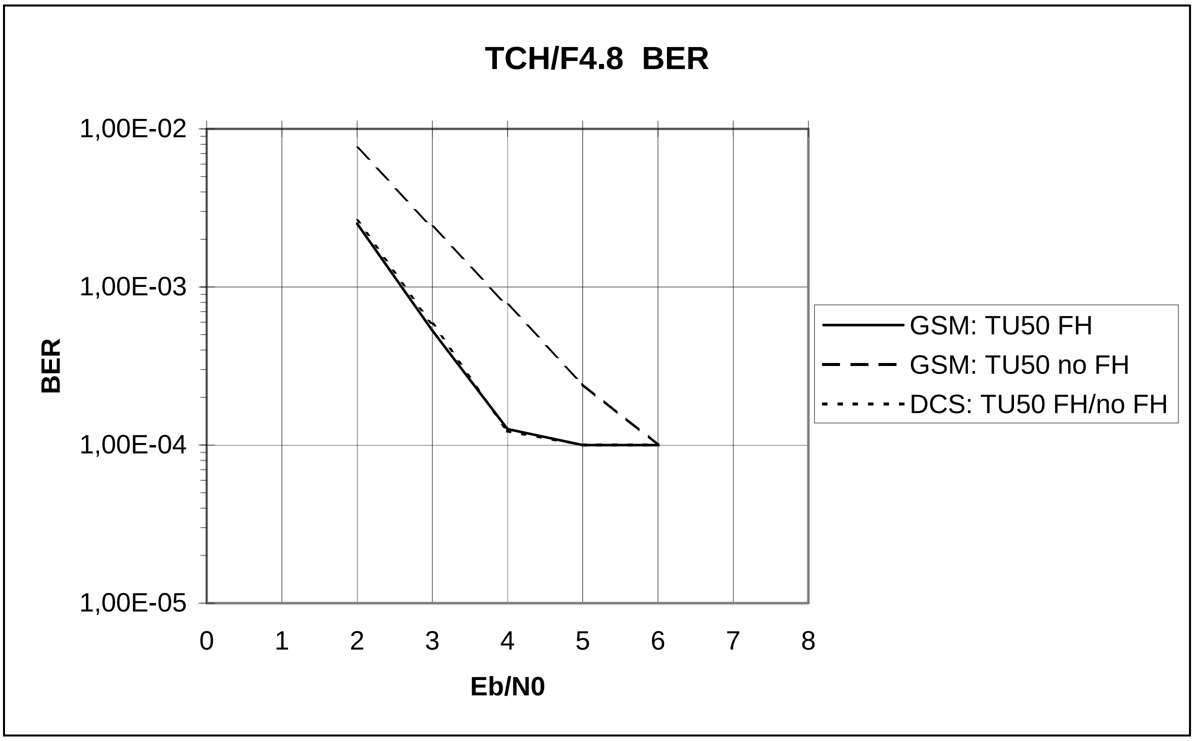


Figure 8

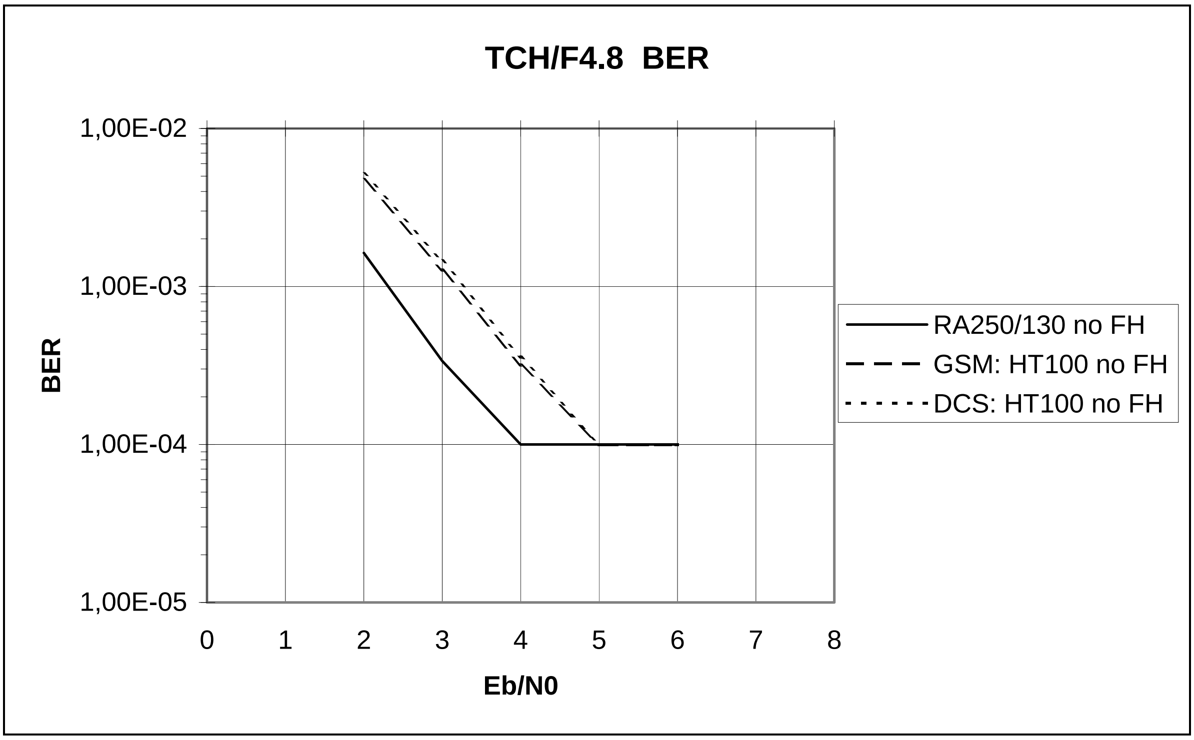


Figure 9

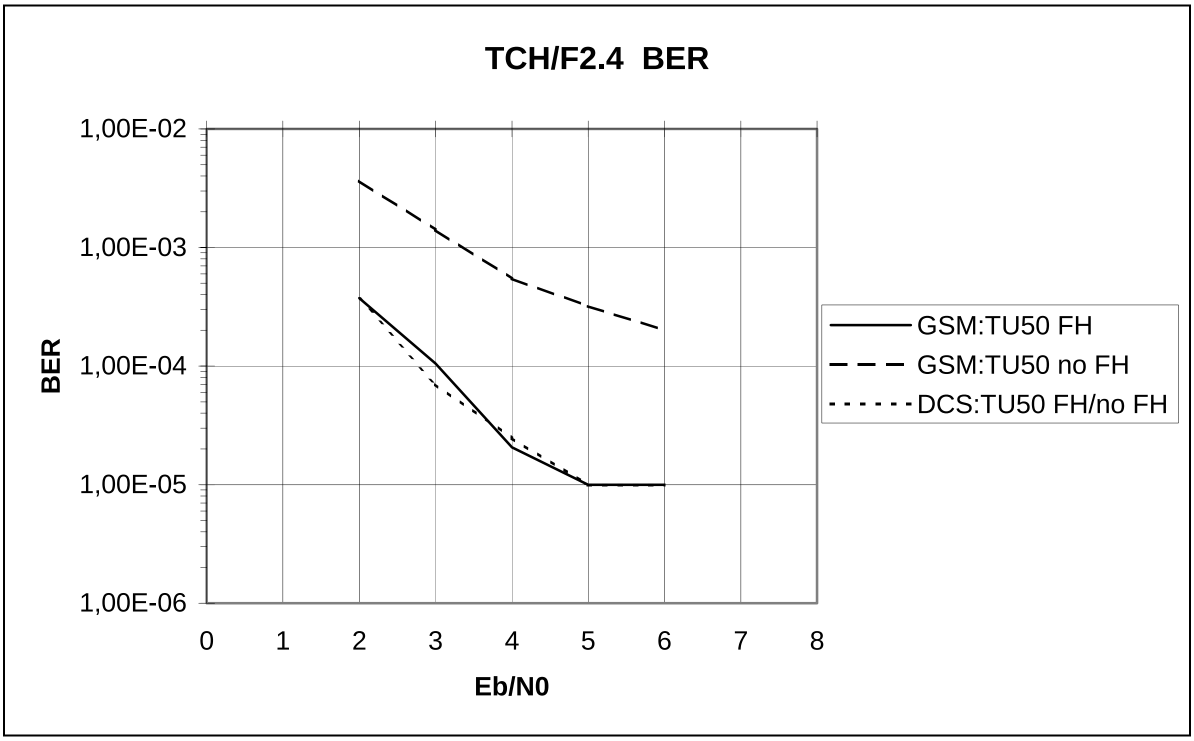


Figure 10

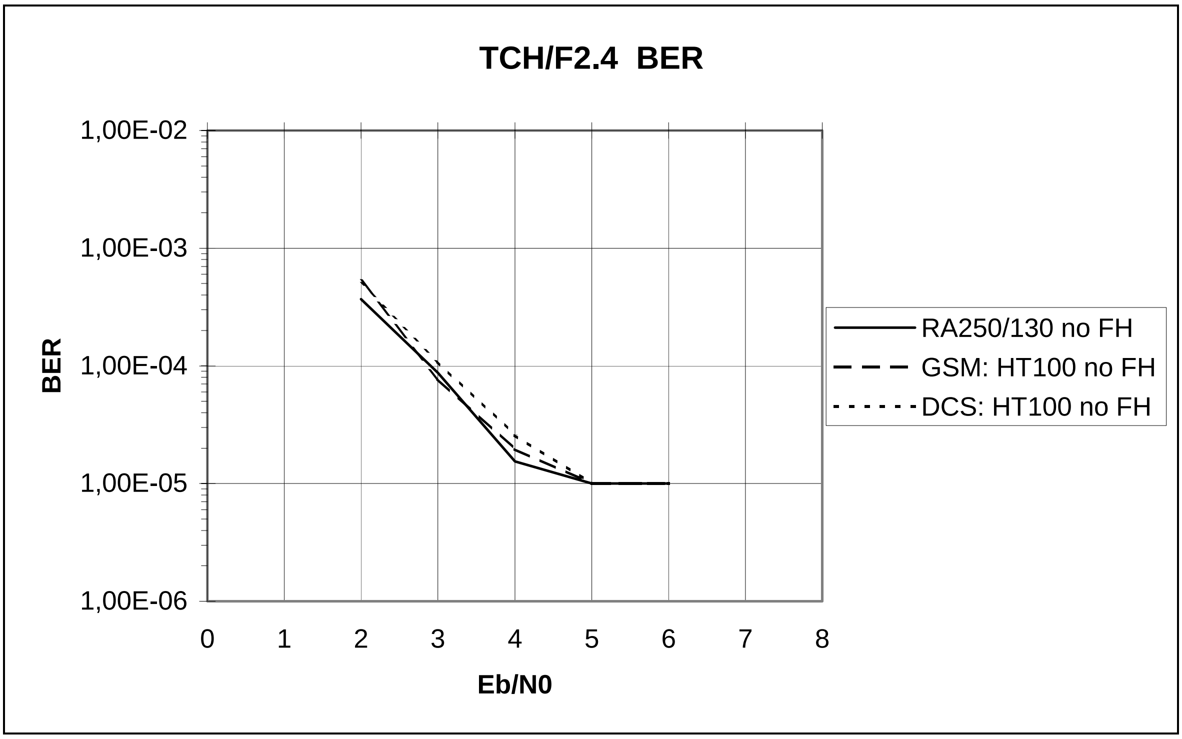


Figure 11

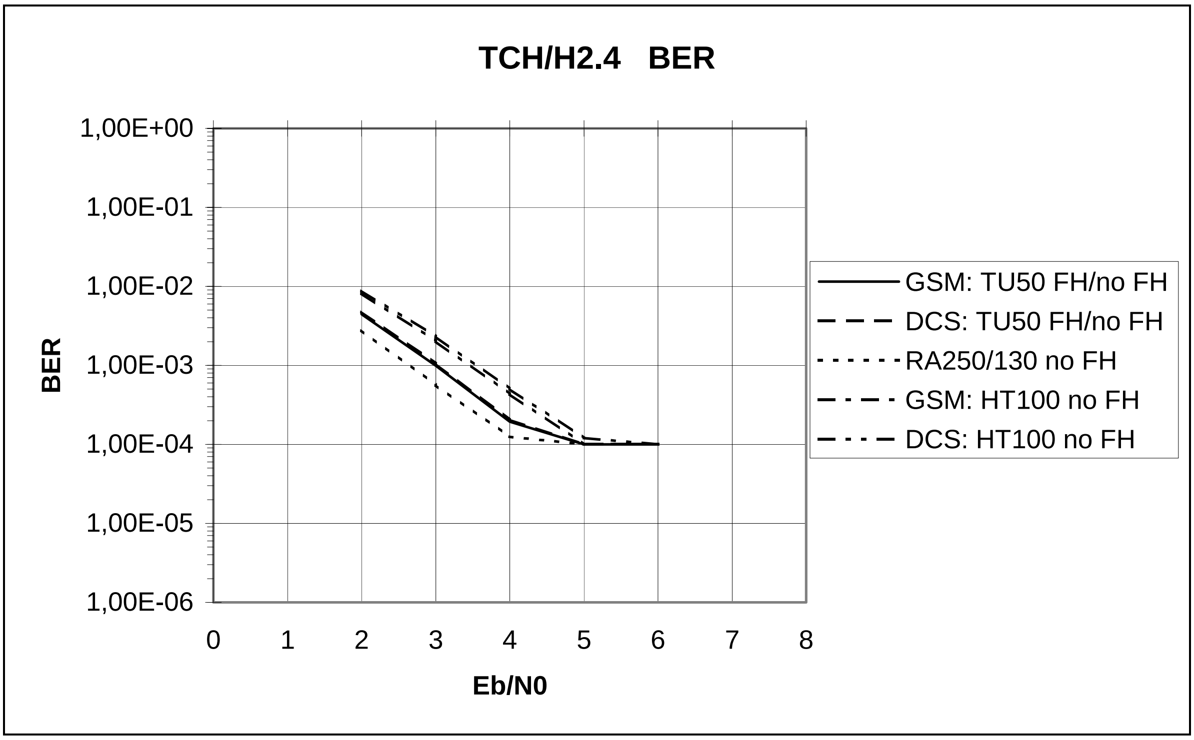


Figure 12

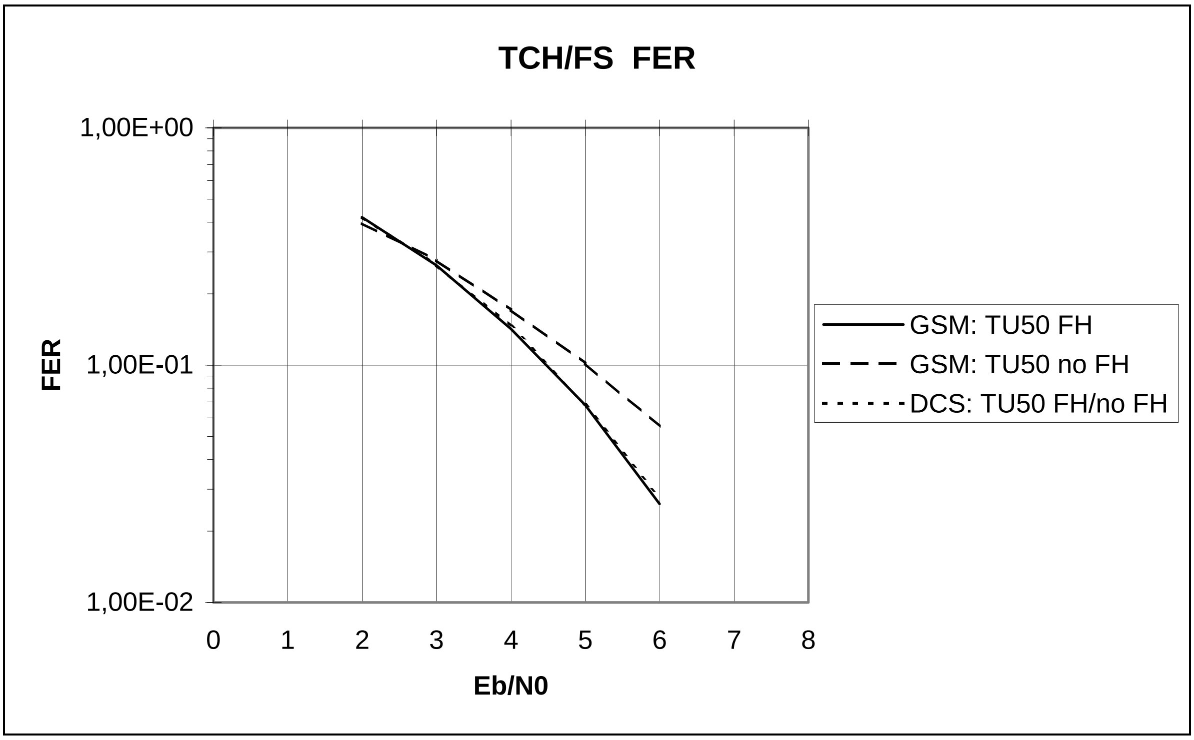


Figure 13

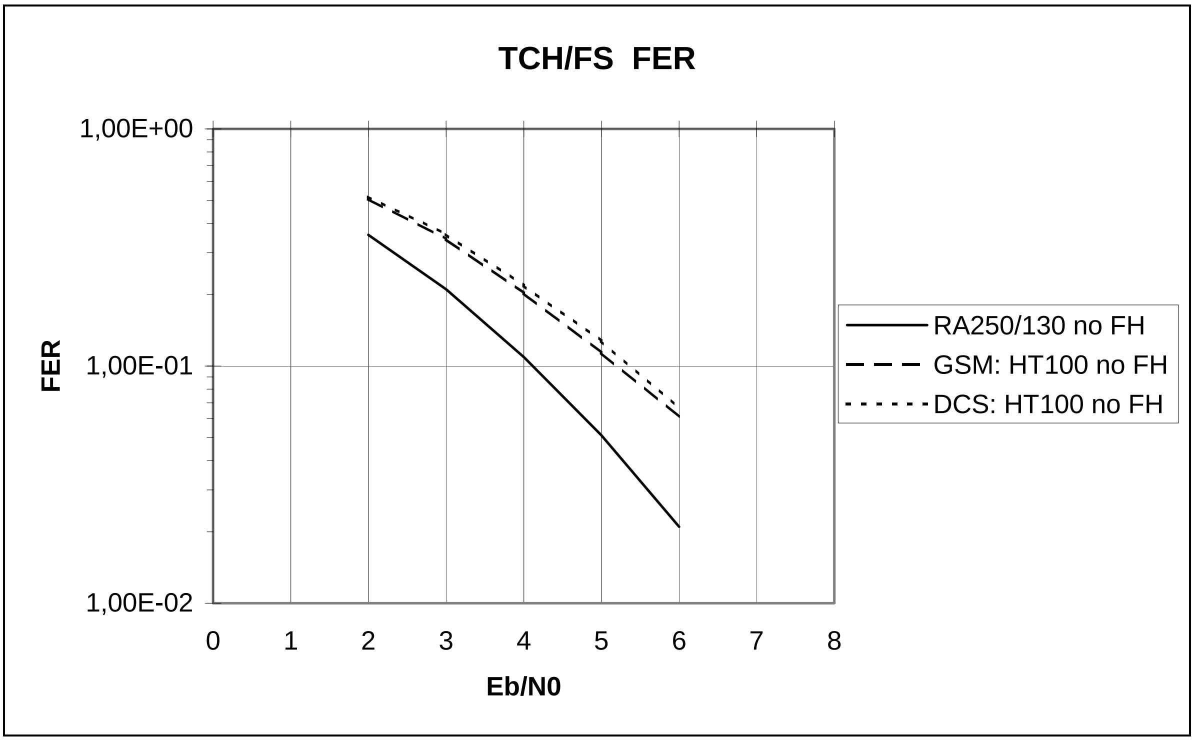


Figure 14

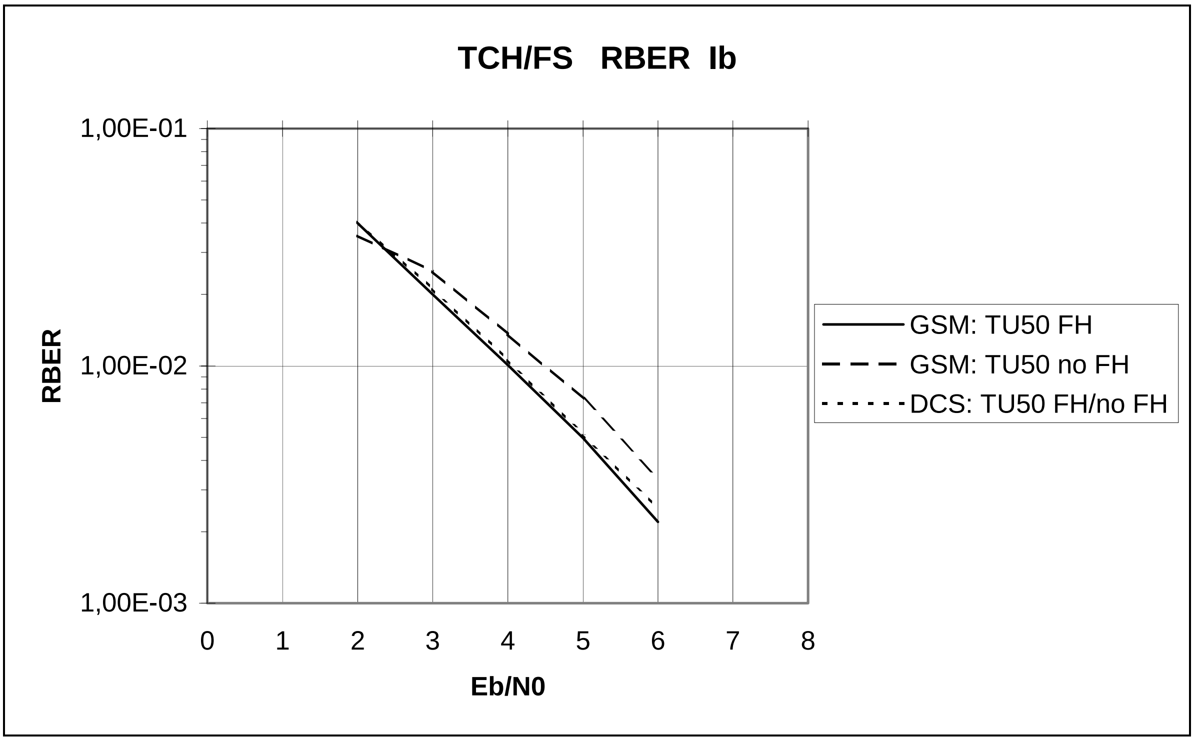


Figure 15

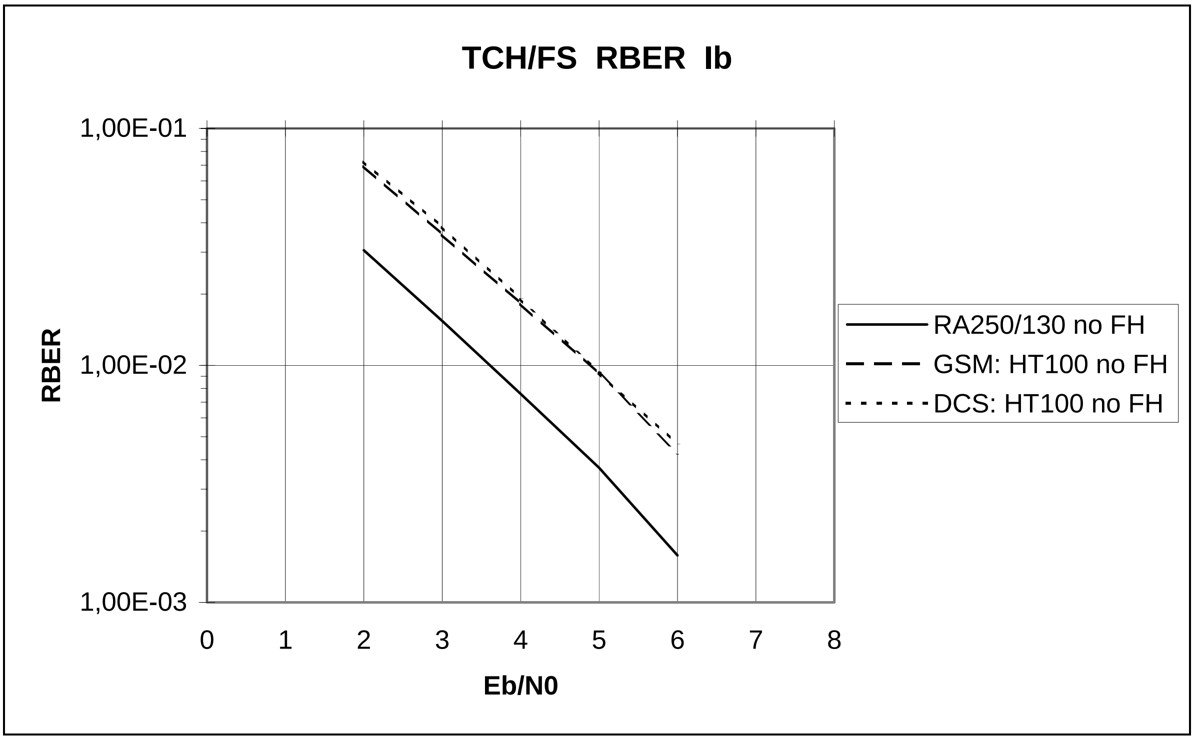


Figure 16

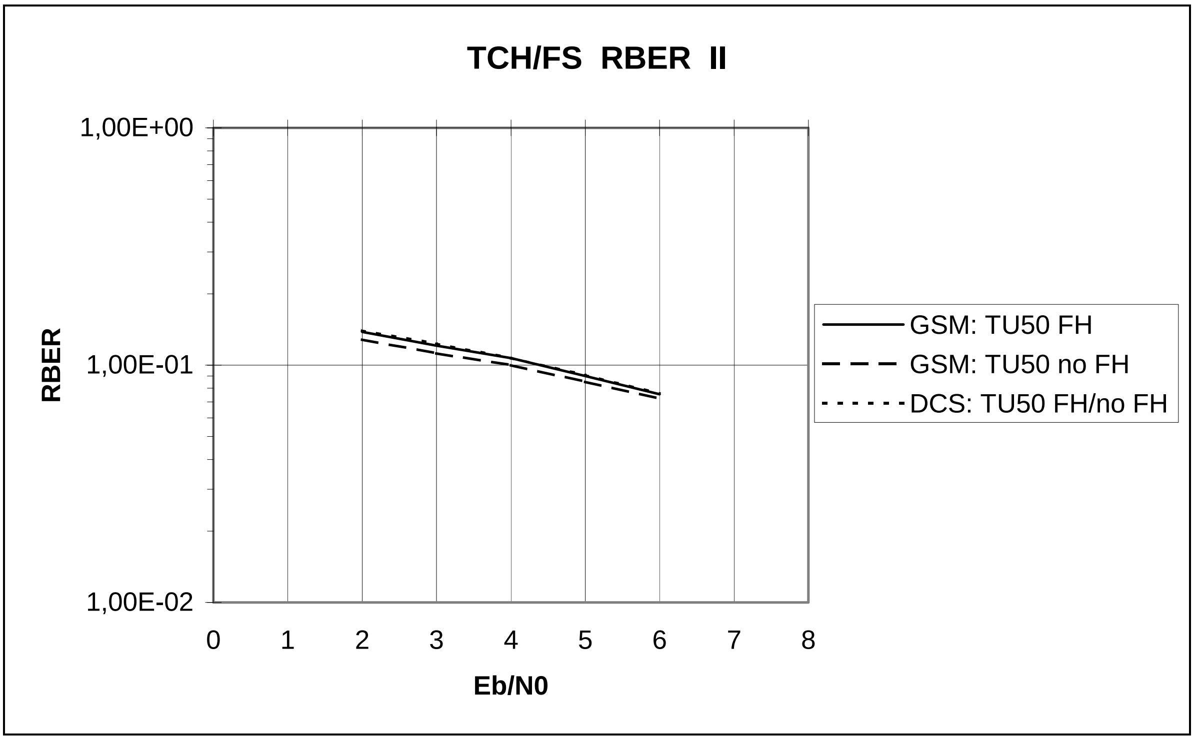


Figure 17

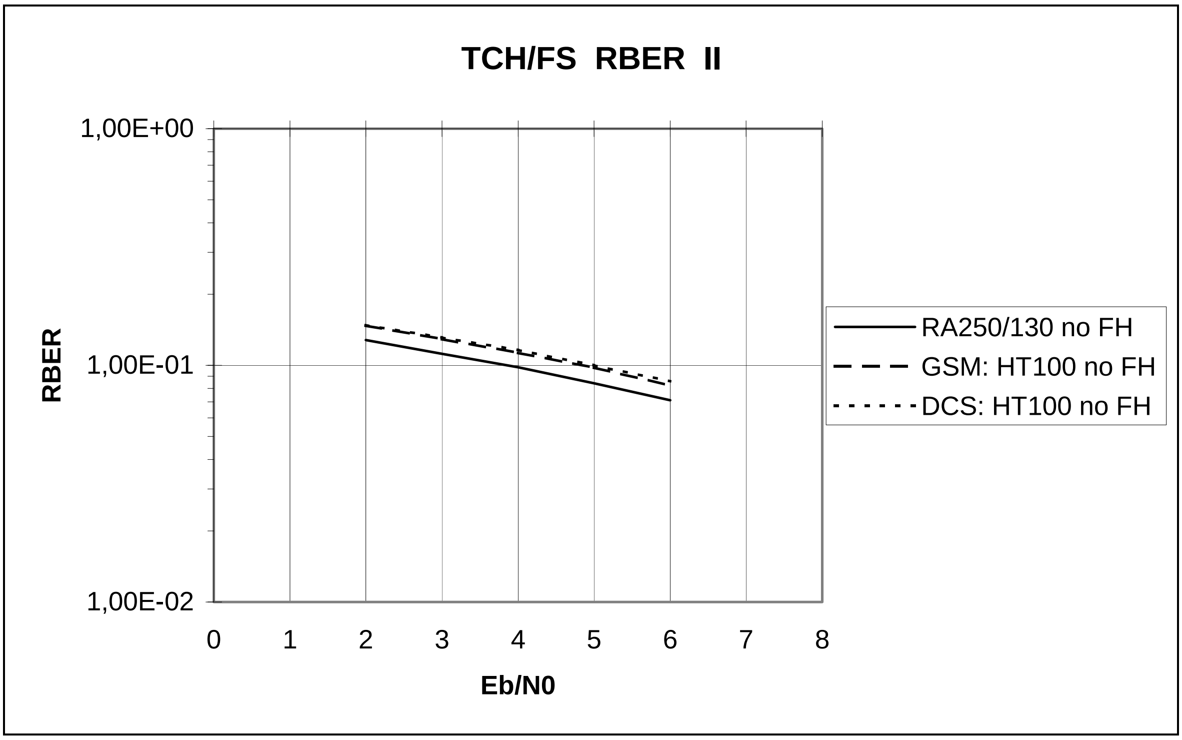


Figure 18

G.2 Reference Structure

The reference configuration with respect to channel coding is according to 'Proposed text for draft Recommendation GSM 05.03', August 1994 from Alcatel (vers. 4.1.2H). 'Most recent text for section 3.2 of GSM 05.03', Motorola ,Sept. 1994 contains a slightly modified interleaving scheme'. This means the exchange of the ‚mapping of bits on even and odd positions within a time slot. It can be stated that the performance is independent from the modification.

In the following the most significant bits of class I which are protected by a CRC code are called class Ia. The other bits of class I are called class Ib. The terms FER and RBER have the same meanings described in GSM 05.05 for the TCH/FS.

G.2.1 Error Concealment

Error concealment is done in a way as described in the TCH/HS C-code which is provided by Motorola. This means that bad frames are detected by the CRC and an additional criterium in the channel decoder. Computation of FER and RBER includes the use of both criteria. Therefore no specification of the α factor is required. In addition the UFI according to the ANT proposal is calculated. It has to be noted that the present document does not include additional BFI according to a set UFI flag and an inconsistency in the speech codec data. This means that type approval and testing has to be done only with BFI and UFI indication given by the channel decoder.

G.2.2 Implementation Losses and Noise Figure

All simulation are based on floating point calculations in all parts of the transmission chain.

No quantization effects are taken into account . Channel filtering is assumed in order to achieve the performance for co.-and adjacent channel performance. No tolerance of the filter bandwidth are taken into account. In order to cover the performance of a real receiver an additional implementation margin of two dB shall be allowed. This means, that a simulated value at 7 db C/I_c corresponds to the performance of a real receiver at 9 dB C/I_c.

Taking a reasonable noise figure (8dB) into account a simulated value of 6 dB Eb/NO corresponds to the performance of a real receiver at 8 dB Eb/NO which corresponds to the ref. Sensitivity input level of GSM 05.05.

G.2.3 Assumed Equalizer

The equalizer consists of a 16 state viterbi equalizer.

G.2.4 Simulation Results

All simulations are based on 40000 simulated speech frames. fig. 1 to 15 show the performance (simulated values) for ref. sensitivity and interference propagation conditions. The FER and RBER class Ib and II is given.

Furthermore the probability that the BFI or UFI is set is given: FER (BFI or UFI). A RBER class Ib is given for those frames which have not a BFI or UFI indication (bit error in those frames which are considered not to be bad or unreliable): UFI RBER class Ib.

G.2.5 Proposed Values for Recommendation GSM 05.05

The following values are proposed for ref. Sesitivity of GSM900 in Recommendation GSM 05.05:

	Static	TU50 no FH	TU50 ideal FH	RA250 no FH	HT100 no FH
FER	0.025%	4.1%	4.1%	4.1%	4.5%
RBER class Ib	0.001%	0.36%	0.36%	0.28%	0.56%
RBER classII	0.72%	6.9%	6.9%	6.8%	7.6%
FER (BFI or UFI)	0.048%	5.6%	5.6%	5.0%	7.5%
UFI RBER class Ib	0.001%	0.24%	0.24%	0.21%	0.32%

The following values are proposed for ref. Sensitivity of DCS1800 in Rec. GSM 05.05:

	Static	TU50 no FH	TU50 ideal FH	RA130 no FH	HT100 no FH
FER	0.025%	4.2%	4.2%	4.1%	5.0%
RBER class Ib	0.001%	0.38%	0.38%	0.28%	0.63%
RBER classII	0.72%	6.9%	6.9%	6.8%	7.8%
FER (BFI or UFI)	0.048%	5.7%	5.7%	5.0%	8.1%
UFI RBER class Ib	0.001%	0.26%	0.26%	0.21%	0.35%

It has to be noted that for the static case the error rates for FER, UFI and RBER class Ib are so low that an upper bound according to the simulation results at 3 dB E_b / N_o has been taken.

The following values are proposed for ref. Interference of GSM900 in Rec. GSM 05.05:

	Static	TU3 ideal FH	TU50 no FH	TU50 ideal FH	RA250 no FH
FER	19.1%	5.0%	5.0%	5.0%	4.7%
RBER class Ib	0.52%	0.27%	0.29%	0.29%	0.21%
RBER classII	2.8%	7.1%	7.1%	7.1%	7.0%
FER (BFI or UFI)	20.7%	6.2%	6.1%	6.1%	5.6%
UFI RBER class Ib	0.29%	0.20%	0.21%	0.21%	0.17%

The following values are proposed for ref. Interference of DCS1800 in Rec. GSM 05.05:

	TU1.5 no FH	TU1.5 ideal FH	TU50 no FH	TU50 ideal FH	RA130 no FH
FER	19.1%	5.0%	5.0%	5.0%	4.7%
RBER class Ib	0.52%	0.27%	0.29%	0.29%	0.21%
RBER classII	2.8%	7.1%	7.2%	7.2%	7.0%
FER (BFI or UFI)	20.7%	6.2%	6.1%	6.1%	5.6%
UFI RBER class Ib	0.29%	0.20%	0.21%	0.21%	0.17%

For a ramdom RF input the overall reception performance shall be such that, on average less than one undetected bad speech frame (false bad frame indication BFI) in 10 seconds will be measured.

G.3 Simulation of performance for AMR

This section provides some background information about the simulation results of AMR reference sensitivity and interference performance given in GSM Rec. 05.05. The simulations were carried out jointly by Ericsson, Nokia and Siemens.

G.3.1 System Configuration

The reference system for AMR channel coding simulation is configured according to GSM 05.03. The simulations were carried out by using the simulator developed for the AMR qualification and selection.

G.3.2 Error Concealment

Computation of FER and RBER relies on the CRC only. In other words, no other mean than the CRC have been used to identify bad frames.

G.3.3 Implementation Losses and Noise Figure

All simulations are based on floating point calculations in all parts of the transmission chain. No quantization effects are taken into account . Channel filtering is assumed in order to achieve the performance for co- and adjacent channel performance. No tolerance of the filter bandwidth are taken into account. In order to cover the performance of a real receiver an implementation margin of two dB shall be allowed. This means that a simulated value at 7 dB C/I_c corresponds to the performance of a real receiver at 9 dB C/I_c. Accordingly, the "-3dB" C/I_c condition was simulated at 4 dB C/I_c and the "+3dB" C/I_c condition at 10 dB C/I_c.

Taking a reasonable noise figure (8dB) into account, a value of 6 dB E_b/N_0 was used to simulate the performance of a real receiver at 8 dB E_b/N_0 which corresponds to the Reference Sensitivity input level of GSM 05.05.

G.3.4 Assumed Equalizer

The equalizer which is imbedded in the ETSI AMR radio simulator consists of a 16 state Viterbi equalizer.

G.3.5 Simulation Methods

A total of 200000 frames of data were used for each simulated condition. Correspondingly, the soft error patterns used in the simulations were 200000 speech frames long. The ETSI (AMR) radio simulator was used to generate the necessary error patterns. The same error pattern generated for a propagation condition (e.g. TU50 no FH at 7 dB C/I_c) was used to simulate all types of channel (TCH/AFS12.2, TCH/AFS10.2, TCH/AFS7.9, TCH/AHS7.9, ...).

G.3.5.1 Simulation for speech

Random data of 200000 speech frames were used as input data of channel encoder.

G.3.5.2 Simulation for DTX

The performance of the SID update transmission was simulated by calculating EVSIDUR (Erased Valid SID_UPDATE frame Rate) associated to an adaptive speech traffic channel. In DTX testing we must ensure that codec continuously operates in discontinuous transmission mode and this was achieved by connecting all zero signal into speech codec input.

EVSIDUR figures were derived by taking frame classification for each transmitted SID_UPDATE frame and counting the number of incorrect classifications respect to the total amount of the transmitted SID_UPDATE frames. Transmission period of SID_UPDATE frames was 6 frames in TCH/AFS channel and 8 frames in TCH/AHS channel.

The length of the simulations was 200000 frames which resulted in the transmission of 24999 SID_UPDATE frames in TCH/AHS channel and 33332 frames in TCH/AFS channel.

G.3.5.3 Simulation for inband channel

There are two parallel inband channels, one for ModeIndication and one for ModeCommand/ModeRequest. For each of the two inband channels the same algorithm where used. First the current mode was set to a random mode (one of four). Then after every 8 times the current mode had been transmitted a fair coin was flipped, and depending on the outcome of that the current mode was changed to the next higher or lower mode. If the current mode was already the lowest and the coin indicated that a lower mode should be selected, the current mode was retained. Similarly, if the current mode was the highest and the coin indicated that a higher mode should be selected, the current mode was retained. This means that there was a coin flip once every 2*8 = 16 speech frames (once every 320 ms) for each of the two inband channels or that in total there was a coin flip once every 160 ms. The simulation results put into the table was then the mean FER for the two inband channels.

All simulations for inband performance assumed that four modes where currently active.

G.3.6 Remarks to the Data in GSM 05.05

Like the specifications for GSM HS and EFS, all data given in GSM 05.05 are properly rounded.

In the case of TU50, TU50 no FH leads systematically to *a little bit* better performance than TU50 IFH in many cases of GSM900 AHS, DCS1800 AFS and DCS1800 AHS. Possible explanation is that the FH algorithm used in the AMR radio simulator is not good enough to simulate the ideal FH, e.g. it may not be so good as that used for the GSM EFR simulations. Take the reference interference performance in the case of GSM 900 as an example. TCH/EFS has an FER of 9%/3% for TU50 no FH/IFH, respectively, which corresponds to a factor of 3 (=9/3). In our simulation, TCH/AFS12.2 has an FER of 6%/3.5% for TU50 no FH/IFH, respectively, i.e. a factor of only 1.7 (=6/3.5). Regarding to this point, the following solution approved at SMG2#31 meeting was used: For the TU50 IFH (GSM900 AHS, DCS1800 AFS & AHS), the same requirements as for the TU50 no FH are set in GSM 05.05 – as people may have done also for GSM FR, HR and EFR simulations. This is reasonable since theoretically the TU50 IFH performance should be at least as good as TU50 no FH.

Annex H:
GSM 900 Railway System Scenarios

Title:	**UIC system scenarios requirements**
Source:	**UIC / DSB**
Date:	**04.09.1996**

H.1 Scope

The present document discusses relevant system and interference scenarios of UIC equipments as a first step in determining the RF requirements in GSM 05.05 for the R-GSM band, both as regards intra-system performance of a UIC network and towards other systems.

H.1.1 List of some abbreviations

AG	Antenna Gain, incl. cable losses etc.
FPL	Free Path Loss
MCL	Minimum Coupling Loss, incl. cable losses etc.
MIM	Multiple Interferers Margin
sMS	Small MS

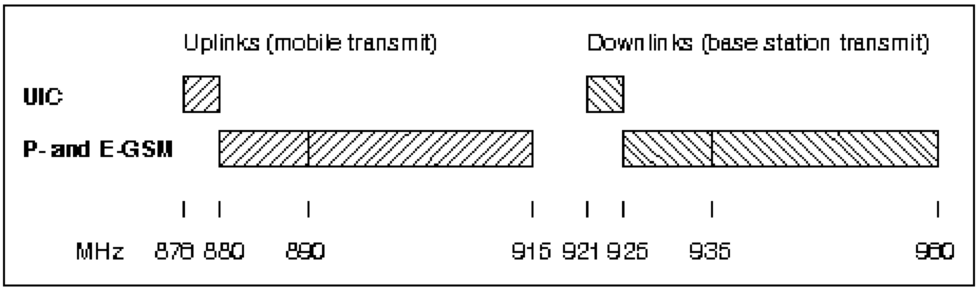
H.2 Constraints

H.2.1 GSM based systems in the 900 MHz band

Following the decision by CEPT ERC in their June 95 meeting to shift the UIC frequencies and to amend CEPT recommendation TR 25–09 accordingly, UIC systems are now designated on a European basis the band 876–880 MHz (mobile station transmit) paired with 921–925 MHz (base station transmit).

The GSM based systems in the 900 MHz band are thus, cf. GSM 05.05 and TD 139/95 of SMG2#15):

	ARFCN's	Uplink carriers	Downlink carriers
P-GSM	1..124	890,2–914,8	935,2–959,8
E-GSM	975..124 (mod1024)	880,2–914,8	925,2–959,8
UIC	955..974	876,2–880,0	921,2–925,0



H.2.2 Other systems

Other possible systems in the 900 MHz band include TETRA and various national public and military systems. These systems are not considered any further in the present document.

Neither is UIC co-existance with DCS1800 considered in any detail, assuming that the RF requirements for UIC equipments at frequencies far away from the operational frequencies shall be identical to P-GSM.

H.2.3 UIC systems outline

For reasons of economies of scale, timescales required, availability of equipment, the possibility to use also public networks, etc., it has been important for the UIC that its new radio system for integrated train communications as far as possible is based on an existing standard, namely GSM900.

This also implies that UIC RF parameters should not be different to P-GSM, except where justified by the different frequency band requiring modified filters.

In order to able to roam onto public networks, a UIC MS as a minimum shall be able to operate over both the UIC and the P-GSM band and it must meet the RF requirements of either. This requires a pass band of any "duplex" filters in the UIC MS of 39 MHz. At the same time the transition band is only 6 MHz between the downlink (of UIC) and the uplink (of P-GSM). This implies a greater filter complexity than for P-GSM and probably even E-GSM, unless possibly some related RF performance parameters are relaxed for the UIC MS, e.g. blocking and wide band noise — in line with the scenarios.

It should be studied whether the UIC MS filtering can be of a less order if operation is not required or tolerances (filter ripple) are relaxed in the GSM extension band.

H.2.4 Fixed UIC RF parameters

At least the following GSM900 parameters in GSM 05.05 are expected to apply equally to UIC equipments, referred to by the relevant section in 05.05:

4.1 Output power and power levels

4.4 Radio frequency tolerance

4.6 Phase accuracy

6.2 Ref. sensitivity level

6.3 Ref. interference level

6.4 Erroneous frame indication performance

H.3 Methodology

The relevant scenarios of interference are identified and a worst case analysis is applied along the lines of GSM TR 05.50. Thus, assuming a single interferer, the performance required to avoid the interference altogether is calculated based on the minimum coupling loss to the victim.

This method is justified by its simplicity and the typical applications of a UIC system for train control purposes and exchange of voice messages to override signalling information etc., whereby safety is a major concern. Furthermore, UIC systems will typically be noise limited, and any interference scenario not meeting the requirements will lead to a less reliable coverage.

To take in account any multiple interferers, the likelihood of a scenario and the possible consequences of it not being met, interference margins to the worst case requirement may be introduced.

H.3.1 Scenarios

The identification of relevant scenarios is based on the system scenarios of TD SMG 61/91 (part of technical report GSM 05.50). These are

1. Single BTS and MS
2. Multiple MS and BTS, one network
3. Multiple MS and BTS, different networks
4. Colocated MS, different networks
5. Colocated BTS, different networks
6. Colocation with other systems.

Only the scenario aspects related to close proximity are considered, as the fixed UIC RF parameters set the range as for GSM.

For UIC systems there will not be more than one operator in a region. Even at the border between such regions, the train control applications shall assure that an MS does not get close to a new BTS while still remaining on the old network. Thus 1 and 2 above are the only relevant UIC intra-system close proximity scenarios, with the addition of 4bis (colocated MS, one network) and 5bis (colocated BTS, one network).

Scenarios 3–5 are related to coexistance between UIC and other GSM900 systems.

Other systems in the 900 MHz band (scenario 6) are not considered further, as explained in section 2.2.

Thus the scenarios for investigation are as follows

Scenario 1: Single BTS and MS (UIC only)

Consider a UIC MS close to its serving BTS and no interferers, i.e. only the wanted signal levels involved and no interferers.

Scenario 2: Multiple MS and BTS of one network (UIC only)

Consider multiple UIC MS at different distances from a common serving site, i.e. mostly near-far effects. The site will typically be a single BTS with one or two carriers. Sectored cells or umbrella cells will seldom be used in railways networks.

Scenario 3: Multiple MS and BTS of different networks (UIC vs GSM)

Consider interference between a BTS and foreign MS's at close proximity: An MS being distant from its own BTS may transmit at maximum power close to a foreign BTS, and may be exposed to that one transmitting at maximum power to distant MS's of its own.

Scenario 4: Colocated MS of different networks (UIC vs GSM)

Consider GSM and UIC MS's at close proximity, each being served by its own BTS, neither colocated nor synchronised. Thus the uplink of the one MS transmitting at full power can interfere with the downlink of the other MS receiving at reference sensitivity.

Scenario 4bis: Colocated UIC MS (UIC only)

Consider UIC MS's at close proximity, transmitting at full power and receiving at the limit sensitivity.

Scenario 5: Colocated BTS of different networks (UIC vs GSM)

Consider a BTS transmitting to a distant MS at full power, thus possibly interfering with a close proximity BTS of the other system receiving a faint signal from a distant MS.

A co-siting and optimised UIC BTS - GSM BTS scenario could be relevant in some cases, e.g. where a public GSM operator operates a UIC system on behalf of a railway, or where the same sites (e.g. a leaky cable system in tunnels) are used for the UIC system and a public GSM system, in order to provide public service to train passengers or to reduce cost for either system.

Scenario 5bis: Colocated UIC BTS (UIC only)

Consider the interactions between transmitters and receivers of a single or cosited BTS's.

H.3.2 Format of calculations

The max emissions level allowed is calculated to give the requirement on any noise of the source of interference, overlapping the wanted signal of the victim receiver at reference sensitivity (assume 200kHz bandwidth).

The maximum exposure signal level is calculated to give the requirement on the victim resilience against a strong signal off the channel of its wanted signal.

The interference signal levels are calculated at the antenna connector of the equipments, in line with GSM 05.05. For equipment with integral antenna only, a reference antenna with 0dBi gain is assumed.

Correspondingly, the Minimum Coupling Loss is defined between the antenna connectors of either end of the interference link, i.e. it includes the antenna gains and any losses.

H.3.3 GSM900 systems parameters

Throughout the analysis the following parameter values are assumed, using values from GSM 03.30 annex A2 where applicable

	UIC	GSM
MS (vehicle mounted):		
Antenna gain	4dBi	2dBi
Cable and connector losses	2dB	2dB
Antenna height	4m	1.5m
Output power	39dBm	39dBm
Small MS (sMS): 1)		
Antenna gain	0dBi	0dBi
Body losses 2)	3dB	10dB
Antenna height	1.5m	1.5m
Output power	33dBm	33dBm
BTS:		
Antenna gain, bore sight	18dBi 3)	12dBi
Antenna gain, 30 degr. off bore sight	4dBi	4dBi
Cable and connector losses	2dB	2dB
Antenna height	30m	30m
Output power 4)	39dBm	39dBm

Interference limit 5)

= Sensitivity – C/I – interference degradation margin 6)

=

BTS and vehicle mounted MS:	–104 – 9 – 3 =	–116 dBm
Small MS:	–102 – 9 – 3 =	–114 dBm

Note: All power levels are at the antenna connector of the equipment.

Note 1: As defined in GSM 05.05, a small UIC MS pertains to power class 4 or 5 (i.e. max 2W) and is not designed to be vehicle mounted.

Note 2: For GSM sMS a body loss of 10dB is assumed, in line with recent experiences and measurements. The lower value of 3dB assumed for UIC sMS may reflect a typical use, being carried on the body rather than held at the head. By the way, this is also the value given in GSM 03.30.

Note 3: For UIC base stations, especially serving high speed line sections, it is likely that high directivity antennas with a correspondingly high gain will be used to provide the required high grade and quality of coverage.

Note 4: BTS RX diversity has not been considered. If this should be the case the BTS transmit power should be increased about 3 dB.

Note 5: In receiver bandwidth: Assume 200kHz.

Note 6: For a noise limited system, the GSM reference sensitivity is not valid if the receiver is exposed to interference at the same time, nor is the 9 dB C/I ratio valid at the sensitivity limit. Thus a 3 db interference degradation margin is added in the worst case analysis in accordance with GSM 03.30. This is a compromise value, that allows a slight desensitisation of the victim in the case of interference.

H.3.4 Minimum Coupling Loss

The minimum coupling loss is calculated assuming free space path loss at 900 MHz (31.5dB + 20log(d) [m]), a reasonable assumption for the close proximity scenarios in question.

For all MS to BTS scenarios, as a simple assumption, the minimum coupling loss is assumed to be at a downward angle of 30 deg. off bore sight (i.e. double the vertical distance) with a reduced BTS antenna gain as given above.

Sce-nario	Equipm#1	Equipm#2	Dist. m	FPL dB	AG#1 dB	AG#2 dB	MCL dB
1&2	UIC MS	UIC BTS	52	66	2	2	62
1&2	UIC sMS	UIC BTS	57	67	–3	2	68
4bis	UIC MS	UIC MS	2	38	2	2	34
4bis	UIC MS	UIC sMS	5	45	2	–3	46
4bis	UIC sMS	UIC sMS	2	38	–3	–3	44
5bis	UIC BTS	UIC BTS	— as for GSM				30
3	GSM MS	UIC BTS	57	67	0	2	65
3	GSM sMS	UIC BTS	57	67	–10	2	75
3	UIC MS	GSM BTS	52	66	2	2	62
3	UIC sMS	GSM BTS	57	67	–3	2	68
4	UIC MS	GSM MS	20	58	2	0	56
4	UIC MS	GSM sMS	5	45	2	–10	53
4	UIC sMS	GSM MS	20	58	–3	0	61
4	UIC sMS	GSM sMS	2	38	–3	–10	51
5	UIC BTS	GSM BTS	— see section 3.1				40

H.3.5 Interference margins

A Multiple Interferers Margin (MIM) of 6dB is introduced to tighten the scenarios requirements where GSM base stations are the source of interference, to take into account their multiple and continuous carriers. The likelihood of multiple close proximity mobiles active on overlapping timeslots is considered rather small, so no MIM applies for mobiles producing interference. Also for interfering UIC base stations no MIM applies, considering the low number of carriers.

However, no MIM shall apply for scenario requirements for blocking, which is considered a non-additive narrow band phenomenon.

H.3.6 Differences between E- and P-GSM

Concluding the above determination of scenarios and parameters, it may be noted that no differences apply between E- and P-GSM as regards co-existence scenarios with UIC.

H4 Transmitter requirements

If not otherwise stated, the max emissions level allowed from an interference source for a given scenario is calculated as follows

= Victim interference limit (see section 3.3)
+ MCL (see section 3.4)
– MIM (see section 3.5)

Scenario	**Source**	Victim	Intf. limit	MCL	MIM	**Max emissions**	
5	GSM BTS	UIC BTS	–116	40	6	–82	
3	GSM BTS	UIC MS	–116	62	6	–60	
3	GSM BTS	UIC sMS	–114	68	6	–52	
3	GSM MS	UIC BTS	–116	65	0	–51	
4	GSM MS	UIC MS	–116	56	0	–60	
4	GSM MS	UIC sMS	–114	61	0	–53	
3	GSM sMS	UIC BTS	–116	75	0	–41	
4	GSM sMS	UIC MS	–116	53	0	–63	
4	GSM sMS	UIC sMS	–114	51	0	–63	
5	UIC BTS	GSM BTS	–116	40	0	–76	
3	UIC BTS	GSM MS	–116	65	0	–51	
3	UIC BTS	GSM sMS	–114	75	0	–39	
5bis	UIC BTS	UIC BTS	–116	30	0	–86	
2	UIC BTS	UIC MS	—	62	0	0	Note
2	UIC BTS	UIC sMS	—	68	0	0	Note
3	UIC MS	GSM BTS	–116	62	0	–54	
4	UIC MS	GSM MS	–116	56	0	–60	
4	UIC MS	GSM sMS	–114	53	0	–61	
2	UIC MS	UIC BTS	–116	62	0	–54	
4bis	UIC MS	UIC MS	–116	34	0	–82	
4bis	UIC MS	UIC sMS	–114	46	0	–68	
3	UIC sMS	GSM BTS	–116	68	0	–48	
4	UIC sMS	GSM MS	–116	61	0	–55	
4	UIC sMS	GSM sMS	–114	51	0	–63	
2	UIC sMS	UIC BTS	–116	68	0	–48	
4bis	UIC sMS	UIC MS	–116	46	0	–70	
4bis	UIC sMS	UIC sMS	–114	44	0	–70	

Note: Max BTS emissions allowed onto another downlink:
= min BTS output power on the other downlink – C/I – MIM
= Source output power – Power control range – C/I = 39 – 30 – 9

= 0dBm

H.4.1 Transmitter requirements summary

From the results above, selecting the more stringent requirement where either MS or sMS is involved at the other end of an interference link, the following table summarises the maximum allowed unwanted emissions of the equipments in order to meet the scenarios, measured in dBm in a 200kHz bandwidth.

	(Victim uplinks)		(Victim downlinks)	
	UIC	GSM	UIC	GSM
(Source:)	876 – 880	(880) 890 – 915	921 – 925	(925) 935 – 960 MHz
UIC BTS	–86	–76	0	–51
UIC MS	–54	–54	–82	–61
UIC sMS	–48	–48	–70	–63
GSM BTS	–82		–60	
GSM MS	–51		–60	
GSM sMS	–41		–63	

H.5 Receiver requirements

Applicable to blocking requirements, if not otherwise stated, the max exposure (off-channel) signal level presented to a victim for a given scenario is calculated as follows

= Interference source output power (see section 3.3)
– MCL (see section 3.4)

Sce-nario	Source pwr.	Outp.	**Victim**	MCL	**Max exposure**	
5	UIC BTS	39	GSM BTS	40	–1	
3	UIC MS	39	GSM BTS	62	–23	
3	UIC sMS	33	GSM BTS	68	–35	
3	UIC BTS	39	GSM MS	65	–26	
4	UIC MS	39	GSM MS	56	–17	
4	UIC sMS	33	GSM MS	61	–28	
3	UIC BTS	39	GSM sMS	75	–36	
4	UIC MS	39	GSM sMS	53	–14	
4	UIC sMS	33	GSM sMS	51	–18	
5	GSM BTS	39	UIC BTS	40	–1	
3	GSM MS	39	UIC BTS	65	–26	
3	GSM sMS	33	UIC BTS	75	–42	
5bis	UIC BTS	39	UIC BTS	30	9	
2	UIC MS	5	UIC BTS	62	–57	Note
2	UIC sMS	5	UIC BTS	68	–63	Note
3	GSM BTS	39	UIC MS	62	–23	
4	GSM MS	39	UIC MS	56	–17	
4	GSM sMS	33	UIC MS	53	–20	
2	UIC BTS	39	UIC MS	62	–23	
4bis	UIC MS	39	UIC MS	34	5	
4bis	UIC sMS	33	UIC MS	46	–13	
3	GSM BTS	39	UIC sMS	68	–29	
4	GSM MS	39	UIC sMS	61	–22	
4	GSM sMS	33	UIC sMS	51	–18	
2	UIC BTS	39	UIC sMS	68	–29	
4bis	UIC MS	39	UIC sMS	46	–7	
4bis	UIC sMS	33	UIC sMS	44	–11	

NOTE: Power control is assumed.

H.5.1 Receiver requirements summary

From the results above, selecting the more stringent requirement where either MS or sMS is involved at the other end of an interference link, the following table summarises the required resilience of the equipments against strong off-channel signals in order to meet the scenarios, measured in dBm.

	(Source uplinks)		(Source downlinks)	
	UIC	GSM	UIC	GSM
	876 – 880	(880) 890 – 915	921 – 925	(925) 935 – 960 MHz
(Victim:)				
UIC BTS	–57	–26	+9	–1
UIC MS	+5	–17	–23	–23
UIC sMS	–7	–18	–29	–29
GSM BTS	–23		–1	
GSM MS	–17		–26	
GSM sMS	–14		–36	

H.6 Wanted signals levels

In this section the intra UIC system wanted signal levels are calculated.

H.6.1 Maximum wanted signal level

Scenario 1, single MS and BTS, refers.

Adaptive power control is not considered. At very high speeds and a BTS antenna located close to the track, it is expected to be too slow to react quickly enough to reduce the signal levels substantially at the passage of the mast.

Vehicle Mounted MS:

1) Max MS RX wanted signal level:
Source output power – MCL = 39 – 62
= –23dBm

2) Max BTS RX wanted signal level:
Source output power – MCL = 39 – 62
= –23dBm

Small MS:

1) Max sMS RX wanted signal level:
Source output power – MCL = 39 – 68
= –29dBm

2) Max BTS RX wanted signal level:
Source output power – MCL = 33 – 68
= –35dBm
i.e. the value above takes precedence.

H.6.2 Dynamic range of wanted signals

Scenario 2, multiple MS and BTS of one network, refers.

Within one carrier, in the extreme the BTS adjacent timeslots RX levels may range between the max level calculated above and the reference sensitivity.

Annex J: GSM 900 Railway System Scenarios

Title: **UIC RF parameters**

Source: **UIC / DSB**

Date: **28.11.1996**

J.1 Introduction

The present document presents the results of a small working group aiming to determine the RF-parameters for UIC equipments, to be in line with the scenario requirements where possible and feasible, and to find a reasonable compromise where not.

The current specifications for GSM and DCS equipments are not changed, except possibly where absolutely no implications for their implementation are expected. It has not been investigated, if and to what extent this means that some close proximity co-existance scenarios towards UIC equipments are not met.

The document is largely structured as follows:

- Basic considerations
- Discussion of transmitter characteristics
- Discussion of receiver characteristics
- Discussion of transmitter/receiver performance

At the end of the document, a list of references is given.

J.2 Basic considerations

As explained in [2], for reasons of economies of scale, availability of equipment and the timescales required, in principle, the RF-parameters for UIC equipments should not be different to standard GSM, except where affected by the different frequency band requiring modified filters.

In order to able to roam onto public networks, a UIC mobile as a minimum shall be able to operate over both the band designated for the UIC and the P-GSM band, fulfilling the RF requirements of either.

This requires a pass band of any "duplex" filters in the UIC mobile of 39 MHz. At the same time the transition band is only 6 MHz between the downlink (of UIC) and the uplink (of P-GSM). This implies a greater filter complexity than for P-GSM and probably even E-GSM. Therefore relaxations should be sought for RF parameters related to the filter in the UIC mobile, where possible while still meeting the scenario requirements. It should also be studied whether the filtering in the UIC mobile can be of a less order, if operation is not required or performance and tolerances are relaxed in the GSM extension band.

J.2.1 Types of equipment and frequency ranges

For reasons of interoperability and economies of scales, all UIC mobiles must have the capability to operate in the frequency bands mentioned above. UIC base stations, however, in general will only be required to operate in the UIC band, although co-operation arrangements could be envisaged with public band operators, requiring base stations to operate on either band.

One way of reflecting this is to define the R-GSM band to cover the UIC band only, and to require UIC mobiles to have "multiband" capabilities. However, the current principle in 05.05 requires multiband equipment to meet all requirements for each of the bands supported (and this is only described for mobiles). At the same time, in-band performances in general are referred to the frequencies of the individual bands, rather than considering that only GSM type scenarios apply within the full relevant GSM900 band, whereas the unwanted out-of-band signals originate from the other link direction and from other systems. For the UIC equipments, this approach leads to an unnecessary overlapping of the more strict out-of-band requirements with the in-band performance required to meet the relevant scenarios.

An alternative approach, to define the R-GSM band to cover both the UIC, P- and possibly E-GSM bands, is not appropriate for the general type of UIC base stations, and it does not reflect what is needed for railways operation, namely a stand alone band which mobiles would only leave under controlled circumstances for roaming.

The approach taken in here is the pragmatic one, whereever relevant for the specification, to discuss and describe the frequency ranges that must actually apply for the "UIC equipment" types described above, when later elaborating the exact wordings.

"UIC mobiles" is used throughout the text to designate either of the following:

- an MS, being a vehicle mounted equipment, or
- a small MS, for which the abbreviation "sMS" is used.

J.3 Discussion of the individual sections in 05.05

This section discusses the RF-parameters for UIC equipments and the changes required in GSM TS 05.05 [1] for their inclusion in GSM phase 2+.

Where possible and feasible, the RF-parameters are derived from the scenario requirements as set out in [2]. Otherwise a reasonable compromise is sought.

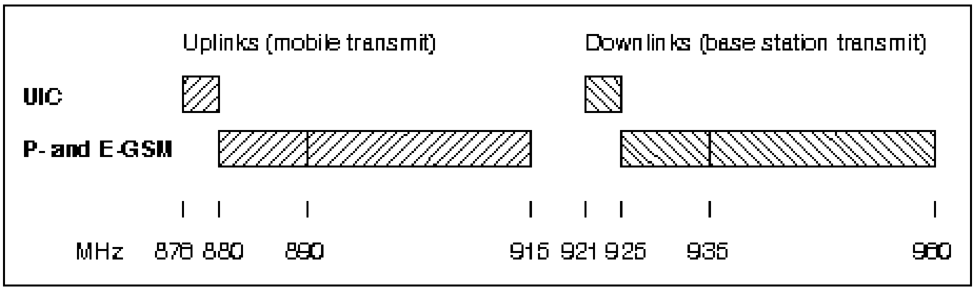
J.3.1 Scope

No change required.

J.3.2 Frequency bands and channel arrangement

As a working assumption, the UIC GSM 900 band is to be included in the 05.xx series under the term R-GSM, as described and agreed by SMG2 in [3]. Please refer to the present document for the details of the CR required for the change, but to summarise it, the GSM based systems in the 900MHz band are:

	ARFCN's	Uplink carriers	Downlink carriers
P-GSM	1..124	890,2–914,8	935,2–959,8
E-GSM	975..124 (mod1024)	880,2–914,8	925,2–959,8
UIC	955..974	876,2–880,0	921,2–925,0



J.3.3 Reference configuration

No changes are required in this section of 05.05.

J.3.4 Transmitter characteristics

The following table, copied from section 4 in [2], gives the scenarios requirements for the maximum allowed unwanted emissions of a UIC transmitter, in order not to interfere with another link.

The values corresponds to average measurements in dBm in a 200kHz bandwidth. As in 05.05, the reference point is the antenna connector of the equipment.

	(Victim uplinks)		(Victim downlinks)	
	UIC	GSM	UIC	GSM
(Source:)	876 – 880	(880) 890 – 915	921 – 925	(925) 935 – 960 MHz
UIC BTS	–86	–76	0	–51
UIC MS	–54	–54	–82	–61
UIC sMS	–48	–48	–70	–63

J.3.4.1 Output power

No change is required.

Note: Also for UIC mobiles the lowest power control level is assumed to be 5dBm.

Note: Micro BTS is not expected to be used in UIC networks.

J.3.4.2 Void

J.3.4.2.1 Spectrum due to the modulation and wide band noise

This specification is related to in-band performance only, and is closely related to the modulation, i.e. it does not include any effects of the "duplex" filter. Thus the performance should be as for standard GSM, also because the requirements are already close to what is obtainable.

Thus, as a working assumption, no change is proposed to this section of 05.05.

Note: Comparing with the applicable scenario requirements:

- UIC BTS victimising UIC downlink: 0dBm;
- UIC MS or sMS victimising the UIC uplink: –54dBm and –48dBm, respectively;

the performance specified in 05.05 is fully sufficient for the BTS, whereas the scenarios will not be met in all cases involving MS or sMS. A detailed calculation, however, has not been performed.

J.3.4.2.2a MS spectrum due to switching transients

This being a specification close to the carrier, the applicable scenarios deal with UIC MS or sMS victimising UIC or GSM uplinks:

MS	sMS	
–54	–48	dBm Scenarios requirement
+20	+20	dB Transient margin (05.50 p. A-18 [4])
–8 –8	dB	Bandwidth conversion factor into 30kHz
–––	–––	
–42	–36	dBm Performance requirement

For feasibility reasons, this is compared with the requirement in 05.05 at 1800 kHz offset only, implying a tightening for UIC MS. Nevertheless, no change is proposed, because this could make it difficult to use standard GSM technology, and because only a balanced specification with the 'spectrum due to the modulation and wide band noise' makes sense, by which the scenario requirement is not fully met anyhow, as discussed above (see 4.2.1).

J.3.4.2.2b BTS spectrum due to switching transients

Here, for one, the scenario of UIC BTS victimising the UIC downlink applies. The corresponding requirement is 0dBm, which is uncritial and requires no change to 05.05.

Note: The high value reflects the assumption that there will only be one UIC operator in an area, and thus only the coordinated case with power control to consider.

At the upper end of the transmit band, however, UIC BTS switching transients may extend into and victimise the E-GSM downlink, whereby the following applies:

–51 dBm Scenarios requirement

+20 dB Transient margin (05.50 p. A-18 [4])

–8 dB Bandwidth conversion factor into 30kHz

–––

–39 dBm Performance requirement onto E-GSM downlink

The UIC BTS power being 39dBm measured in a 300kHz bandwidth, this corresponds to –78dBc. The requirement in 05.05 at 1,2–1,8MHz from the carrier is –74dBc or –36dBm, whichever is the higher.

Nevertheless, it is suggested to stay with the 05.05 specification, considering that only mobiles operating on the outermost frequencies of the E-GSM and very close to their reference sensitivity will possibly be interfered with.

J.3.4.3.1 Spurious emissions

The principle of the spurious emissions specification in 05.05 is basically a split in two, an in-band part a), and an out-of-band part b) with more strict requirements. However, the specification is not fully clear on what is the in-band part: Does the term "relevant transmit band" refer to

- the actual transmit band of an equipment; or

- the total combined range of GSM900 as opposed to DCS1800?

The latter seems the more appropriate, assuming that the out-of-band requirement is adapted from general CEPT limits to protect all other various applications of radio reception, whereas the in-band part of the requirements should relate to co-existence scenarios for GSM network operation.

For implementation of E- or P-GSM equipments, the difference between the two interpretations may be negligible, but in any case the latter is more relaxed than the first.

For UIC equipments, capable of operation over the full GSM900 band, however, the latter definition must apply. Otherwise, requiring for multiband operation that all the requirements for each of the bands must be met, unnecessarily strict requirements would result by overlapping an out-of-band with the in-band of another band.

Thus, for UIC equipments, the "relevant transmit band" shall be:

MS and sMS: 876–915MHz;

BTS: 921–960MHz.

J.3.4.3.2 BTS spurious emissions

In order to keep a balanced specification, the BTS spurious emissions requirement in the first paragraph of this section of 05.05, referring to the conditions specified in 4.3.1a (at 1,8MHz or greater offset from the carrier), should not be tighter than what is applied for the switching transients (in 4.2.2b, at 1,8MHz or less offset from the carrier), i.e. also here the current 05.05 specification should be kept.

A tighter specification would not be of much use anyhow. For UIC, with its narrow downlink band, the BTS noise closer to the carrier is expected to be dominant, and even this is not critical, due to the coordinated scenarios. For GSM mobiles suffering this kind of interference when being close to a base station, in most cases the source would rather be a GSM BTS (by their multitude, and being closer in frequency).

In the second paragraph of the section, referring to the conditions in 4.3.1b, the "out-of-band" requirements should not be changed, assuming these are adopted from general CEPT limits.

Regarding protection of the BTS receive band, the UIC BTS victimising UIC or GSM uplinks scenarios apply:

UIC	GSM		
–86	–76	dBm	Scenarios requirement
–3 –3	dB	Bandwidth conversion factor into 100kHz	
–––	–––		
–89	–79	dBm	Performance requirement

Note: The less tight requirement against the E- and P-GSM bands reflects the scenarios assumption that such cositings would be subject to optimised arrangements providing a coupling loss of at least 40dB, see [2].

Thus, for UIC, a limit of –89dBm towards the full BTS receive band should apply, taking the more strict value. This still forms a relaxation compared with standard GSM that can assist the implementation, considering the narrower transition band for the filtering implicated.

Note: The relaxation largely reflects that no multiple interferers margin is applied for a UIC BTS.

No change is suggested against DCS, assuming implementations based on standard GSM and thus meeting the current requirement.

Considering the above relaxation of the protection of the UIC uplink as compared with GSM, the 05.05 note on protection from co-sited DCS transmitters should be sufficient for protection of the UIC band as well, if ever needed. Nevertheless, it is suggested to include it in the GSM uplink frequency range specified for protection (to read 876–915MHz). This downwards extension by 4MHz should pose no problem for actual DCS equipments, considering the large spacing to its wanted signal.

By the same principle, also in the last paragraph of this section of 05.05, for protection of the GSM downlink from DCS, the frequency range should be extended to include the UIC band (to read 921–960MHz), and again this should pose no problems for actual DCS equipments.

J.3.4.3.3 MS spurious emissions

For the "in-band" part of the specification, the applicable scenarios deal with UIC MS or sMS victimising UIC or GSM uplinks:

MS	sMS		
–54	–48	dBm	Scenarios requirement
+20	+20	dB	Transient margin
–8	–8	dB	Bandwidth conversion factor into 30kHz
——	——		
–42	–36	dBm	Performance requirement

The first paragraph of 05.05 section 4.3.3 should be amended accordingly, to include the above more strict requirement on UIC MS, whereas it is unchanged for UIC sMS.

As above in 4.3.2, the "out-of-band" requirements in the second paragraph should not be changed, assuming these are adopted from general CEPT limits.

Regarding the requirements in idle mode in the 3'rd paragraph, the following applies towards the UIC and GSM uplinks:

MS	sMS		
–54	–48	dBm	Scenarios requirement
–3	–3	dB	Bandwidth conversion factor into 100kHz
——	——		
–57	–51	dBm	Performance requirement

Comparing this with the existing requirements, for UIC the following differences arise:

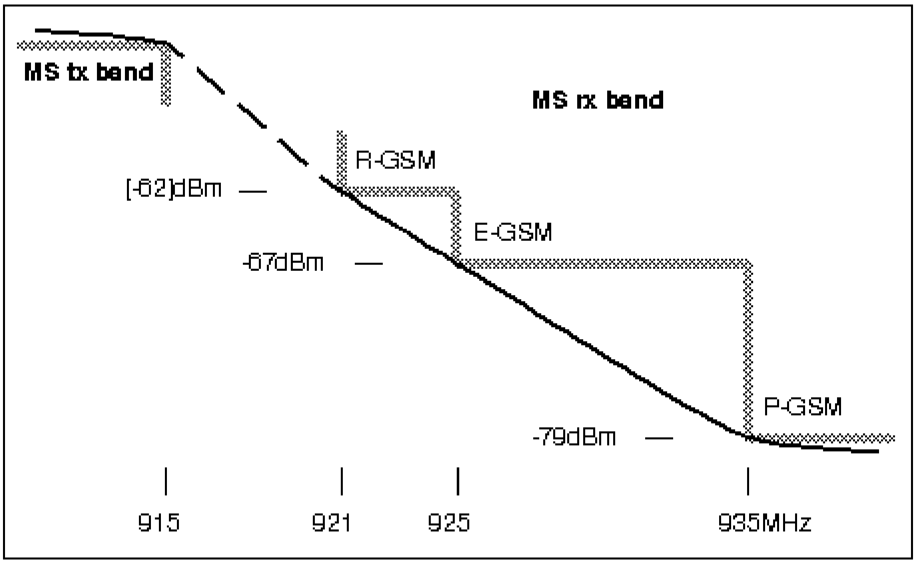
UIC MS:	–57dBm throughout, below 1GHz;
UIC sMS:	–51dBm in the frequency band 876–915MHz.

No change is assumed above 1GHz.

J.3.4.3.4 MS spurious emissions onto downlinks

For UIC MS or sMS victimising the UIC downlink, the scenario requirement is –82 and –70dBm, i.e. the performance requirement is –85 and –73dBm in 100kHz, respectively.

However, for UIC mobiles, featuring all 3 GSM bands and having a narrower duplex gap of 6MHz only, it is considered unrealistic to have a performance any better than for GSM MS and sMS. For such, a maximum of –79 and –67dBm is allowed in the P-GSM and E-GSM downlink bands, respectively. By a simple extrapolation of 79 – 67dB / 10MHz = 1,2 dB/MHz as a roll-off function towards the edge of the E-GSM downlink, the estimated performance of GSM mobiles in the UIC downlink band is –62dBm. This is summarised in the figure below.



More detailed investigations and measurements by Philips Semiconductors [5], however, have shown that –60dBm is a more realistic and feasible value at 921MHz, using currently available GSM duplexers without extra effort or costs.

It should also be noted, that if UIC mobiles would have a better performance than GSM, then the GSM sMS would remain as the more significant interference source, considering their large numbers and similar close proximity scenarios. Actually, it would be more important to set a corresponding limit for GSM equipments, considering that none exists currently.

Thus a limit of –60dBm is proposed to go into 05.05 for UIC MS and sMS in the UIC downlink frequency range, and to maintain the limits for the GSM downlink. This satisfies the scenario requirements for UIC mobiles victimising the GSM downlink, whereas the scenario requirements for close proximity between UIC mobiles are not met.

Therefore a backwards calculation is performed to determine the resulting minimum distances required to avoid the interference, see also [2]:

Source: Victim:	UIC MS UIC MS	UIC MS UIC SMS	UIC SMS UIC MS	UIC SMS UIC sMS
Victim interference limit	–116	–114	–116	–114
Assumed noise in RX band	–60	–60	–60	–60
MCL of the scenario	56	54	56	54
AG source	2	2	–3	–3
AG victim	2	–3	2	–3
FPL required	60	53	55	48
Distance required [m]	27	12	15	7
Scenarios requirement	2	5	5	2

AG = Antenna Gain, incl. cable losses etc.
FPL = Free Path Loss
MCL = Minimum Coupling Loss, incl. cable losses etc.

When evaluating the consequencies of these UIC mobile to mobile close proximity scenarios not being met, the following preconditions for the interference actually to occur must be borne in mind, that significantly decrease the likelihood of interference:

- although the interference limit applies also to the idle mode, in practice, the worst case is expected to require that the victim and the interfering mobile are both active and operating on overlapping timeslots;
- the victim mobile must be receiving at reference sensitivity.

In addition, for the UIC vehicle mounted MS to MS scenario, along a railways line two locomotives moving in opposite directions must be within 27 m of each other. Thus the overall likelihood of the UIC MS to MS interference is considered small enough to be acceptable, also when seen in relation to the large number of operating GSM MS and sMS, each of which presents a similar potential level of interference.

Whereever UIC sMS are typically being used, such as in stations and shunting yards, a better radio coverage is needed to provide service for such equipments. This implies generally higher wanted signal levels in scenarios involving an sMS, further decreasing the overall likelihood of interference. Thus it is considered acceptable that the scenarios involving UIC sMS are missed by a factor of about 3.

No changes are proposed to the last two paragraphs of this section of 05.05.

J.3.4.4 Radio frequency tolerance

No issues, no change required.

J.3.4.5 Output level dynamic operation

As in section 4.3.3, also here it is not fully clear what is the "relevant transmit band". Assuming again that "in-band" requirements relate to co-existence scenarios for operation of GSM networks, it is proposed to apply the same definition, i.e. it is the total combined range of GSM900.

J.3.4.5.1 BTS output level dynamic operation

No changes required.

J.3.4.5.2 MS output level dynamic operation

For this specification, the applicable scenarios deal with UIC MS or sMS victimising UIC or GSM uplinks.

For the UIC MS, the scenario requirement is –54dBm. At the lowest transmit power level, 5dBm, this corresponds to –59dBc, assuming 17 power control steps as for standard GSM. I.e. no change is required to 05.05.

For the UIC sMS, the scenario requirement is no tighter than –48dBm. This relaxation should be included in 05.05.

J.3.4.6 Phase accuracy

No issues, no change required.

J.3.4.7.1 Intra BTS intermod attenuation

Throughout this section of 05.05, it is supposed that the BTS transmit and receive bands are referred to, although this is not clearly stated in the first paragraph.

The second paragraph is understood only to give requirements on intermodulation products falling into the BTS transmit band, i.e. victimising downlinks.

The scenario requirement for UIC BTS victimising the UIC downlink is 0dBm, which is absolutely no problem with the current specification.

Note: This reflects the assumption, that for UIC only coordinated scenarios apply, whereas for GSM the intermodulation product could interfere with a close proximity foreign mobile at reference sensitivity.

However, for any UIC BTS intermodulation product falling into the GSM downlink, a scenario requirement of –51dBm applies. For comparison, for GSM uncoordinated networks the corresponding traditional scenario requirement calculation is

–104 dBm Reference sensitivity

–9 dB C/I

+59 dB MCL

——

–54 dBm Performance limit

This is not met by the specification either, probably for feasibility reasons.

Thus no change is proposed to the second paragraph of this section in 05.05.

Considering the likely network implementation, with a UIC BTS operating only in the UIC band, normally no 3'rd order intermodulation products will fall into any of the UIC or GSM uplinks. In any case, the scenarios requirements for UIC BTS victimising UIC and GSM uplinks are –86 and –76dBm, respectively. These are the same scenario requirements as in 4.3.2, and for which a TX filter is introduced to protect the BTS receive bands in general. Thus the requirement in the 3'rd paragraph of this section in 05.05 is not a significant problem, and no change is proposed here either.

J.3.4.7.2 Intermodulation between MS (DCS1800 only)

Not applicable.

J.3.4.7.3 Mobile PBX

No change proposed.

J.3.5 Receiver characteristics

The following table of scenario requirements, copied from section 5 in [2], gives the required blocking performance of UIC receivers against strong off-channel signals of another link.

The values are given in dBm. As in 05.05, the reference point is the antenna connector of the equipment.

	(Source uplinks)		(Source downlinks)	
	UIC	GSM	UIC	GSM
	876 – 880	(880) 890 – 915	921 – 925	(925) 935 – 960 MHz
(Victim:)				
UIC BTS	–57	–26	+9	–1
UIC MS	+5	–17	–23	–23
UIC sMS	–7	–18	–29	–29

J.3.5.1 Blocking characteristics

The "in-band" and "out-of-band" frequency ranges to apply for the blocking performance of a UIC receiver are determined as follows:

1) one of the out-of-bands must include the combined unwanted UIC and GSM transmit band;

2) the in-band, containing wanted as well as unwanted signals and having the more relaxed performance, adjoins the above out-of-band on the one side;

3) the in-band adjoins the other out-of-band at 20MHz beyond the combined wanted UIC and GSM band.

Note: Referring to the combined ranges of UIC and GSM bands is necessary, in 1) to cover the UIC/UIC as well as the UIC/GSM scenarios, and in 3) to avoid possibly extending the stricter requirements of the out-of-band to where the corresponding scenarios are not applicable. This definition is also in line with the assumed wide band capabilities of UIC equipments.

The following results:

	UIC BTS	UIC mobiles
out-of-band, incl TX band	>921	<915
in-band	856–921	915–980
other out-of-band	<856	>980

Thus the table in 05.05 for GSM900 MS applies to UIC MS as well with no change, whereas a new entry is needed for the UIC BTS.

The specification in 05.05 on exceptions is proposed not to be changed.

The changes needed to the 05.05 blocking specification for the UIC equipments are discussed in the following.

As micro BTS is not considered an issue for UIC networks, no changes apply to the last table in section 5.1 of 05.05.

J.3.5.2 Blocking characteristics (in-band)

For UIC MS in-band blocking performance, the scenario requirement is –23dBm to protect against unwanted UIC and GSM downlinks. This is in line with the current specification.

For UIC sMS, the scenario requirement is –29dBm to protect against unwanted UIC and GSM downlinks.

For UIC BTS, to protect against unwanted GSM uplinks, the scenario requirement is –26dBm. To protect against unwanted UIC uplinks, the requirement is only –57dBm, reflecting the coordinated scenario.

In summary, this points to the possibility of relaxing some in-band blocking requirements for UIC equipments as compared with GSM. However, there are a number of good reasons not to do so: These requirements are not related to the different frequency band and the narrower duplex gap for filtering. They are not difficult to meet. And this allows for a better performance than for the typical close proximity scenarios, e.g. in a BTS-MS case where antennas are used at the mouth of tunnels to provide inside coverage. Thus it is proposed to retain the same in-band specification as for GSM throughout the table in 05.05.

J.3.5.3 Blocking characteristics (out-of-band)

For UIC MS out-of-band blocking performance, the scenario requirement is +5dBm or –13dBm, where the source is a UIC MS or sMS uplink, respectively (see [2]). However, the UIC MS / UIC MS scenario is being failed by the MS spurious emissions anyhow (27m distance required instead of 2m, as discussed above on section 4.3.3). Thus it is proposed to maintain the 0dBm specification in 05.05.

For UIC MS, to protect against the GSM uplink, the scenario requirement is –17dBm. Thus, in the band 880–915MHz the out-of-band requirement is suggested to be relaxed to –5dBm, as in note 2 of 05.05.

For UIC sMS, –7dBm is sufficient to protect against either of the UIC and GSM uplinks. Thus, a relaxation to –7dBm is suggested for the UIC sMS in the frequency range 876–915MHz.

For UIC BTS, to protect against other UIC and GSM downlinks, the scenario requirements are +9 and –1dBm, respectively. This is only a very small difference to the requirements in 05.05, and thus no change is proposed, incl. retaining note 3 although a relaxation to an inside part of the out-of-band is probably not usefull for the UIC BTS.

J.3.5.4 AM suppresion characteristics

No change is proposed.

J.3.5.5 Intermodulation characteristics

No change is assumed, as this specification is not directly based on system scenarios.

J.3.5.6 Spurious emissions

This section has not been examined in detail, but no change is assumed.

J.3.6 Transmitter/receiver performance

J.3.6.1 Nominal error rates

For UIC equipments the highest wanted signal levels are:

UIC BTS	–23
UIC MS	–23
UIC sMS	–29 dBm.

Although this reflects a possible relaxation, it is proposed to stay with the current specification in 05.05, considering, that in the worst case UIC BTS and mobiles may be much closer to each other than in the more typical case used to calculate the scenario, and that the requirement poses no problem for implementation anyhow.

Thus, no changes are suggested for this section of 05.05.

J.3.6.2 Reference sensitivity level

No changes are assumed to this section of 05.05. This also applies to the last paragraph, which is assumed to reflect feasibility.

Hint: In some places of a radio network design, not the natural noise floor may be dominant (as assumed in determining the sensitivity), but rather other uncoordinated mobiles by their wide band noise setting an artificial and actual higher noise floor, desensitising the BTS.

The rest of 05.05

No change is assumed, except for annex D.

Annex D Environmental conditions

To be considered for UIC equipments on another occation.

IV References

[1] GSM Technical Specification 05.05, vers. 5.2.0.
[2] "UIC system scenarios requirements" (First part of this annex)
[3] "AR's on the UIC frequency band" (SMG2#15 TDoc. 139/95)
[4] GSM Technical Report 05.50
[5] "MS spurious emissions onto downlink of UIC" (SMG2#20 Tdoc. 239 / 96)

Annex K: Block Erasure Rate Performance for GPRS

ETSI STC SMG2 WPB **Tdoc SMG2 WPB 47/97**

Meeting no 1 **Agenda Item 6.1**
Edinburgh, Scotland
22 - 26 September 1997

Title: ***Block Erasure Rate Performance for GPRS/CS-1, CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4 in TU50 ideal FH and TU3 no FH, in the presence of co-channel interference***

Source: ***CSELT, Ericsson***

1 Introduction

Block Erasure Rate (BLER) performance for GPRS/CS-1, CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4 are provided in the case of Typical Urban 50 km/h with ideal frequency hopping and TU3 no FH, in the presence of co-channel interference. CS-1 BLER performance is to be compared with SDCCH FER performance provided by AEG and used for specifying the reference performance in GSM 05.05.

2 Simulation Model

Hereunder the main assumptions used for carrying out the simulations are reported:

- TU50 ideal FH and TU3 no FH propagation models, as defined in GSM 05.05
- In case of ideal FH, independent fadings over consecutive bursts are assumed
- Varying fading during one burst
- One single interfering signal
- Eb/No = 28 dB (according to GSM 05.05)
- No antenna diversity
- Burst synchronisation recovery based on the cross-correlation properties of the training sequence
- Soft output equaliser
- Channel decoding (for CS-1, performance includes Fire decoding and correction, as for AEG SDCCH FER performance; for CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4, CRC are used for detection only)

3 Results

Fig. 1 shows Block Erasure Rate curves for GPRS/CS-1, CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4 in TU50 ideal FH, coming from CSELT and Ericsson. Moreover SDCCH FER performance from AEG is reported.

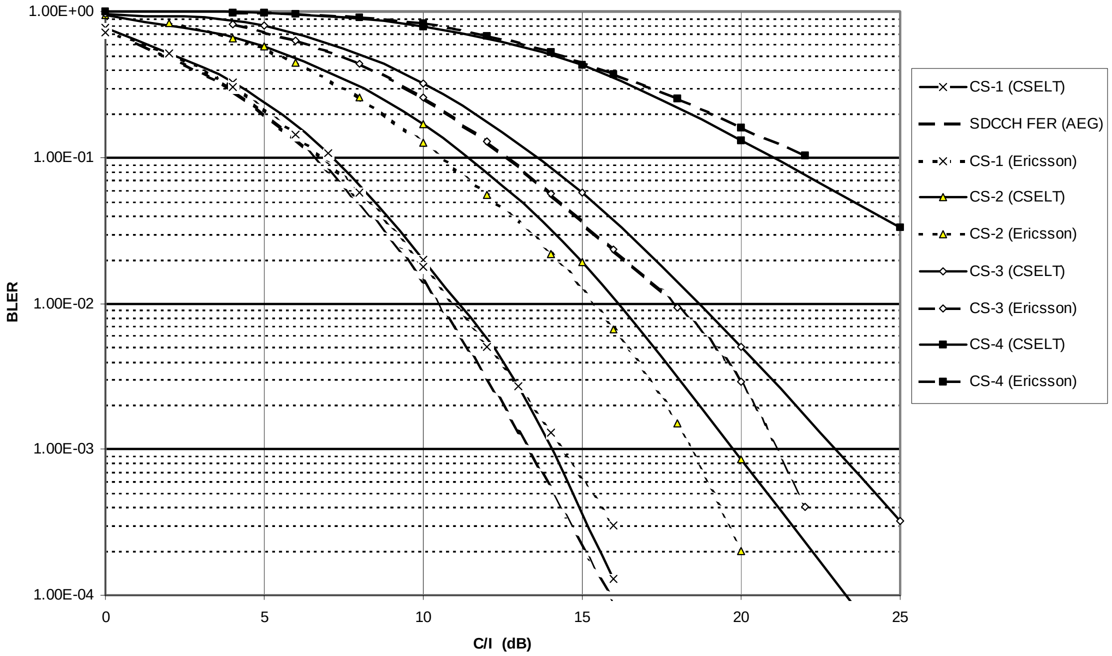


Figure 1: BLER vs. C/I for GPRS/CS-1, CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4 in TU50 ideal FH. SDCCH FER performance is reported as a reference for GPRS/CS-1 performance

Fig. 2 reports BLER versus C/I in TU3 no FH.

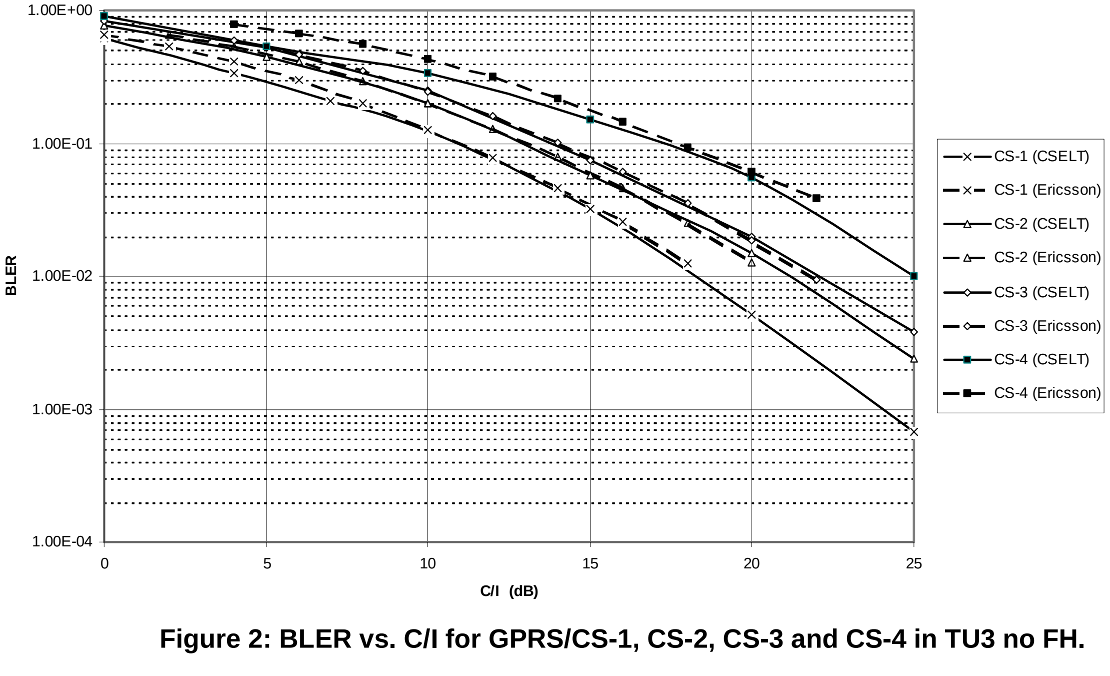


Figure 2: BLER vs. C/I for GPRS/CS-1, CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4 in TU3 no FH.

4 Conclusions

CSELT and Ericsson results are similar for all the 4 coding schemes and may be assumed as a basis for specifying the reference values in GSM 05.05. For CS-1 the results are very similar and there is also a good alignment with SDCCH FER results provided by AEG, especially at BLER = 10%, which is the proposed reference performance value.

Annex L: Proposal on how to report GPRS performance into GSM 05.05

ETSI STC SMG2 WPB **Tdoc SMG2 WPB 48/97**

Meeting no 1 **Agenda Item 6.1**
Edinburgh, Scotland
22 - 26 September 1997

Title: ***Proposal on how to report GPRS performance into GSM 05.05***

Source: ***CSELT***

L.1 Introduction

The present document reports GPRS Block Erasure Rate (BLER) performance and throughput analyses obtained by simulations for GPRS/CS-1, CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4 coding schemes, in order to provide reference performance in GSM 05.05. The considered propagation models are TU50 ideal FH and TU3 no FH.

L.2 GPRS BLER performance

Figures 1 and 2 show the BLER performance for CS-1 to CS-4 in TU50 ideal FH and TU3 no FH, in the presence of co-channel interference. These curves have been obtained with the following assumptions:

- TU50 ideal FH and TU3 no FH propagation models, as defined in GSM05.05
- In case of ideal FH, independent fadings over consecutive bursts are assumed
- Varying fading during one burst
- One single interfering signal
- Eb/No = 28 dB (according to 05.05)
- No antenna diversity
- Burst synchronisation recovery based on the cross-correlation properties of the training sequence
- Soft output equaliser
- Channel decoding (for CS-1, performance includes Fire decoding and correction; for CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4, CRC are used for detection only)

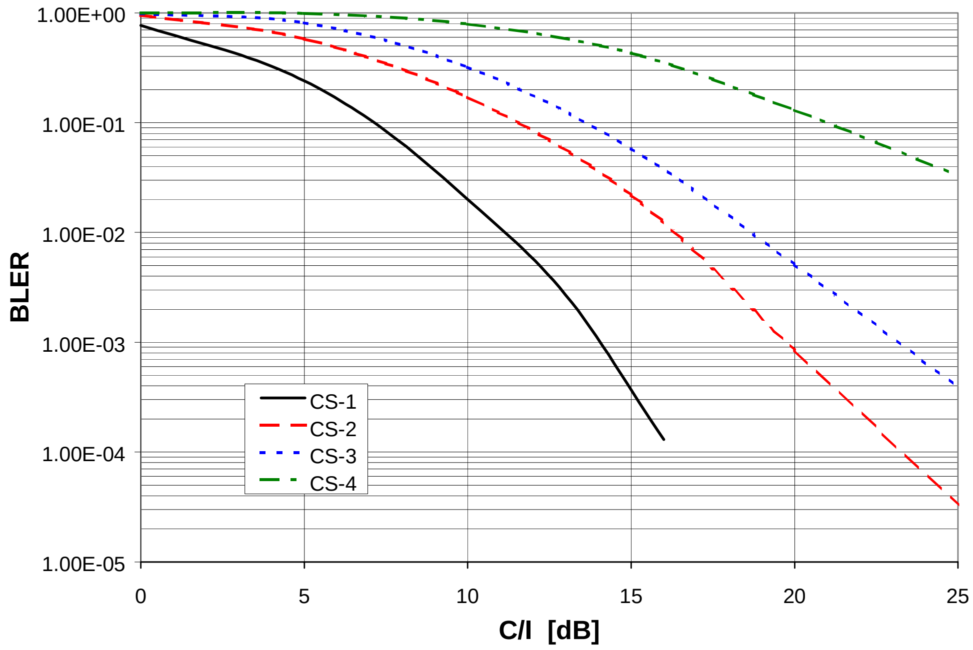


Figure 1: BLER vs. C/I$_c$, TU50 ideal FH

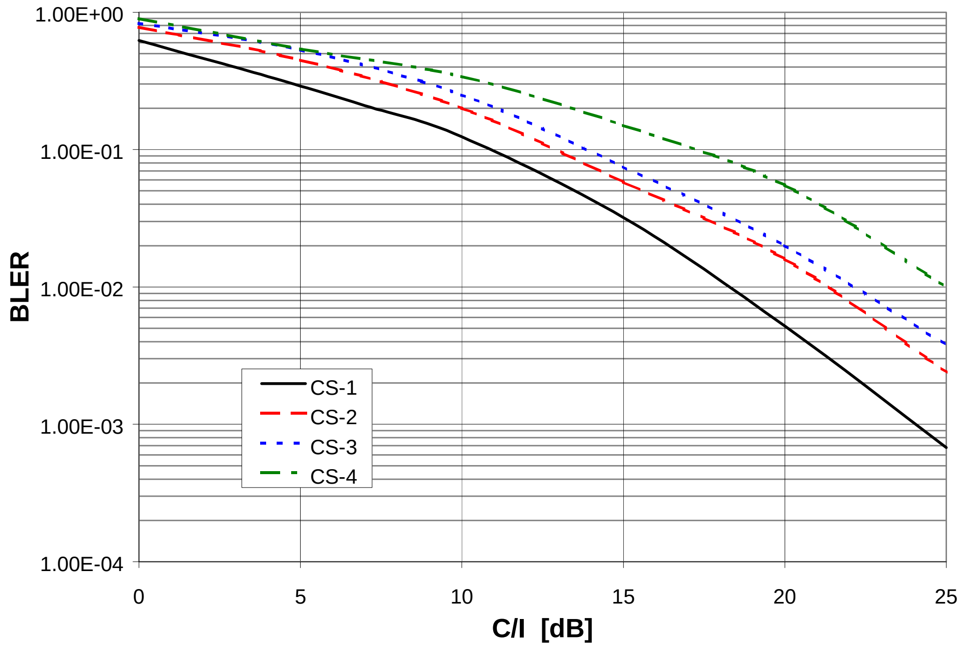


Figure 2: BLER vs. C/I$_c$, TU3 no FH

L.3 GPRS throughput analyses

Throughput performance has been evaluated for CS-1 to CS-4 versus C/I$_c$ with the following assumptions:

- GPRS MAC/RLC protocol
- C/I distribution: log-normal with variable mean value and standard deviation of 7 dB

- Traffic Model: Poisson distribution of the packet inter-arrival time and packet length distributed according to the Railway traffic model
- Single-slot MSs
- A single PDCH dedicated to data traffic
- Up-link performance

L.3.1 TU50 ideal FH

Figure 3 shows the throughput vs. C/I$_c$ curves in the case of TU50 ideal FH. It is also indicated the C/I$_c$ value at BLER=10% for each coding scheme.

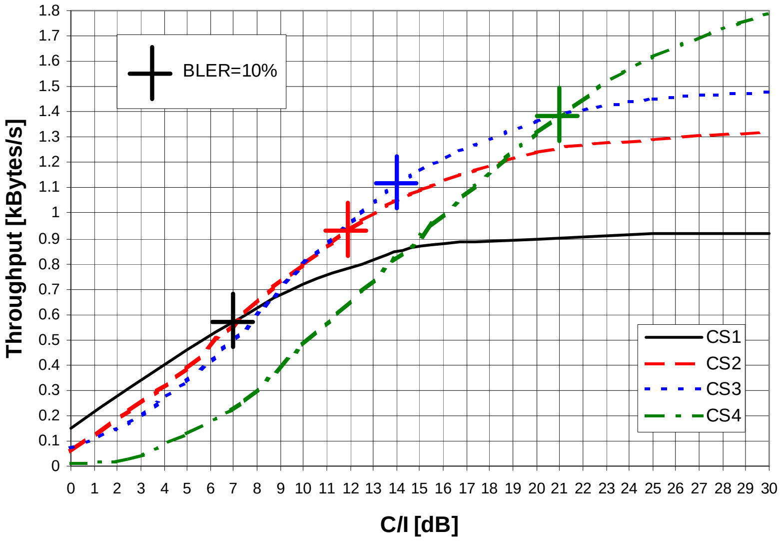


Figure 3: Throughput vs. C/I$_c$, TU50 ideal FH. Each cross corresponds to a BLER=10%

Figure 4 shows the BLER vs. C/I$_c$ curves for each coding scheme in the case of TU50 ideal FH. Arrows show for which range of C/I$_c$ values each coding scheme provides the highest throughput: for instance, CS-1 has the best performance for C/I$_c$ lower than 7.5 dB, and CS-2 has the highest throughput for 7.5dB < C/I$_c$ < 10dB.

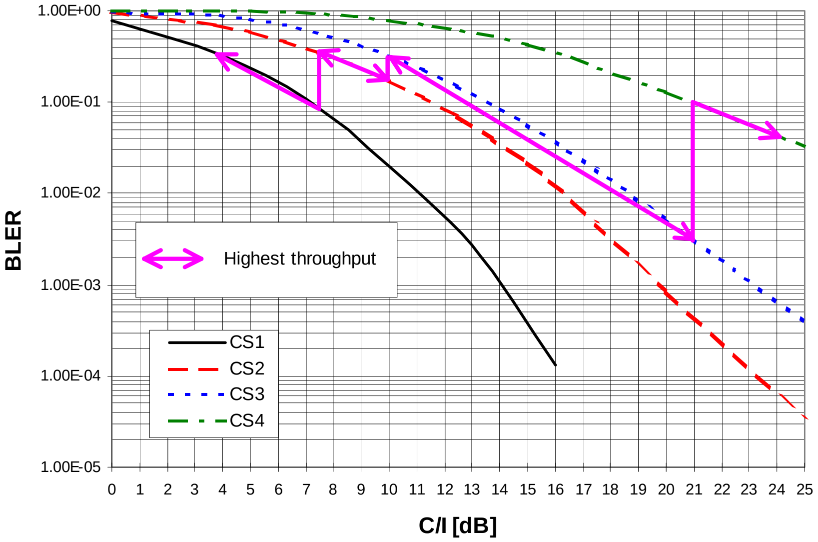


Figure 4: BLER vs. C/I$_c$, TU50 ideal FH. Arrows indicate the highest throughput ranges

L.3.2 TU3 no FH

Figure 5 shows the throughput performance in the case of TU3 no FH. It is also indicated the C/I$_c$ value at BLER=10% for each coding scheme.

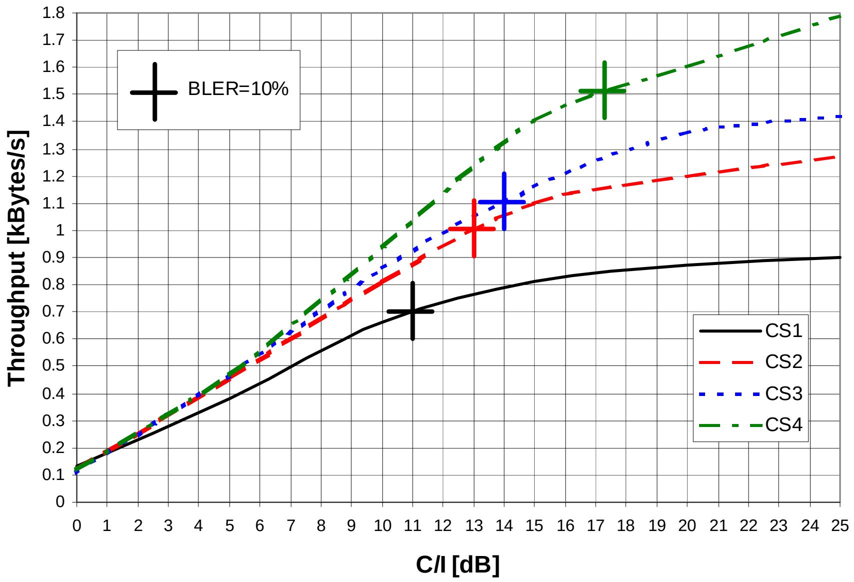


Figure 5: Throughput vs. C/I$_c$, TU3 no FH. Each cross corresponds to a BLER=10%

L.4 Proposals for GPRS performance in GSM 05.05

L.4.1 TU50 ideal FH

Hereunder two alternatives have been considered for TU50 ideal FH (2 dB implementation margin has been taken into account to specify the C/I_c values):

1) Variable BLER (Figure 4)

In this case the coding schemes are evaluated for different reference BLER values, corresponding to the ranges of the highest throughput.

Coding scheme	**BLER - C/I_c**
CS-1	8.5% - 9.5 dB
CS-2	35% - 9.5 dB
CS-3	32% - 12 dB
CS-4	10% - 23 dB

2) Fixed BLER (Figure 3)

In this case, the coding schemes are evaluated for a fixed BLER reference value (BLER=10%), in order to try to maximise the throughput performance.

Coding scheme	**C/I_c at BLER=10%**
CS-1	9 dB
CS-2	13.8 dB
CS-3	16 dB
CS-4	23 dB

L.4.2 TU3 no FH

As far as TU3 no FH is considered, the throughput analysis has shown that option 2) should be considered. A BLER reference value equal to 10% still represents a good trade-off, in order to try to maximise the throughput performance.

Fixed BLER (Figure 5)

Coding scheme	**C/I_c at BLER=10%**
CS-1	13 dB
CS-2	15 dB
CS-3	16 dB
CS-4	19.3 dB

L.5 Conclusions

Based on the presented results, a BLER reference value equal to 10% for all the coding schemes is proposed, in order to specify performance in GSM 05.05. An implementation margin equal to 2 dB has been taken into account in the proposed C/I_c values.

Annex M:
GPRS simulation results in TU 3 and TU 50 no FH

ETSI STC SMG2 WPB#2 **Tdoc SMG2 WPB 99/97**

Bonn 3-7 November 1997

Title : **GPRS simulation results in TU 3 and TU 50 no FH**

Source : **GIE CEGETEL**

M.1 Introduction

The present document presents the performances of the 4 GPRS coding schemes on the GSM radio interface. The performances in terms of BLER and throughput as a function of the C/I are provided to SMG2 WPB for information.

M.2 Simulation Model

The conditions for the simulations are :

- TU3 and TU50 propagation models as defined in GSM 05.05 (without frequency hopping for both models)
- one single interferer experiencing the same propagation conditions as the wanted signal with independent fading on the two channels
- Varying fading during one burst
- noise floor such that Eb/No = 26 dB
- soft output equaliser

The results are obtained by processing 40000 radio blocks for each coding scheme which represents a transfer duration of about 13 minutes. At the end of the simulation a file containing the Block Error Pattern is generated.

Below, the C/I giving a BLER of 10^{-1} are presented for information.

Interference ratio at Reference performance

Type of channel	Tu3 (no FH)	Tu50 (no FH)
CS1	13.5 dB	10.5 dB
CS2	15.5 dB	13.5 dB
CS3	17.5 dB	16 dB
CS4	20 dB	24 dB

C/I for a BLER = 10^{-1} (including the implementation margin of 2 dB)

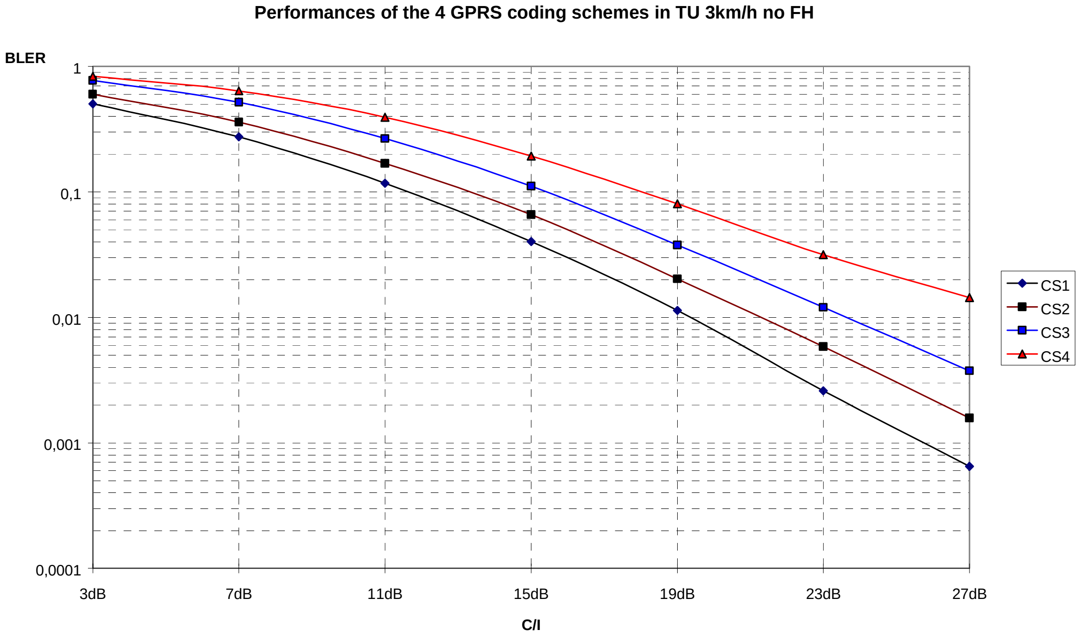
These results are aligned with the results presented by Lucent, CSELT and Ericsson. Simulations were also ran without the co-channel interferer considering white noise as the perturbation. These simulations were ran to find the sensitivity level at the reference performance (BLER = 10^{-1}).

Sensitivity level (for normal BTS) at reference performance

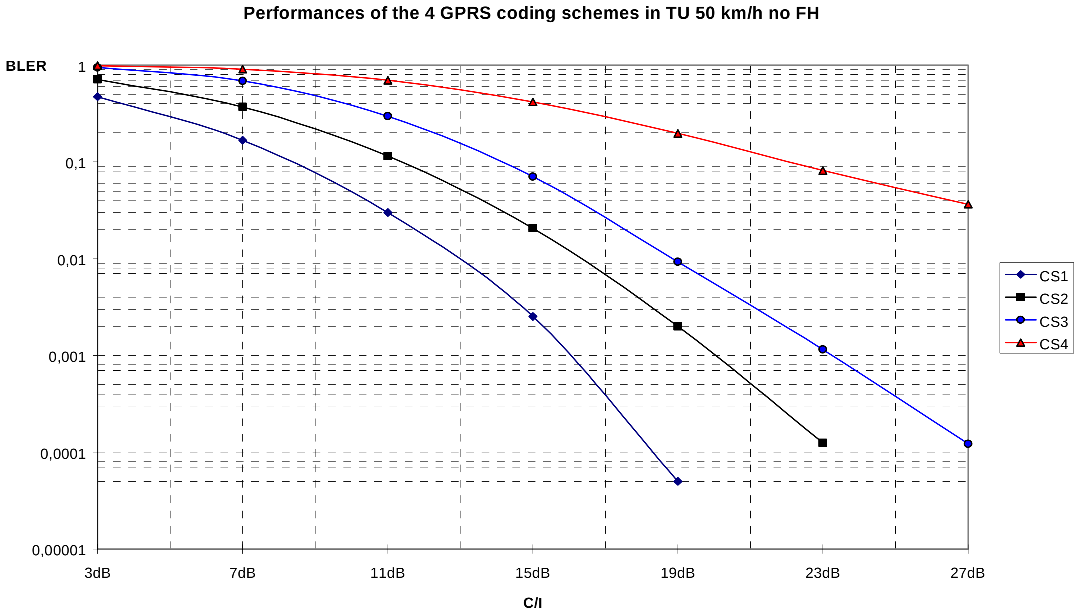
Type of channel	Tu50 (no FH)
CS1	-103 dBm
CS2	-100.5 dBm
CS3	-98 dBm
CS4	-90.7 dBm

signal strength needed for a BLER = 10^{-1}

Performances in TU 3 with a co-channel interferer



Performances in TU 50 with a co-channel interferer

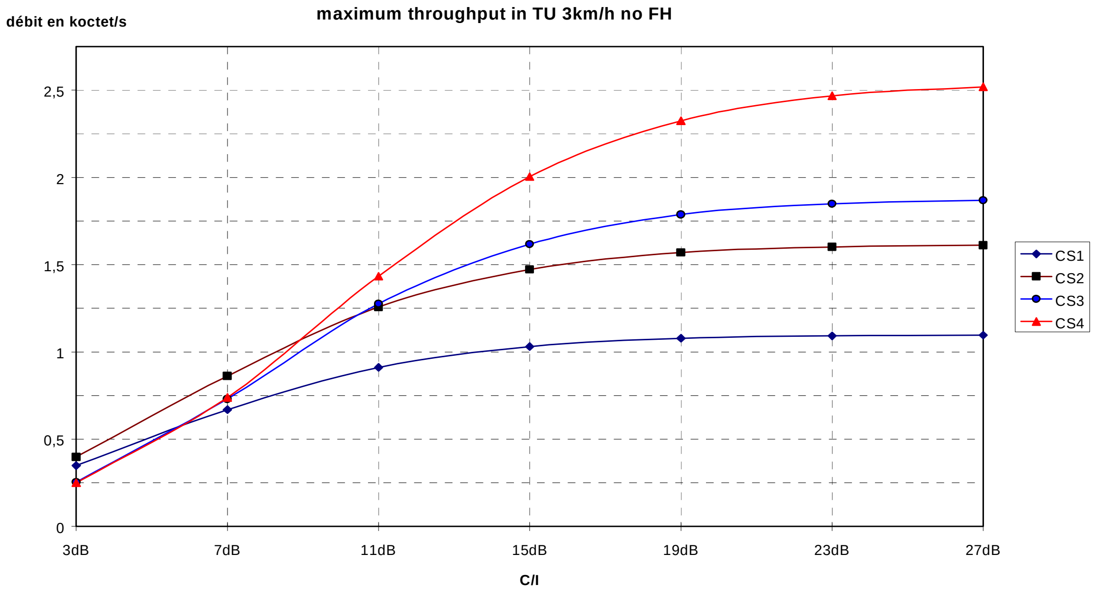


M.3 Maximum GPRS throughput

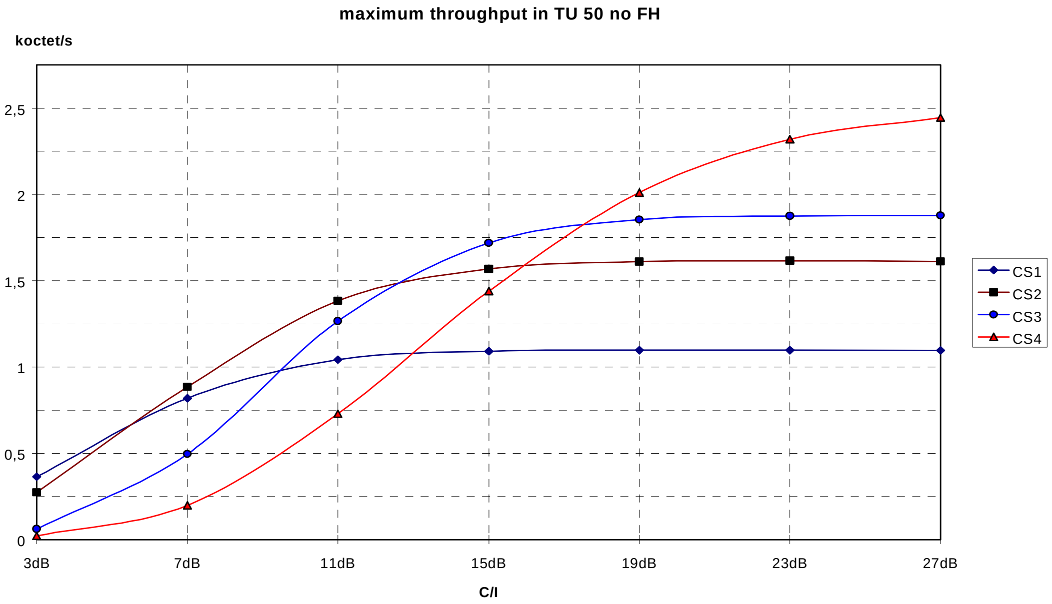
In this section, the methodology used to measure the throughput is presented. The GPRS MAC/RLC protocol was implemented according to 03.64 [1] and Tdoc 175/97 [3]. The maximum throughput achievable at a given C/I is measured for each coding scheme. Therefore the traffic load is not considered in the simulations. Furthermore PRACH and PAGCH are always considered correctly decoded.

- the MS is always sending RLC blocks and there is always enough free radio resources to initiate the transfer (the intracell traffic is not considered)
- Same C/I on uplink and downlink
- the response time between the MS - BSS is 2 TDMA frames
- The timer T11 (Wait for Acknowledgement) is set to 100 ms as in [2]
- when T11 is reset, the MS releases the connection then initiates a new procedure for random access. The time elapsed from the release of the resource and reception of the new Ack/Nack is set to 180 ms including
    - ⇒ transmission of PRACH
    - ⇒ reception of PAGCH from the network
    - ⇒ transmission of a RLC block with the old TFI
    - ⇒ reception of the missing Ack/Nack from the network

Performances in TU 3 with a co-channel interferer



Performances in TU 50 with a co-channel interferer



M.4 Conclusion

BLER and throughput performances are analysed in the present document for TU3 and TU50 environments (no FH). The throughput curves give the upper bound of each coding scheme at a given C/I.

M.5 References

[1] SMG2 GPRS Tdoc 175/97, "GPRS RLC/MAC Temporary Block Flow Procedures", Ericsson January 1997

[2] SMG2 GPRS Tdoc 218/97, "Evaluation of Channel Coding Schemes CS2 and CS4", CSELT February 1997

[3] draft GSM 03.64 v 5.0.0, "Overall description of the GPRS radio interface", Stage 2, July 1997

Annex N: C/I_c and E_b/N_o Radio Performance for the GPRS Coding Schemes

ETSI STC SMG2 WPB **TDoc SMG2 WPB 100/97**

Meeting no 2
Bonn, Germany
3 - 7 November 1997

Agenda Item 6.1

Title: ***C/I_c and E_b/N_o Radio Performance for the GPRS Coding Schemes***

Source: ***CSELT***

N.1 Introduction

The present document reports C/I_c radio performance for the GPRS coding schemes in propagation models for both GSM 900 (TU50 no FH, RA250 no FH) and DCS1800 (TU50 no FH, TU50 ideal FH), in order to provide reference performance in GSM 05.05. Moreover, E_b/N_0 performance are reported, in the range around 10% for BLER.

N.2 C/I simulation results

The following figures show BLER vs. C/I_c performance for CS-1 to CS-4 in different propagation models. These curves have been obtained with the same assumptions reported in [1,2,3].

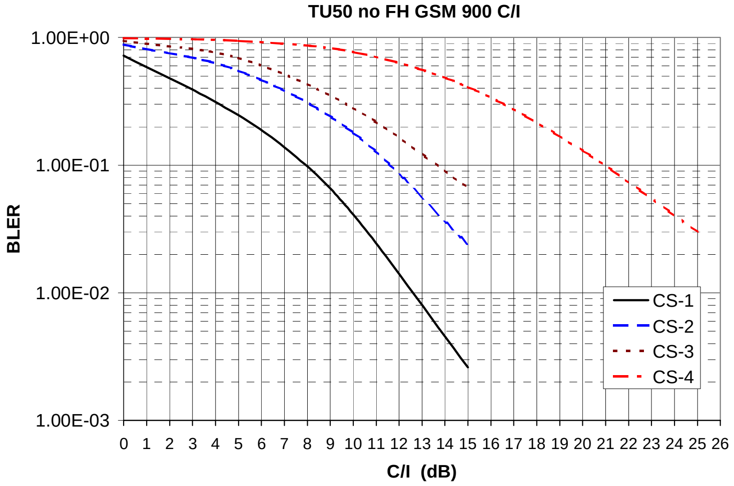


Figure 1: BLER vs. C/I_c, TU50 no FH, GSM900

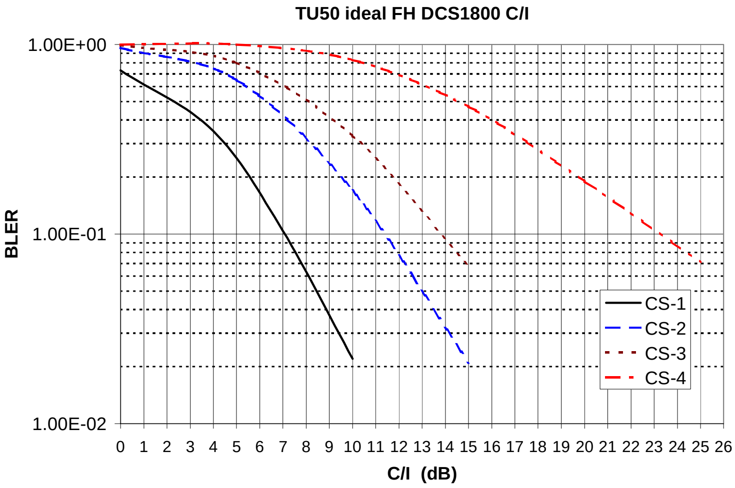


Figure 2: BLER vs. C/I$_c$, TU50 ideal FH, DCS1800

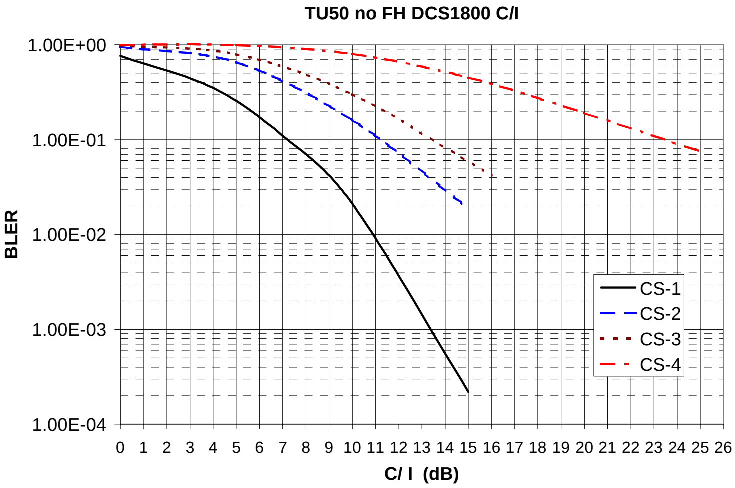


Figure 3: BLER vs. C/I$_c$, TU50 no FH, DCS1800

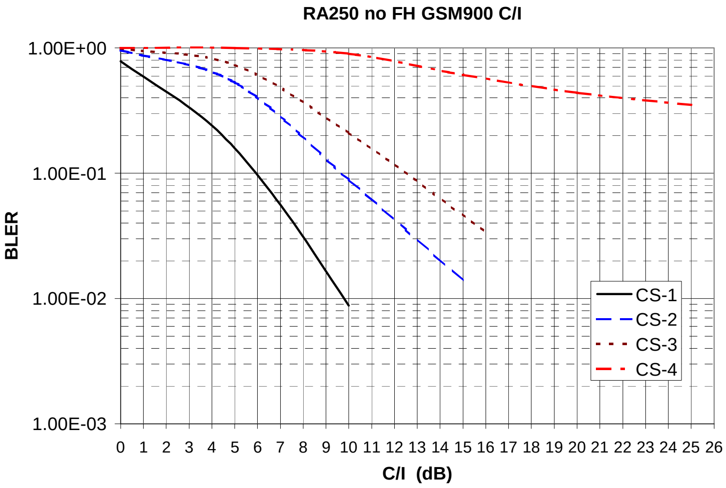


Figure 4: BLER vs. C/I$_c$, RA250 no FH, GSM900

N.3 E_b/N_0 performance

The following figures show BLER vs. E_b/N_0 performance for CS-1 to CS-4 in different propagation models.

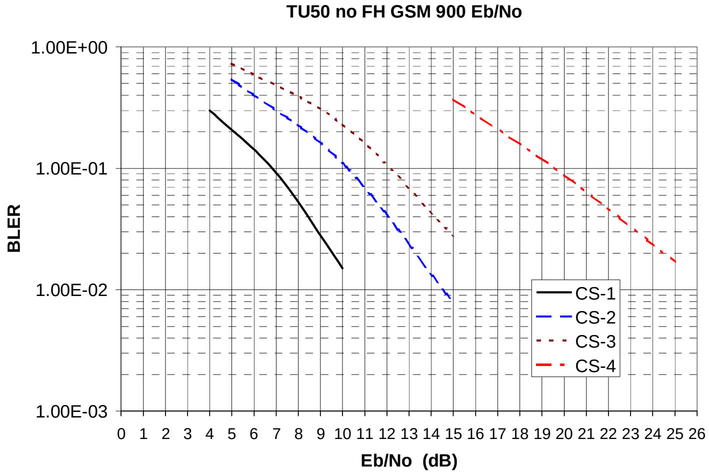


Figure 5 - BLER vs. E_b/N_0, TU50 no FH, GSM900.

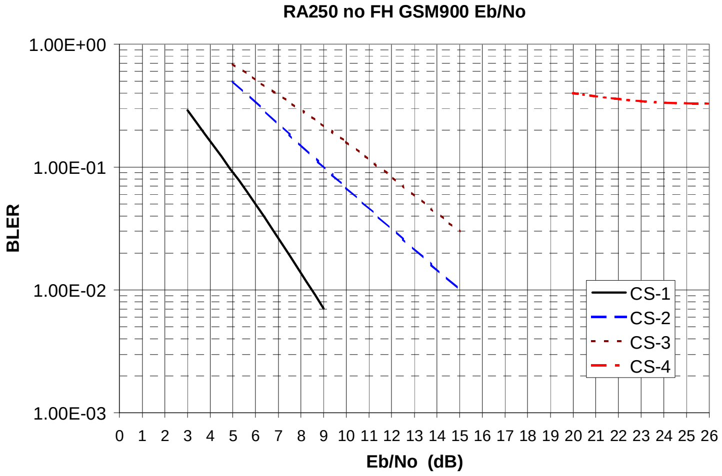


Figure 6 - BLER vs. E_b/N_0, RA250 no FH, GSM900.

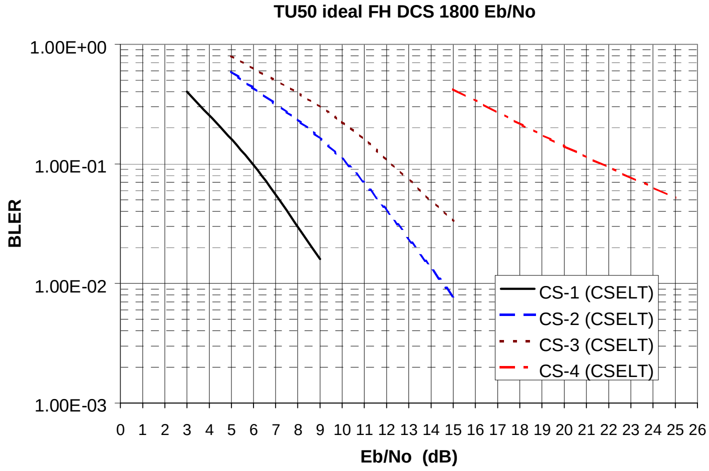


Figure 7: BLER vs. E_b/N_0, TU50 ideal FH, DCS1800

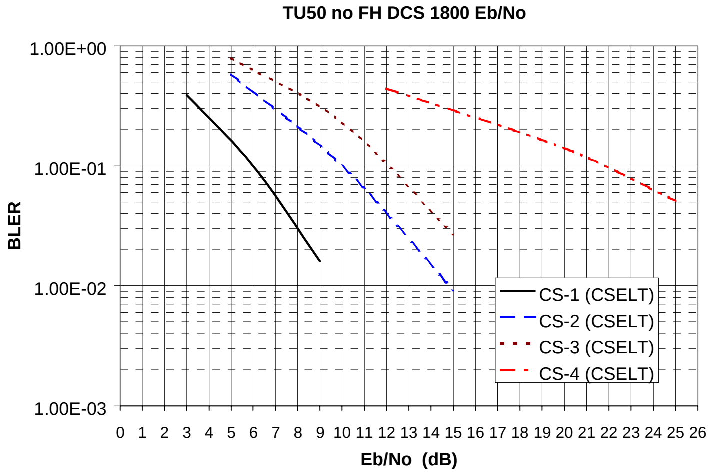


Figure 8: BLER vs. E_b/N_0, TU50 no FH, DCS1800

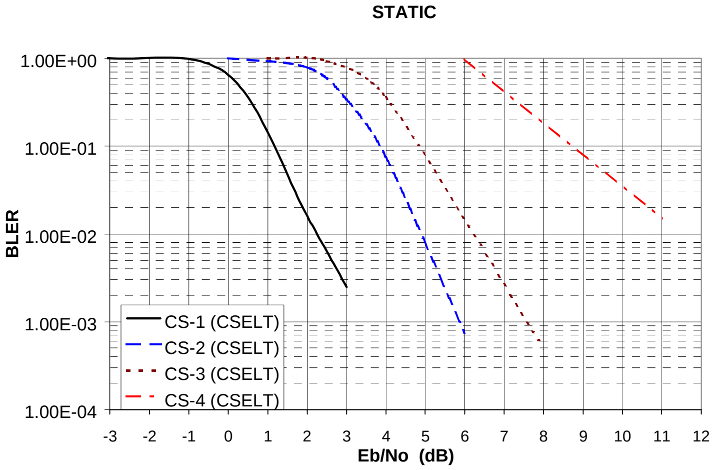


Figure 9: BLER vs. E_b/N_0, static

N.4 Conclusions

Based on the reported simulations results, the input signal level and the interference ratio can be derived at the reference BLER performance of 10% and they are included in [4] by adding a 2 dB implementation margin. At the specified reference performance our results do not allow for a specification of the input level in the case of CS-4 in GSM900 RA250 no FH (and as a consequence in DCS1800 RA130 no FH). The same applies for the interference ratio in GSM900 RA250 no FH (and DCS1800 RA130 no FH). Before taking a decision on how to deal with that, we encourage other companies to provide simulation results in the same conditions in order to check if the same problem occurs.

N.5 References

[1] TDoc SMG2 WPB 42/97 "Block Error Rate and USF Error Rate for GPRS"; Ericsson, 22-26 September, 1997- Edinburgh, Scotland

[2] TDoc SMG2 WPB 47/97 "Block Erasure Rate Performance for GPRS/CS-1, CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4 in TU50 ideal FH and TU3 no FH, in the presence of co-channel interference"; CSELT-Ericsson, 22-26 September, 1997- Edinburgh, Scotland

[3] TDoc SMG2 WPB 48/97 "Proposal on how to report GPRS performance into GSM 05.05"; CSELT, 22-26 September, 1997- Edinburgh, Scotland

[4] TDoc SMG2 WPB 101/97 "CR 05.05- A062 for input signal level and interference ratio at reference performance"; CSELT, 3-7 November, 1997- Bonn, Germany

Annex P:
Block Error Rate and USF Error Rate for GPRS

ETSI STC SMG2 WPB TDoc SMG2 WPB 127/97
November 3-7, 1997
Bonn, Germany

Title: Block Error Rate and USF Error Rate for GPRS

Source: **Ericsson**

P.1 Introduction

BLER (Block Error Rate) and USF (Uplink State Flag) error rate for GPRS are presented for different channel assumptions. Simulations have been performed for all reference environments defined in GSM05.05 at 900 MHz..

P.2 Simulation Assumptions

Assumptions used in the simulations are:

- Varying channel during each burst according to the velocity
- Interference simulations: Interference from one single interferer, E_b/ N_0=28 dB
- No antenna diversity
- Synchronization on burst basis
- 16-state soft output MLSE-equalizer
- Channel coding according to GSM03.64

For CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4, decoding of USF is performed by soft correlation with the eight possible 12-bit codewords. For CS-1, USF error is detected after normal decoding of the convolutional code. This means that the performance for the USF is equal for CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4. For CS-1 a slightly worse performance is achieved but it is still significantly better than the corresponding BLER.

P.3 Simulation Results

P.3.1 Interference Simulations

P.3.1.1 TU50 Ideal Frequency Hopping

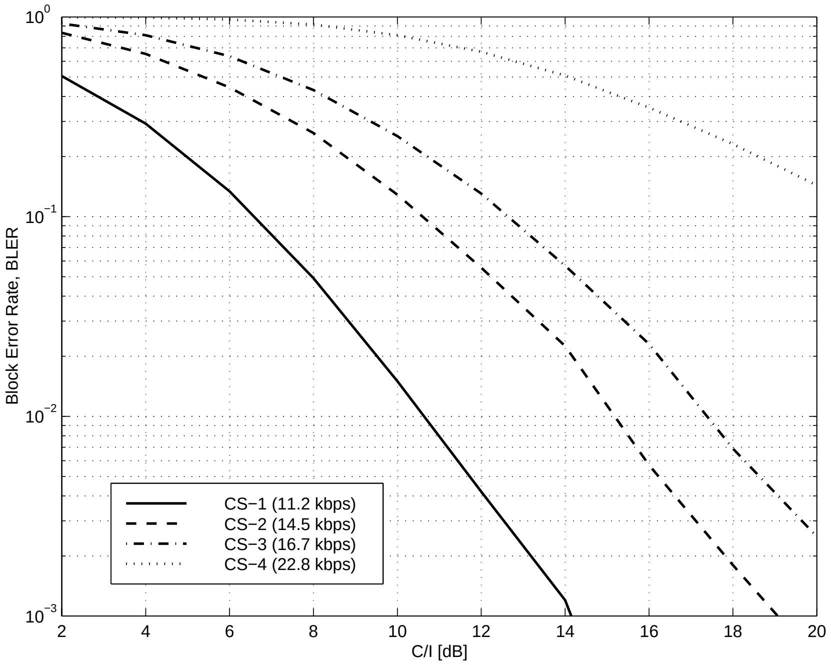


Figure 1: BLER for TU50 ideal frequency hopping

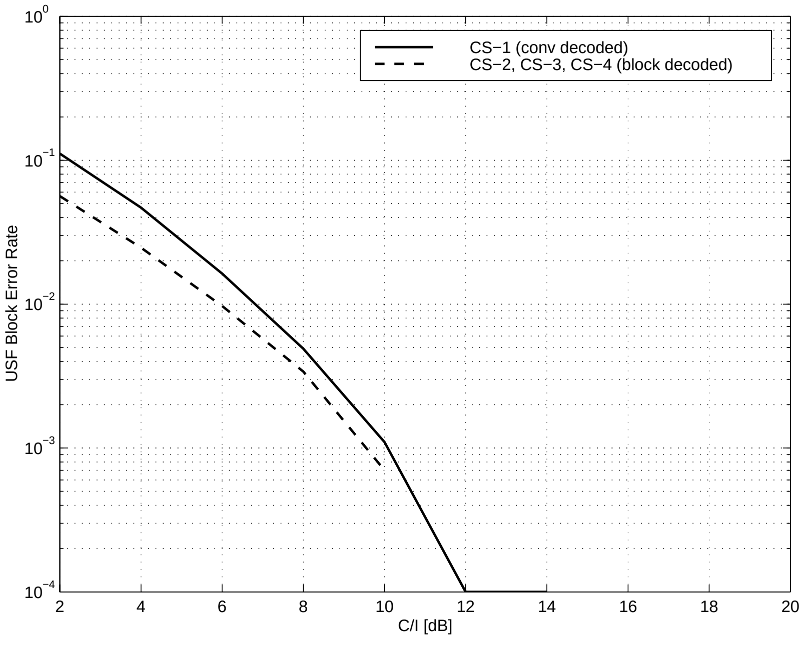


Figure 2: USF performance for TU50 ideal frequency hopping

P.3.1.2 TU50 No Frequency Hopping

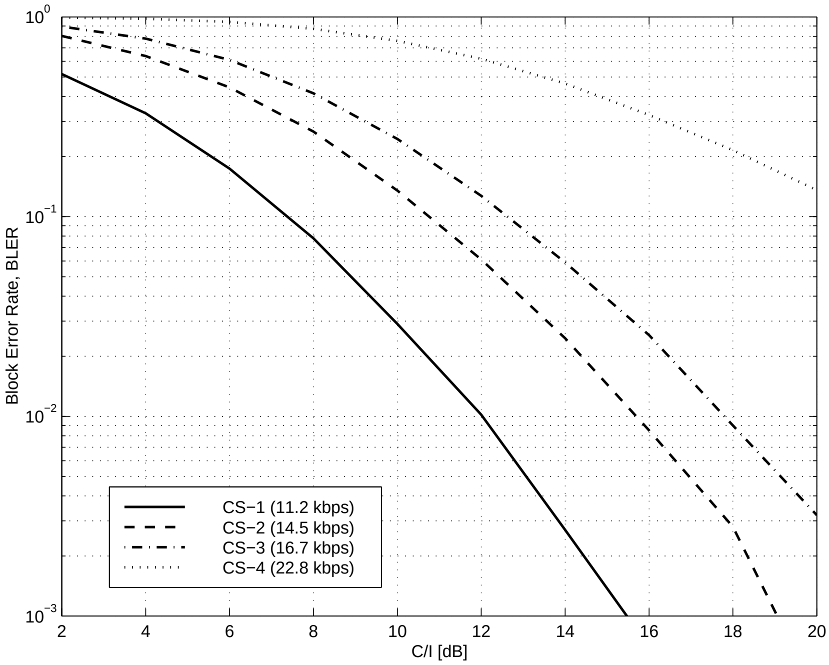


Figure 3: BLER for TU50 no frequency hopping

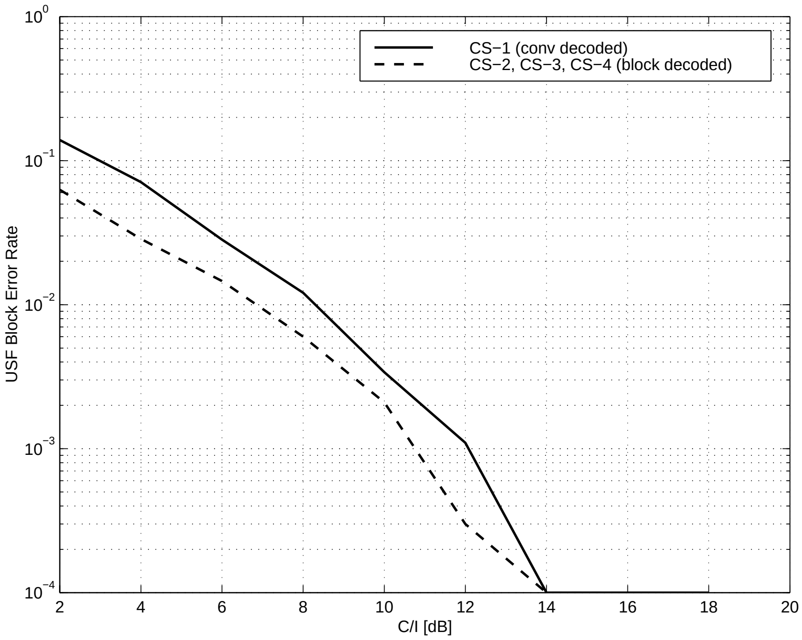


Figure 4: USF performance for TU50 no frequency hopping

P.3.1.3 TU3 Ideal Frequency Hopping

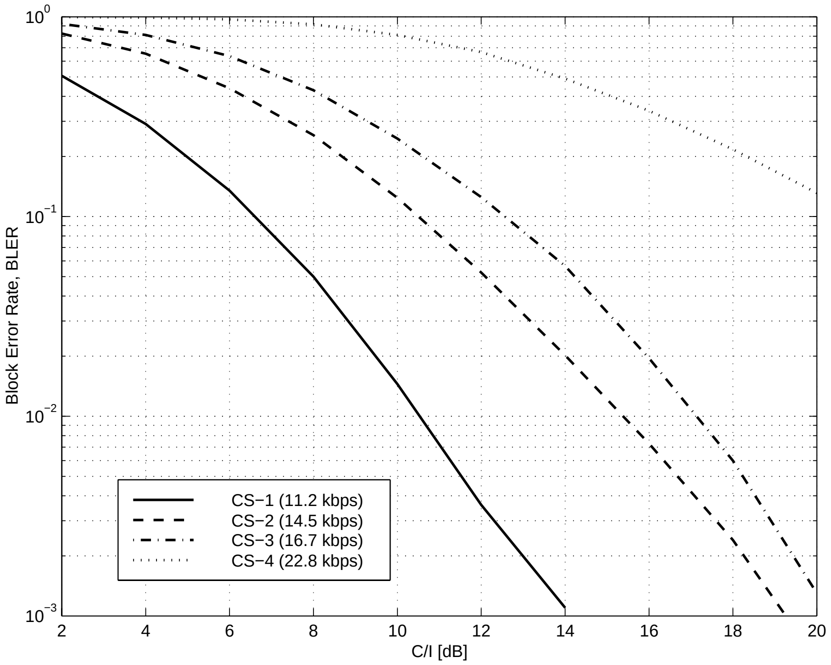


Figure 5: BLER for TU3 ideal frequency hopping

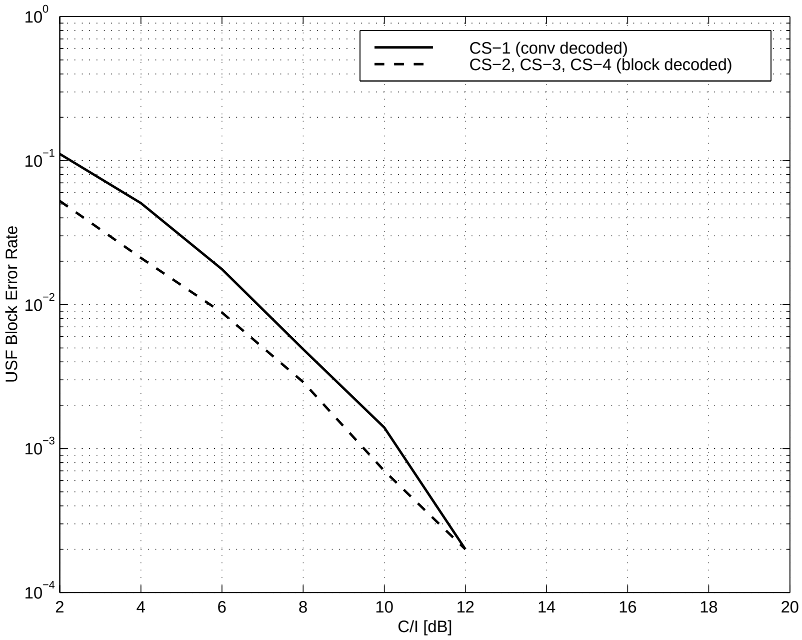


Figure 6: USF performance for TU3 ideal frequency hopping

P.3.1.4 TU3 No Frequency Hopping

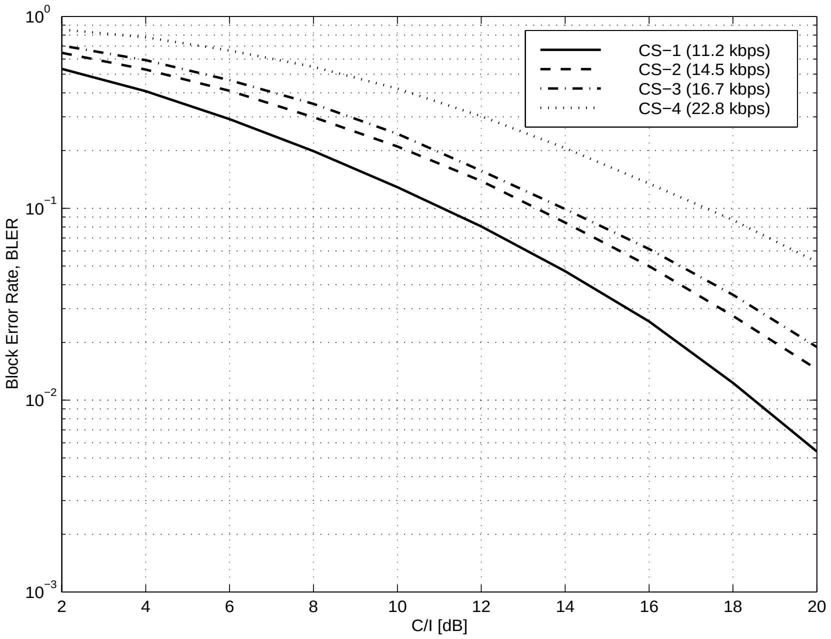


Figure 7: BLER for TU3 no frequency hopping

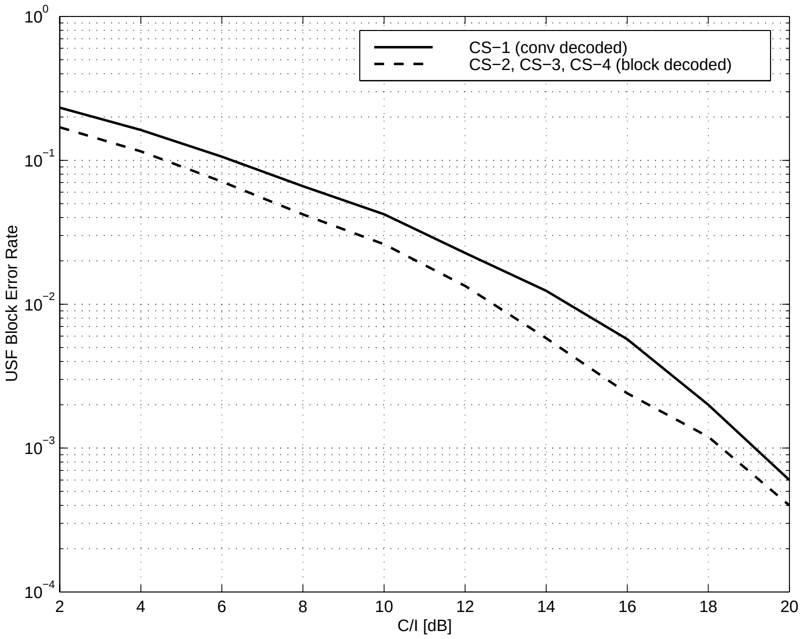


Figure 8: USF performance for TU3 no frequency hopping

P.3.1.5 RA250 No Frequency Hopping

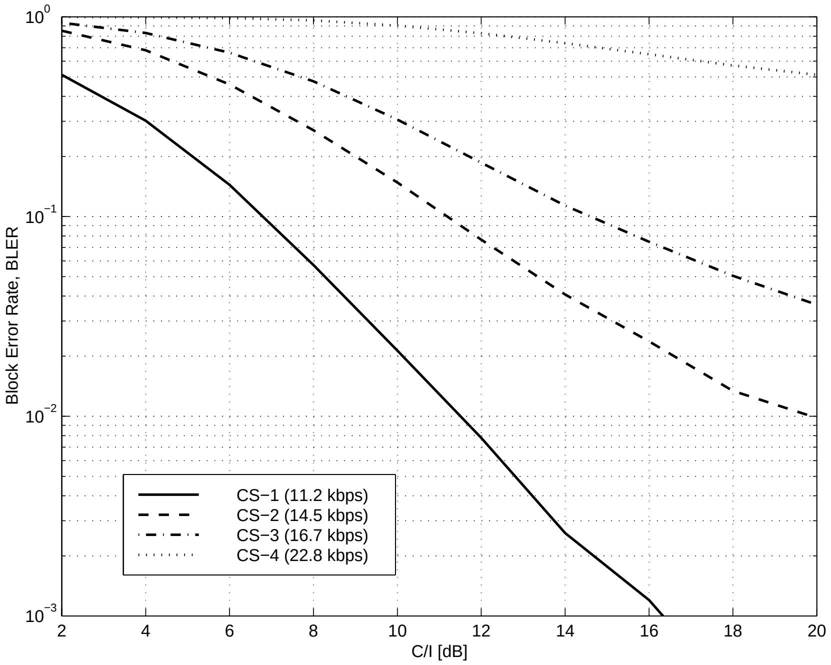


Figure 9: BLER for RA250 no frequency hopping

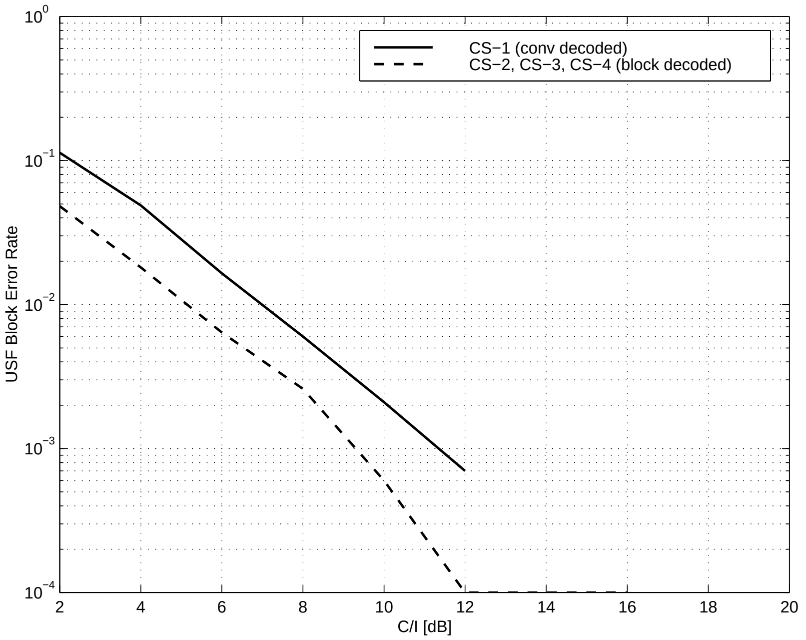


Figure 10: USF performance for RA250 no frequency hopping

P.3.2 Sensitivity Simulations

P.3.2.1 TU50 Ideal Frequency Hopping

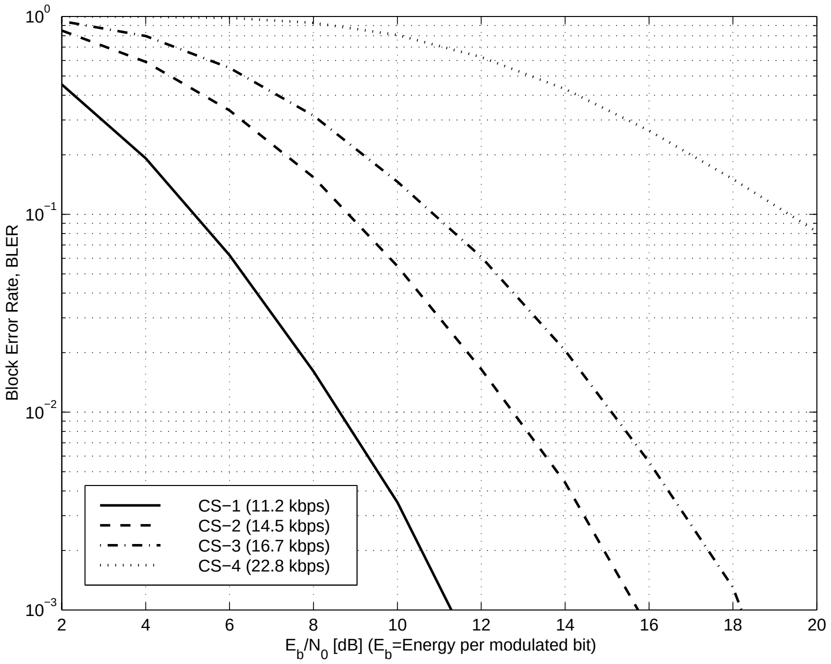


Figure 11: BLER for TU50 ideal frequency hopping

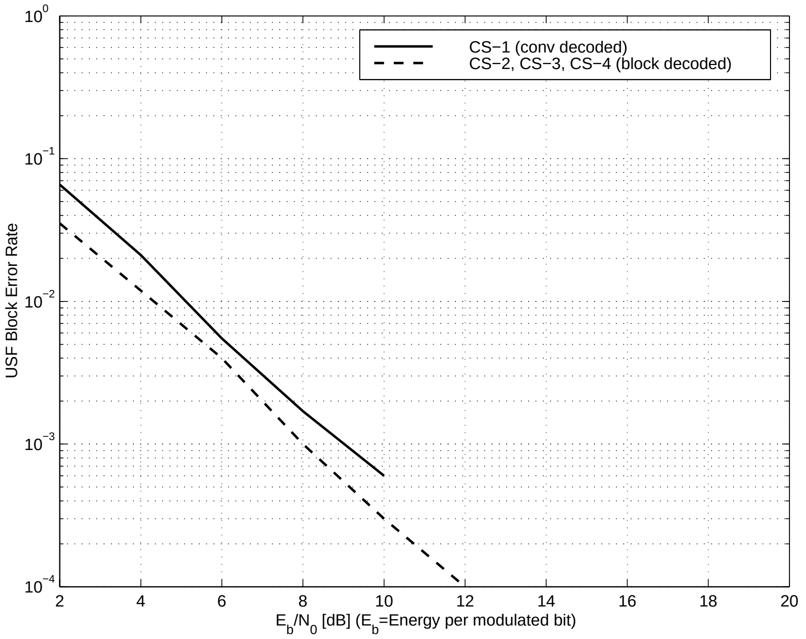


Figure 12: USF performance for TU50 ideal frequency hopping

P.3.2.2 TU50 No Frequency Hopping

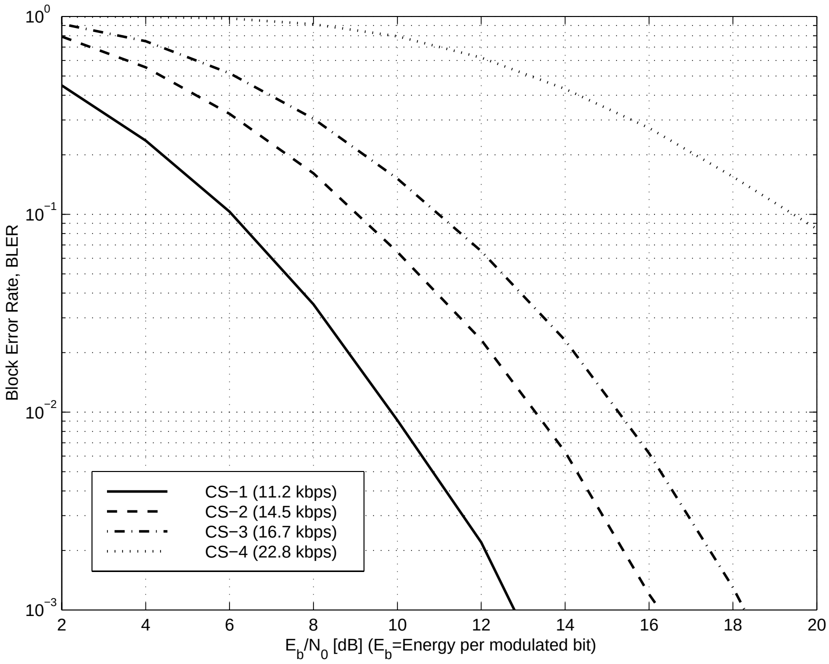


Figure 13: BLER for TU50 no frequency hopping

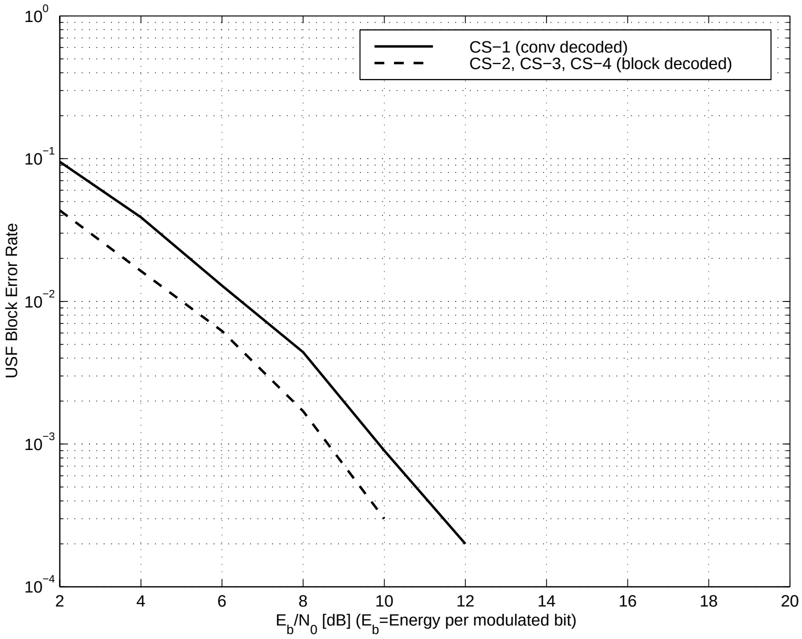


Figure 14: USF performance for TU50 no frequency hopping

P.3.2.3 HT100 No Frequency Hopping

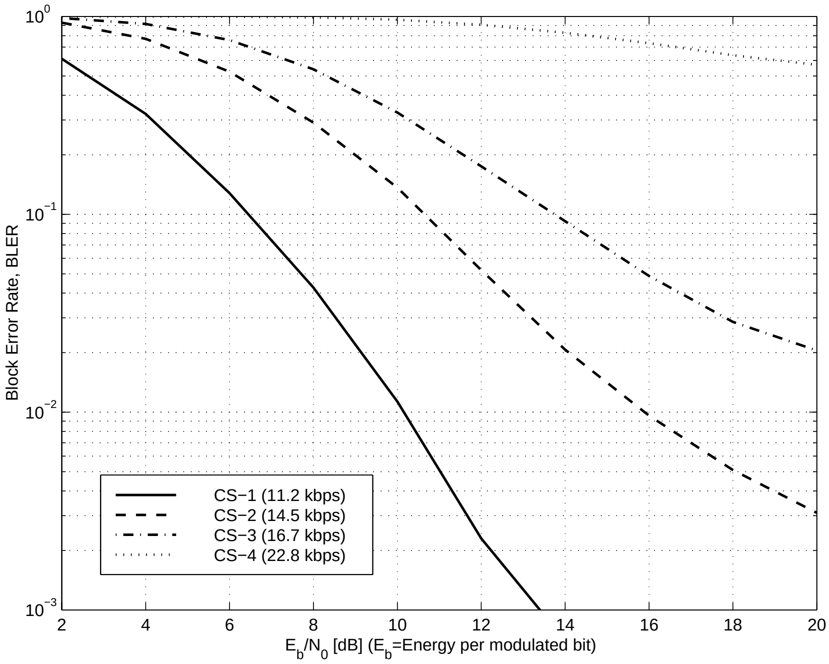


Figure 15: BLER for HT100 no frequency hopping

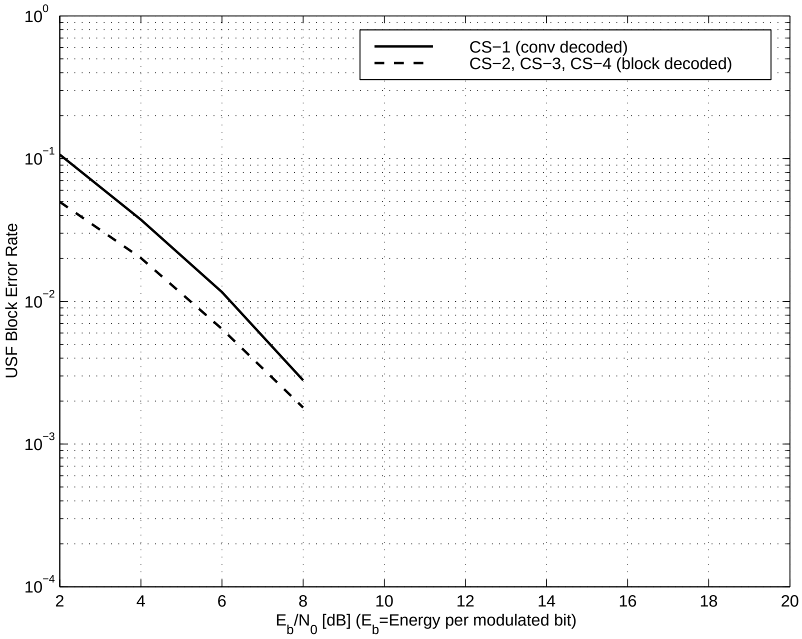


Figure 16: USF performance for HT100 no frequency hopping

P.3.2.4 RA250 No Frequency Hopping

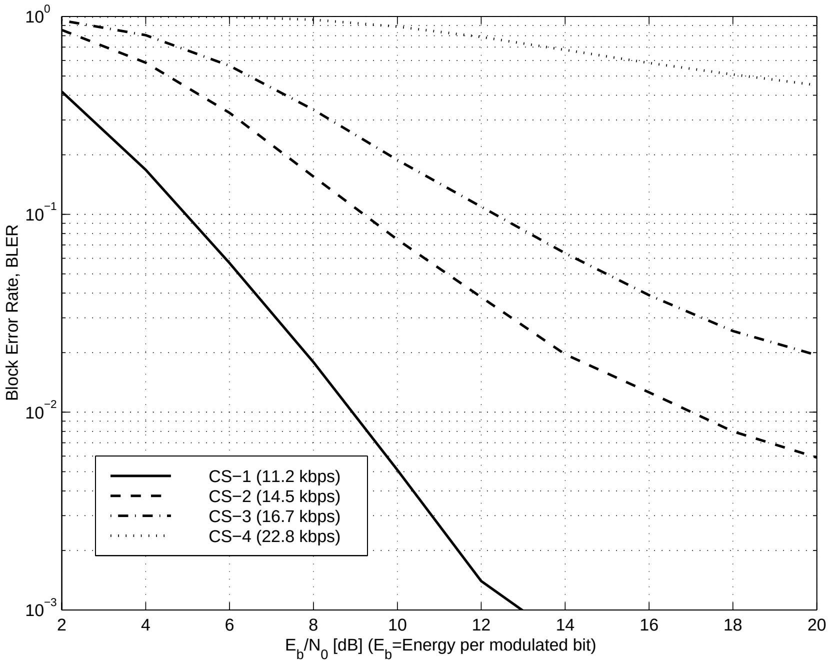


Figure 17: BLER for RA250 no frequency hopping

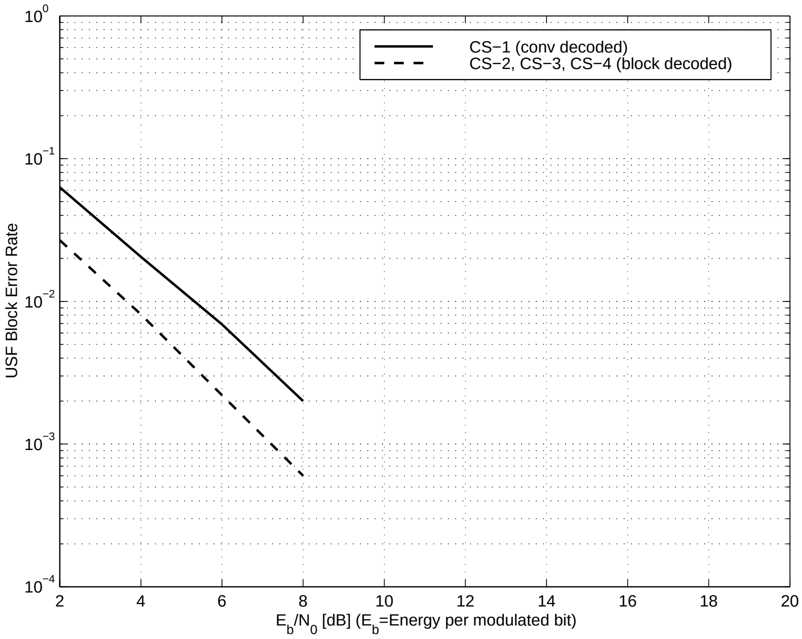


Figure 18: USF performance for RA250 no frequency hopping

P.3.2.5 Static Channel

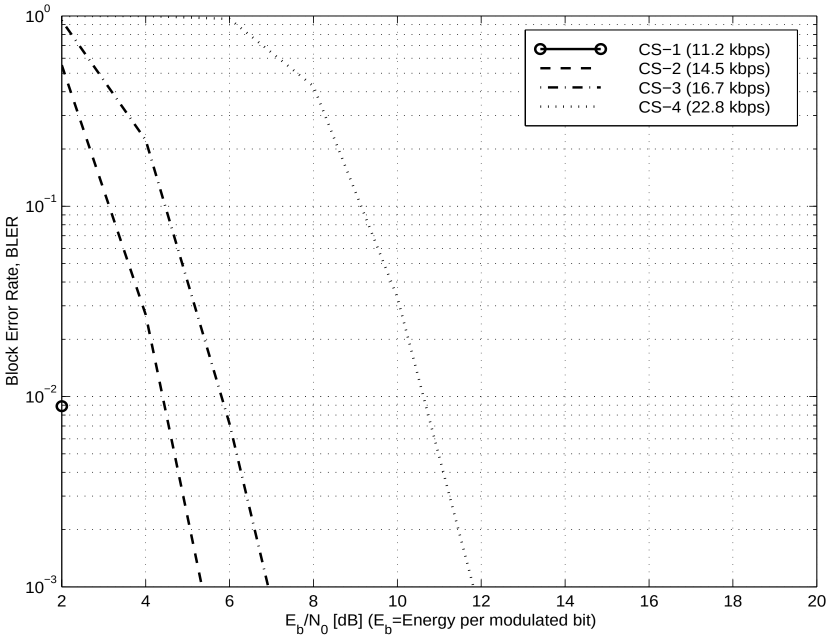


Figure 19: BLER for static channel

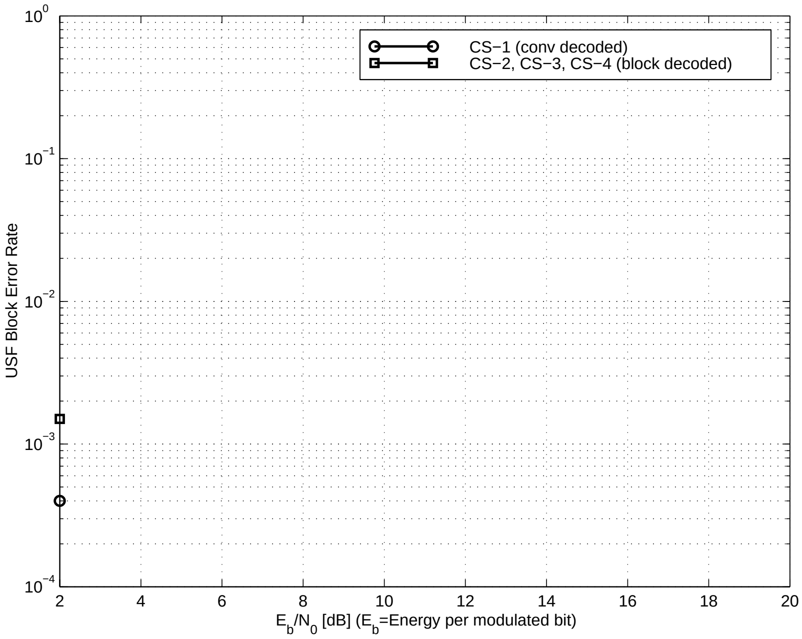


Figure 20: USF performance for static channel

Annex Q:
Block Error Rate and USF Error Rate for GPRS, 1800 MHz

ETSI STC SMG2 **TDoc SMG2 374/97**
Meeting no 24
Cork, Ireland **Agenda item 5.2.3**

1 - 5 December 1997

Title: Block Error Rate and USF Error Rate for GPRS, 1800 MHz

Source: **Ericsson**

Q.1 Introduction

BLER (Block Error Rate) and USF (Uplink State Flag) error rate for GPRS are presented for different channel assumptions. Simulations have been performed for 1800 MHz for those reference environments defined in GSM05.05 that can not be derived from the 900 MHz simulations.

Q.2 Simulation Assumptions

Assumptions used in the simulations are (the same as for 900 MHz):

- Varying channel during each burst according to the velocity
- Interference simulations: Interference from one single interferer, E_b/ N_0=28 dB
- No antenna diversity
- Synchronization on burst basis
- 16-state soft output MLSE-equalizer
- Channel coding according to GSM03.64

For CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4, decoding of USF is performed by soft correlation with the eight possible 12-bit codewords. For CS-1, USF error is detected after normal decoding of the convolutional code. This means that the performance for the USF is equal for CS-2, CS-3 and CS-4. For CS-1 a slightly worse performance is achieved but it is still significantly better than the corresponding BLER.

Q.3 Simulation Results

Q.3.1 Interference Simulations, 1800 MHz

Q.3.1.2 TU50, Ideal Frequency Hopping

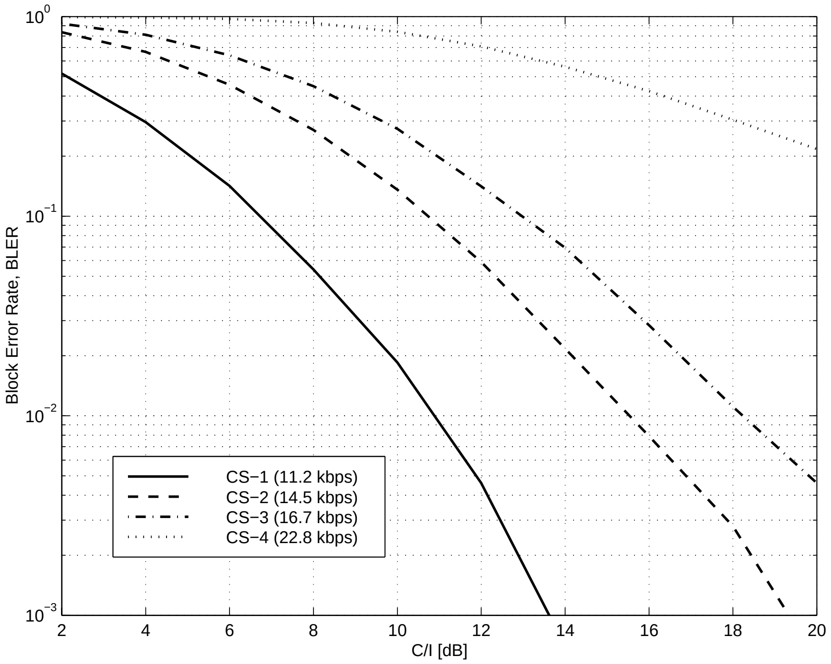


Figure 21: BLER for TU50 ideal frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

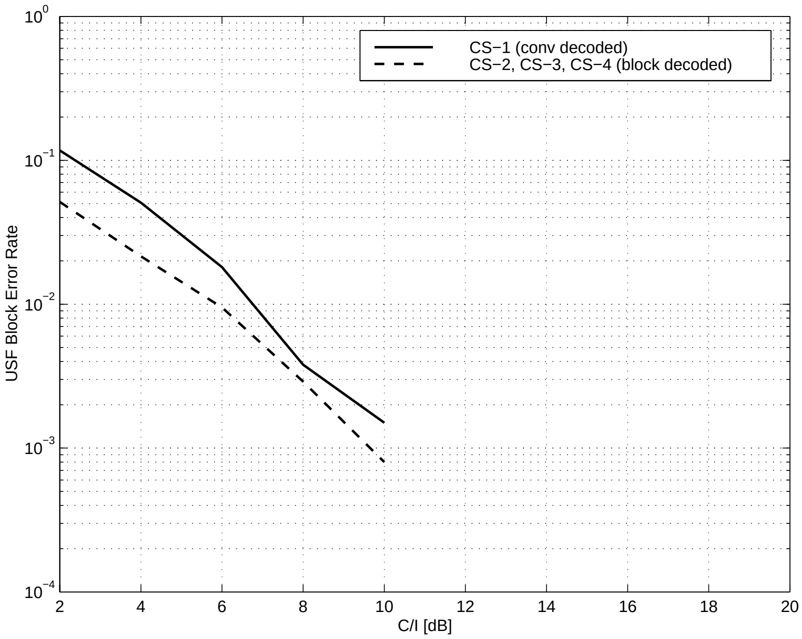


Figure 22: USF performance for TU50 ideal frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

Q.3.1.3 TU50 No Frequency Hopping

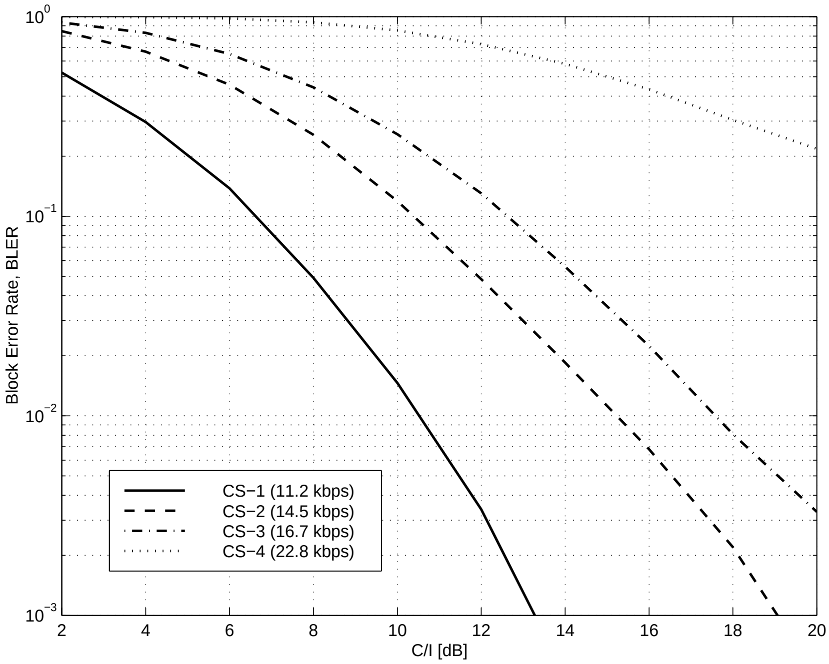


Figure 23: BLER for TU50, no frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

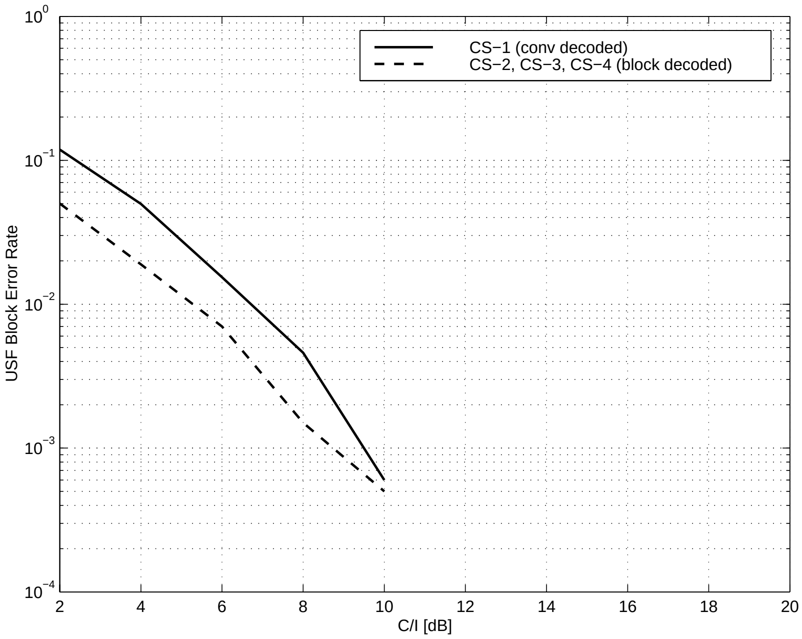


Figure 24: USF performance for TU50, no frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

Q.3.2 Sensitivity Simulations, 1800 MHz

Q.3.2.1 TU50 Ideal Frequency Hopping

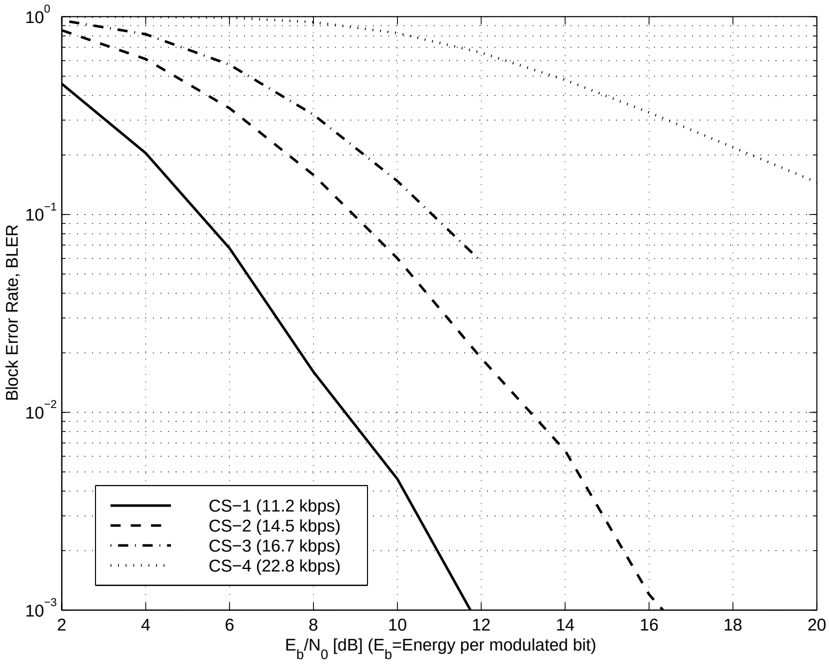


Figure 25: BLER for TU50 ideal frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

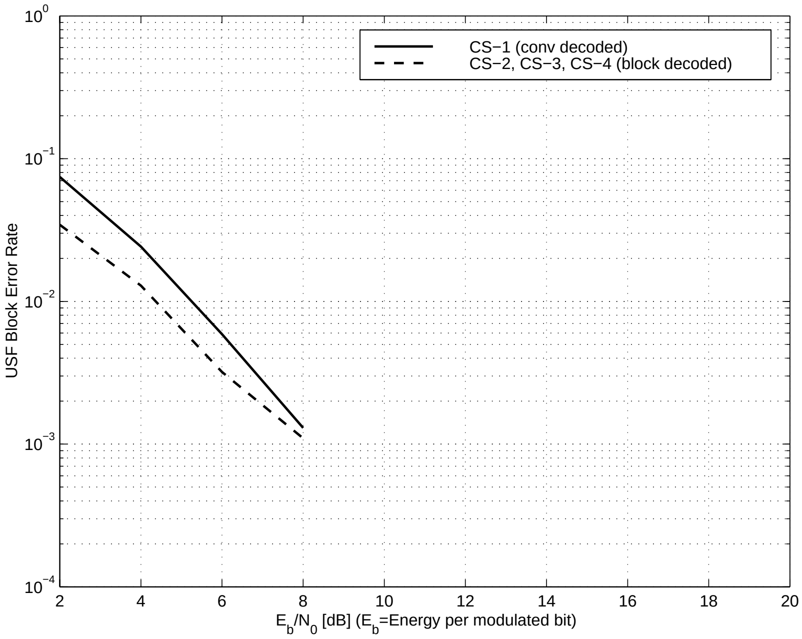


Figure 26: USF performance for TU50 ideal frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

Q.3.2.2 TU50 No Frequency Hopping

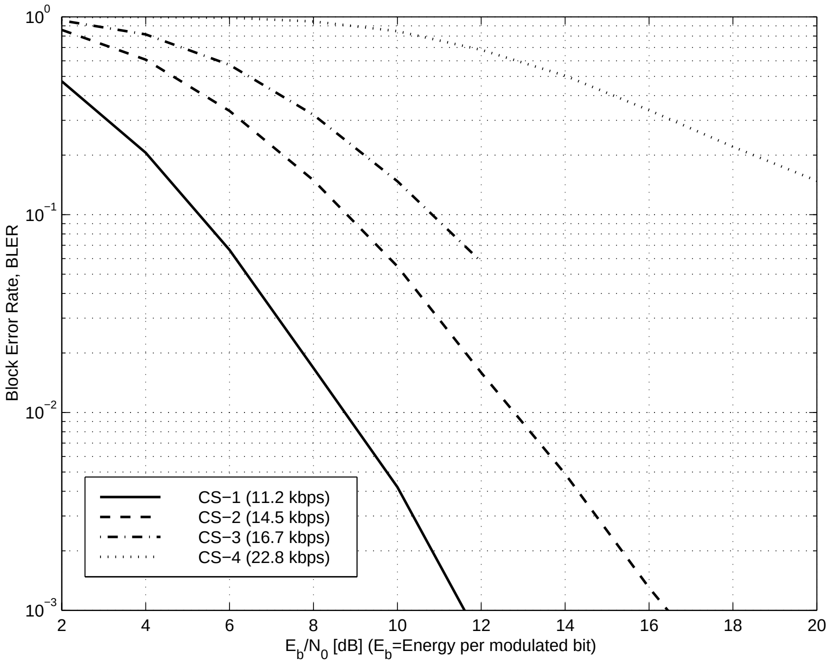


Figure 27: BLER for TU50 no frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

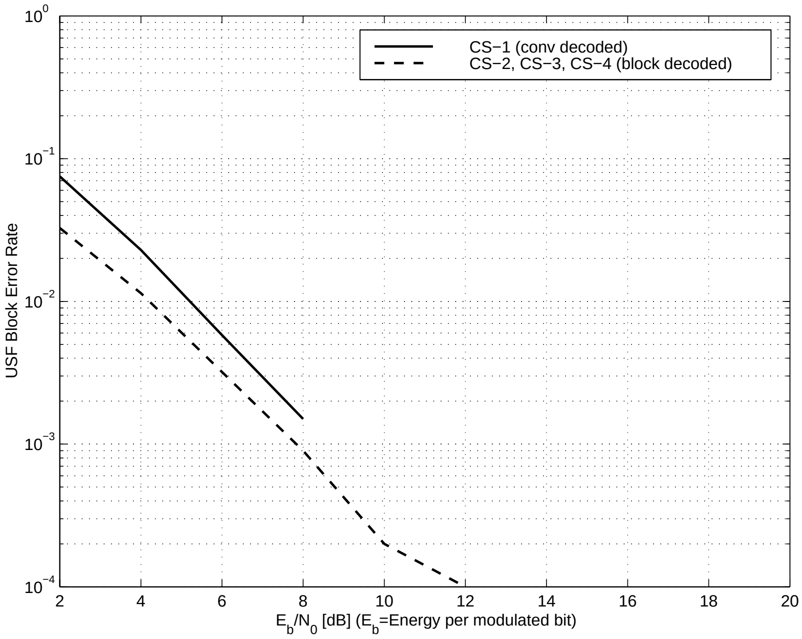


Figure 28: USF performance for TU50 no frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

Q.3.2.3 HT100 No Frequency Hopping

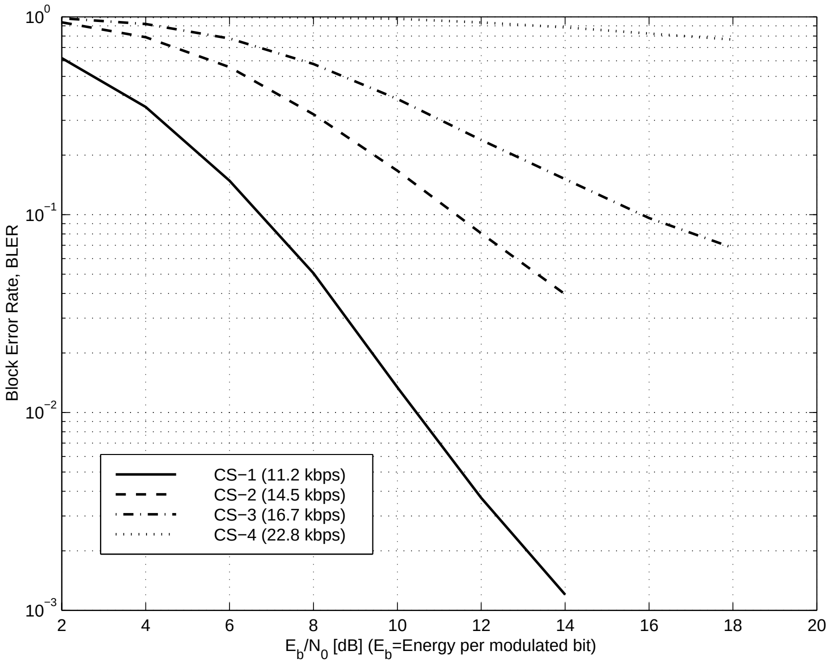


Figure 29: BLER for HT100 no frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

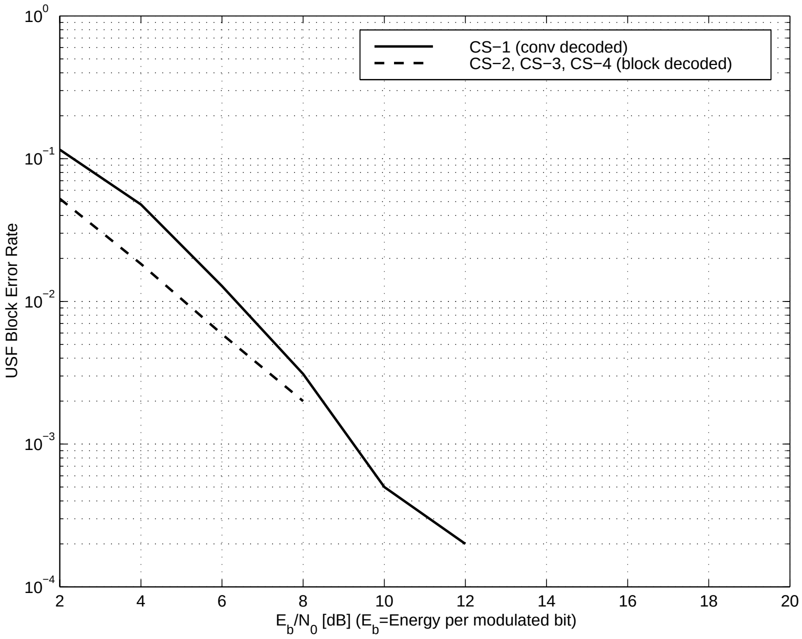


Figure 30: USF performance for HT100 no frequency hopping, 1800 MHz

Annex R: Pico BTS RF Scenarios

SMG2 Tdoc 177/98

Source SMG2

(update SMG2 33/97, 113/97, 155/98, WPB188/98 including 153/98, 154/98, 179/98)

Pico BTS RF Scenarios

When radios are mounted on a wall within a building the mobile users can get a lot closer to the antenna than in a conventional cell site. This changes a number of the basic radio parameters, such as receiver blocking, transmit wideband noise, and frequency accuracy.

The calculations in the present document are based on the Scenarios and calculations in Appendix A of 05.50 that specify the scenarios for DCS 1800 systems.

R.1 Introduction

R.2 Fixed parameters

This section reviews the parameters that will be used later in the document to define the scenarios.

From GSM 05.05

For 900 MHz

MS output power class = 4 (only handhelds within the building)

MS output power = +33 dBm

MS output power in 30 kHz for wideband noise calculations = +25 dBm

For 1800 MHz

MS output power class = 1

MS output power = +30 dBm

MS output power in 30 kHz for wideband noise calculations = +22 dBm

MS transmit spectrum due modulation and wideband noise (dBc)

Mobile	**Bandwidth30 kHz**				**100 kHz**		
MHz	100	200	250	400 >1800	1800< 3000	3000< 6000	>6000
900	+0.5	-30	-33	-60	-63	-65	-71
1800	+0.5	-30	-33	-60	-65	-65	-73

MS receiver reference sensitivity

900 MHz = -102 dBm

1800 MHz = -102 dBm

MS blocking level < 3 MHz

900 MHz = -23 dBm

1800 MHz = -26 dBm

From Previous papers SMG2 Tdoc 32/97

Minimum coupling loss (MCL)

900 MHz = 34 dB

1800 MHz = 40 dB

C/(I + N) = 9 dB for reference sensitivity performance

Conversion from peak power in 200 kHz to average power in 30 kHz = 8 dB

Conversion from noise power in 100 kHz to 200 kHz = 3 dB

Multiple interference margin 2 carriers case (MIM) = - 3dB

Multiple interference margin 4 carriers case (MIM) = -6dB

MS margin (MSM) - 10 dB

MS margin for 10% affected mobiles (MSM) -15dB (Tdoc SMG2 32/97)

Others

Antenna gain of the mobile and BTS is incorporated into the MCL; therefore all measurements are referenced to the antenna ports.

MS transmit spectrum due modulation and wideband noise (dBm) when mobile is transmitting at full power.

Mobile	**Bandwidth30 kHz**				**100 kHz**		
MHz	100	200	250	400 >1800	1800< 3000	3000< 6000	>6000
900	+25	-5	-8	-35	-38	-40	-46
1800	+22	-8	-11	-38	-43	-43	-51

TRANSMITTER CHARACTERISTICS

R.3 Maximum BTS Output Power

Based upon the calculations in SMG 2 TDoc 144/92 the maximum output power from an in-building cell is

P = MS blocking level + MCL - MIM + MSM

At 900 MHz

P = -23 + 34 - 3 + 10 = +18 dBm

At 1800 MHz

P = -26 + 40 - 3 + 10 = +21 dBm

Based upon calculations in SMG2 Tdoc 144/92, an MSM margin corresponding to 10% of affected mobiles can be tolerated according to measurements presented in SMG2 Tdoc 32/97 this corresponds to an MSM value of 15dB in a picocell.

At 900 MHz

P = -23 + 34 - 3 + 15 = +23dBm

At 1800 MHz

P = -26 + 40 - 3 + 15 = +26dBm

It was suggested during SMG2 #21 that picocells should not necessarily be restricted to 2 carriers particularly for DCS 1800. Correspondingly, values of multiple interferer margin for 4-carrier scenarios should be considered. That is MIM = 6dB. Using these values in the calculations above gives

At 900 MHz

P = -23 + 34 - 6 + 15 = +20dBm

At 1800 MHz

P = -26 + 40 - 6 + 15 = +23dBm

It is suggested that the values nominal maximum output power levels of 20dBm (13-20dBm ±2dB) and 23dBm (16-23dBm ±2dB) are chosen as this yields greatest flexibility of deployment and manufacture for the proposed pico-BTS class.

The lower value of power for 900MHz is derived from (18dBm - 5dB) and that for 1800MHz from (21dBm - 5dB) following the first scenario calculation, the higher value is derived from the last scenario calculation above. .

R.4 BTS Receiver Sensitivity

R.4.1 Balanced link (zero interference scenario)

To match the up and down links the maximum receiver reference sensitivity at the BTS, BTS sens BL, is:

BTS sens BL = MS output power - max. path loss

max. path loss = BTS output power - MS ref. sens.

At 900 MHz

BTS sens BL = 33 - (+ 20 -- 102) = -89 dBm

At 1800 MHz

BTS ref. sens. = 30 - (+23 -- 102) = -95 dBm

R.4.2 Interferer at MCL scenario

However, using an other argument from SMG 2 TDoc 144/92 that the BTS receiver noise floor will be dominated by another mobile's wideband noise when it is at MCL, the sensitivity in this scenario, BTS sens MCL, is:

BTS sens MCL = MS wideband noise (in 200 kHz) - MCL + C/N

MS wideband noise (in 200 kHz) = MS output power in 30 kHz - noise (dBc/100 kHz) + conversion factor (100 kHz -> 200 kHz)

At 900 MHz

BTS sens MCL = (25 - 71 + 3) - 34 + 9 = -68 dBm

At 1800 MHz

BTS ref. sens. = (22 - 73 + 3) - 40 + 9 = -79 dBm

R.4.3 Power control (zero interference scenario)

So we have a choice of receiver sensitivities based upon a balanced link budget with maximum cell radius or on one of the possible scenarios (an uncoordinated mobile at MCL). To choose between them we can assume that an operator will want the cell radius to stay constant under all conditions, but that the mobile should be operating at minimum output power. Here we have to use the second set of figures but increase the sensitivity by the amount of power control required. For a phase 1 mobile the power control range is 20 dB. Therefore the maximum required sensitivity when power control is employed, BTS sens PC, is:

At 900 MHz

BTS sens PC = -68 - 20 = -88 dBm (-89dBm, section 0)

At 1800 MHz

BTS sens PC = -79 - 20 = -99 dBm (-95dBm, section 0)

R.4.4 Sensitivity overview

At 900MHz the value in 2.2.3 above is 1dB lower than that calculated in section 0 for an MCL of 34dB so we choose -88dBm sensitivity.

At 1800MHz the value in 2.2.3 above is 4dB higher than that calculated in section 0 for an MCL of 34dB so we choose -95dBm sensitivity.

Section 0 shows that a pico-BTS with a high sensitivity will be able to make use of MS power control when in-band noise from an uncoordinated interferer at MCL is not the limiting scenario.

R.5 BTS Power Control Range

The minimum BTS output power is derived from balancing the link budget for the maximum permitted path loss. The appropriate value of sensitivity to use calculating the maximum path loss is for the case when an uncoordinated MS is close to the BTS. Choice of any other value would imply a cell area that would vary depending on the presence of close in interferers.

Min. BTS power = MS ref. sens. + max. path loss

max. path loss = MS output power - BTS sens MCL

At 900 MHz

Min BTS power = -102 + (33 - -68) = -1 dBm (range 20--1 = 21dB)

At 1800 MHz

Min BTS power = -102 + (30 - -79) = 7dBm (range 23-9 = 16dBm)

R.6 BTS Spectrum due to modulation and wideband noise

The BTS wideband noise has to be reduced to a level, which will not degrade receiver performance of an uncoordinated mobile at MCL. Using the formula for the small cell environments (SMG2 TDoc 63/92) with MSM given in SMG2 TDoc 144/92

Wideband noise >= 1.8 MHz = MS ref. sens. + MSM + C/N + MIM + MCL + conversion factor (200 kHz -> 100 kHz)

At 900 MHz

Wideband noise = -102 + 15 - 9 - 3 + 34 + -3 = -68 dBm

At 1800 MHz

Wideband noise = -102 + 15 - 9 - 6 + 40 + -3 = -65dBm

At 900MHz it is suggested we choose -68dBm and at 1800MHz -65dBm. These values correspond to spectrum due to modulation with respect to 30kHz on carrier of

Spectrum due to modn = - [max BTS power] + [200-30kHz conversion] + [max wideband noise in dBm]

At 900MHz

Spectrum due to modn = -20 + 8 - 68 = -80dB

At 1800MHz

Spectrum due to modn = -23 + 8 - 65 = -80dB

These values represent a tightening of the values in 05.05, section 4.2.1, in comparison with other BTS classes. It is suggested that a compromise between the values suggested by the scenario and equipment complexity considerations be adopted.

The pico-BTS noise specifications should be tightened with respect to the micro BTS classes for offsets beyond 6000kHz up to the limits for the normal BTS. For offsets ≥ 1800 < 6000 the existing tightening of the micro BTS noise spec with respect to the normal BTS should not be exceeded.

	≥ 1800 < 6000		**≥ 6000**	
900MHz	-65dBm .... -58dBm	-70dBc	-75dBm .... -68dBm	-80dBc
1800MHz	-68dBm .... -61dBm	-76dBc	-72dBm .... -65dBm	-80dBc

R.7 Spurious Emissions

Spurious emissions should remain the same at -36 dBm. The only exception is the transmit noise in the receive band. The scenario used in 05.05 assumes 30dB isolation between Tx and Rx. This scenario represents self-interference and so the higher sensitivity values from section 0 is used.

Noise in receive band = [BTS Sens BL]. - C/N - MIM + [coupling loss]

At 900 MHz

Noise in receive band = -88 - 9 - 3 + 30 = -70 dBm

At 1800 MHz

Noise in receive band = -95 - 9 - 6 + 30 = -80dBm

At 900MHz it is suggested we choose -70dBm and at 1800MHz that we choose -80dBm.

R.8 Radio Frequency Tolerance

In the present system the mobile has to be designed to work with a Doppler shift caused by speeds up to 250 km/h at 900 MHz, and 130 km/h at 1800 MHz. This corresponds to a frequency offset of around 250 Hz in both cases.

Within a building the fastest a mobile would be expected to move at would be 10 km/m, corresponding to an offset of 10 Hz at 900 MHz, or 20 Hz at 1800 MHz. Therefore the absolute frequency tolerance can be reduced for the BTS.

At present the limit is 0.05 ppm, 45 Hz at 900 MHz, 90 Hz at 1800 MHz. Taking the 1800 MHz case, the mobile can successfully decode signals with a 250 + 90 Hz offset at present = 340 Hz. The new requirement is (20 + frequency error) hence the new maximum frequency error is

frequency error = present decode offset - new max. Doppler

At 900 MHz: frequency error = 295 - 10 = 285 Hz = 0.32 ppm

At 1800 MHz: frequency error = 340 - 20 = 320 Hz = 0.18 ppm

The discussion at SMG2 #21 on relaxation of the radio frequency tolerance criterion suggested that the above relaxation may cause some problems with mobiles. A compromise value was suggested:

At 900MHz and 1800 MHz frequency error = 0.1ppm

RECEIVER CHARACTERISTICS

R.9 Blocking Characteristics

The fundamental property of the radio being tested is the dynamic range. The upper limit is defined by the maximum power received from a mobile operating at MCL and the lower limit is the minimum signal level that must be received from a wanted mobile to meet the reference sensitivity requirement. In this scenario it is the wideband noise from the uncoordinated mobile that defines that lower limit.

From SMG2 TDoc 104/92 the highest level expected at the BTS receiver from an uncoordinated mobile will be

BTS blocking level = MS power - MCL

At 900 MHz

BTS blocking level = 33 - 34 = -1 dBm

At 1800 MHz

BTS blocking level = 30 - 40 = -10 dBm

From SMG2 TDoc 63/92 the lower level is calculated to be

[BTS on channel wanted signal during blocking] = [MS wideband noise in 200 kHz] - MCL + C/N

Where fo = wanted signal and f = interfering signal

At 900 MHz, BTS on channel wanted signal during blocking:

(0.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 0.8MHz) = (-35 + 8) - 34 + 9 = -52dBm

(0.8 ≤ |f-fo| < 1.6MHz) = (-35 + 8) - 34 + 9 = -52 dBm

(1.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 3MHz) = (-38 + 3) - 34 + 9 = -60 dBm

(3MHz ≤ |f-fo|) = (-46 + 3) - 34 + 9 = -68 dBm

At 1800 MHz, BTS on channel wanted signal during blocking:

(0.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 0.8MHz) = (-38 + 8) - 40 + 9 = -61dBm

(0.8 ≤ |f-fo| < 1.6MHz) = (-38 + 8) - 40 + 9 = -61 dBm

(1.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 3 MHz) = (-43 + 3) - 40 + 9 = -71 dBm

(3MHz ≤ |f-fo|) = (-51 + 3) - 40 + 9 = -79 dBm

Hence the dynamic range requirements are

dynamic range = (max. power from uncord. MS) - (BTS wanted signal during blocking)

The use of dynamic range is taken from the microcell scenarios in Appendix C of 05.05, Tdoc 144/92.

Dynamic range	0.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 0.8	0.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 1.6	1.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 3	3 MHz ≤ |f-fo|
900 MHz	51	51	59	67
1800 MHz	51	51	61	69

GSM 05.05 specifies the blocking in a different manner. Instead of leaving the blocker at the same level and changing the level of the wanted signal, it leaves the wanted signal at a fixed point (3 dB above sensitivity) and changes the level of the blocker. Maintaining the same dynamic range, a translation can be performed to present the figures in a similar format.

GSM 05.05 defined BTS blocking level = (ref. sens. + 3 dB) + dynamic range

For a fixed wanted signal at 3 dB above reference sensitivity

At 900 MHz:

wanted signal = -88 + 3 = -85 dBm

BTS blocking level (0.6 ≤ |f-fo| < - 0.8 MHz) = -85 + 51 = -34 dBm

BTS blocking level (0.8 ≤ |f-fo| < - 1.6 MHz) = -85 + 51 = -34 dBm

BTS blocking level(1.6 ≤ |f-fo| < - 3 MHz) = -85 + 59 = -26 dBm

BTS blocking level (< 3 MHz ≤ |f-fo| <) = -85 + 67 = -18 dBm

At 1800 MHz

wanted signal = -95 + 3 = -92 dBm

BTS blocking level (0.6 ≤ |f-fo| < - 0.8 MHz) = -92 + 51 = -41dBm

BTS blocking level (0.8 ≤ |f-fo| < - 1.6 MHz) = -92 + 51 = -41dBm

BTS blocking level (1.6 ≤ |f-fo| < - 3 MHz) = -92 + 61 =-31dBm

BTS blocking level (3 MHz ≤ |f-fo|) = -92 + 69 = -23dBm

Blocking	0.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 0.8	0.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 1.6	1.6 ≤ |f-fo| < 3	3 MHz ≤ |f-fo|
900 MHz	-34	-34	-26	-18
1800 MHz	-41	-41	-31	-23

R.10 pico- BTS AM suppression characteristics

Tdoc SMG2 246/94 from Vodafone examined in detail the test scenarios for AM suppression. These needed to be adjusted to permit a measurement to be made with out co-channel components from the test corrupting the result. Following the logic of the Tdoc and using the values of BTS power, MCL and multiple interferer margin we can get to the following. The original argument for pico-BTS was presented in Tdoc 154/98. Negative numbers in () indicate where the scenario fails, +ve indicate where it is exceeded.

R.10.1 Modulation sidebands

R.10.1.1 Uncoordinated BTS->MS

Max noise level allowed in MS Rx BW for no interference, = [MS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] - [multiple interferers margin] + [coupling loss]

GSM900 pico: -102 - 9 - 3 + 34 = -80 dBm, DCS1800 pico: -102 - 9 - 6 + 40 = -77dBm

GSM 05.05 requirement (section 4.2.1, picocell modifications, > 6 MHz offset)

= [BTS Tx power] - [8dB peak power to 30kHz correction factor] - [spectrum due to modulation requirement] + [100kHz to 200kHz BW correction]

GSM 900: (20 - 8) - 80 + 3 = -65dBm (-15dB)

DCS1800: (23 - 8) - 80 + 3 = -62dBm (-15dB)

R.10.1.2 Uncoordinated MS->BTS

Max noise level allowed in BTS Rx BW for no interference, = [BTS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [coupling loss]

GSM900: -88 - 9 + 34 = -63

DCS1800: -95 - 9 + 40 = -64

GSM 05.05 requirement (section 4.2.1 > 6MHz offset)

= [MS Tx power] - [8dB peak power to 30kHz BW correction factor] - [spectrum due to mod. Requirement] + [100kHz to 200 kHz BW correction]

GSM 900: (33-8) - 71 + 3 = -43dBm (-20 dB)

DCS1800: (30-8) - 73 + 3 = -48dBm (-16dB)

R.10.2 Switching transients

Following the logic of Tdoc 246/94.

R.10.2.1 Uncoordinated BTS->MS

Max peak level allowed in effective Rx BW at MS for no interference, = [MS sensitivity] -[C/I margin] + [MCL] + [transient margin]

GSM 900: -102 - 9 + 34 + 20 = -57dBm

DCS 1800: -102 -9 + 40 + 20 = -51dBm

GSM 05.05 requirement (section 4.2.2, > 1.8MHz offset),

GSM 900: 20 - 80 = -60dBm (+3dB)

DCS 1800: 23 - 80 = -57dBm (+6dB)

R.10.2.2 Uncoordinated MS->BTS

Max peak level allowed in effective Rx BW at BTS for no interference, = [BTS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [MCL] + [transient margin]

GSM 900: -88 - 9 + 34 + 20 = -43dBm

DCS 1800: -95 - 9 + 40 + 20 = -44dBm

GSM 05.05 (section 4.2.2, > 1.8MHz offset),

GSM 900: -36dBm (-7dB)

DCS 1800: -36dBm (-8dB)

R.10.3 Blocking

R.10.3.1 Uncoordinated BTS->MS

Max blocking signal level at MS receiver for no interference, = [BTS power] + [multiple inteferers

margin] - [MCL]

GSM 900: 20 + 3 - 34 = -11dBm

DCS 1800: 23 + 6 - 40 = -11dBm

GSM 05.05 (section 5.1, > 3MHz offset)

GSM 900: -23dBm (+12dB)

DCS 1800: -26dBm (+15dB)

R.10.3.2 Uncoordinated MS->BTS

Max blocking signal level allowed at BTS receiver for no interference, = [MS power] - MCL

GSM 900: 33 - 34 = -1dBm

DCS 1800: 30 - 40 = -10dBm

Requirement, 05.05 section 5.1, proposed pico-BTS, > 3MHz offset,

GSM 900: -18dBm (+17dB)

DCS 1800: -23dBm(+13dB)

R.10.4 The AM suppression requirement

R.10.4.1 Downlink, BTS->MS

With reference to the calculations in section 1) the following scenario failures occur

(0) Maximum noise at MS due to BTS modulation sidebands fails the scenario requirement by 15dB for GSM 900 and by 15dBfor DCS 1800.

The most significant failures of the GSM and DCS scenarios occur for BTS modulation sidebands. If we include the MCL relaxation for interference from the BTS to its nearest MS stations of 15dB the scenarios are passed. .

R.10.4.2 Uplink, MS->BTS

With reference to the calculations in section 0) the following scenario failures occur

(0) Maximum noise at BTS due to MS modulation sidebands fails the scenario requirement by 20dB for GSM 900 and by 16dBfor DCS 1800.

(0) Maximum noise at BTS due to MS switching transients fails the scenario requirement by 7dB for GSM 900 and by 8dB for DCS 1800.

The most significant failures of the GSM and DCS scenarios occur for MS modulation sidebands. The failure margin is 20dB for GSM 900 and 16dB for DCS 1800.

R.10.4.3 Interference levels

Thus for an AM suppression test, the interferer co-channel components in the above scenarios based on GSM 05.05 specification limits (pico-BTS) are too high and would affect the test result. Therefore, the test signal level must be reduced to a level, which will not compromise the co-channel performance.

The maximum permissible interferer signal level to be used for an AM suppression test

= [Tx power] - MCL - [scenario failure margin]

These levels are calculated in the following table. Following the argument in Tdoc SMG2 246/94, values for BTS->MS testing do not need to be altered.

Interfering source	GSM 900	DCS 1800
MS	33 - 34 - 20 = -21	30 - 40 - 16 = -26

R.11 intermodulation

R.11.1 co-ordinated and uncoordinated BTS -> MS (scenario 2 & 3, Fig 3.2 middle)

[max received level at MS1] = [BTS power] - [coupling loss BTS2 -> MS1] + [margin for other IMs]

At GSM 900 = 20 - 34 + 3 = -11dBm

AT DCS 1800 = 23 - 40 + 6 = -11dBm

The required IM attenuation in MS is for scenario 2 and for scenario 3. The Rec 05.05 section 5.3 simulates scenario 3

R.11.2 coordinated MS&MS -> BTS (scenario 4)

[max received level at BTS1] = [MS power] - [MS power control range] - [coupling loss MS -> BTS1] + [margin for other IMs]

At GSM 900 = 33 - 20 - 34 + 3 = -18dBm

At DCS 1800 = 30 - 20 - 40 + 6 = -24dBm

R.11.3 uncoordinated MS&MS -> BTS (scenario 4, Fig 3.2 lower)

[max received level at BTS1] = [MS power] - [coupling loss MS - BTS1] + [margin for other IMs]

At GSM 900 = 33 - 34 + 3 = 2dBm

At DCS 1800 = 30 - 40 + 6 = -4dBm

R.11.4 MCL relaxation

The worst case for BTS receiver IMs is when two MSs approach the base, the scenario requirement is covered in sections 2.2.2 & 2.2.3 of 05.50 Annex The argument is reproduced above.

Following the argument in 05.50 Annex A, If the coupling loss between both the MSs and the BTS increases by 1dB the level of a 3rd order IM product will reduce by 3dB. Thus, if the coupling loss assumption between MS and BTS is increased by 15dB to 50dB, the requirements become,

At 900MHz 2 - 45 = -43dBm

At 1800 MHz -4 - 45 = -49dB

05.05 gives a level of -43dBm for 900MHz BTS and -49dBm for 1800 BTS for intermodulation performance. The values above meet the 05.05 scenarios.

R.12 Pico BTS TI1.5 performance requirements

The pico-BTS shall meet the static channel performance as specified in GSM 05.05. The only other radio propagation channel that is relevant to the performance of the pico-BTS is the TI 5 channel. At these speeds the GSM interleaving process no-longer works very well. This can be seen in the existing non-hopping performance figures for the TU3 environment which are not that useful. For the performance specified in this channel to be useful for radio planning purposes we propose to follow to some extent the approach adopted for GPRS. To allow easy comparison we suggest the adoption of the performance figures for TU50 no FH at 900MHz and that we specify the extra signal level and C/I margins that are required over reference levels in order to meet this performance in the TI5 channel.

Simulation shows that sensitivity performance is exceeded when the signal level is increased by 3dB above reference sensitivity.

Simulation shows that interference performance is exceeded when the carrier to interference level is increased by 4dB above reference sensitivity.

R.12.1 Nominal Error Rates for Pico-BTS

The pico-BTS scenarios imply a greater chance that mobile stations will make high power RACH attempts. Therefore it is necessary to update the NER requirements for pico-BTS. In the following we reproduce the MCL distribution table first presented by Motorola in SMG2 32/97 and develop a table of occurrence probability for RACH power with mobile stations making RACH attempts at 33dBm. The table below shows the MCL loss versus the chance of occurrence.

% of measurements	900MHz MCL dB	1800 MHz MCL dB
0.03	-33	-39
0.1	-34	-40
0.53	-36	-42
1.0	-38	-48
1.43	-39	-45
2.86	-42	-48
4.66	-45	-51
9.58	-49	-55

If we now consider a mobile at MCL sending a RACH at maximum power, we can generate a table, which shows received RACH power at the BTS versus probability of occurrence.

% of measurements	900MHz RACH dBm	1800 MHz RACH dBm
0.03	-0	-9
0.1	-1	-10
0.53	-3	-12
1.0	-5	-14
1.43	-6	-15
2.86	-9	-18
4.66	-12	-21
9.58	-16	-25

If we take the 1% level then 99% of all full power RACH attempts by a mobile will fall below this level. We suggest that this is the level at which pico-BTS NER performance should be met. Thus, we need to maintain RACH error performance and < 10-3 BER at a power level of -5dBm at 900MHz and at -14dBm at 1800MHz.

R.13 timing and synchronisation

GSM is designed to operate in a highly dispersive macrocell environment with cell radius up to 35km (or twice that for extended cell) and delay spreads up to 16 microcells. The corresponding range and dispersion characteristics in a pico-cell environment are less than 500m and less than 150 nano seconds respectively.

To achieve the performance specified in GSM 05.05, in a highly dispersive macro environment, GSM must achieve two things. First, the timing of the MS transmissions to the BSS must be adjusted so that they do not fall outside the guard period of the allocated timeslot at the BSS (this prevents MS transmission causing interference in adjacent timeslots at the BSS). Second, the GSM system must deal with significant radio frequency energy arriving at radio receiver with delays up to 16 micro seconds.

In this section we examine possible relaxation to the timing and synchronization requirements for the pico-BTS. In the case of a pico-BTS with no dynamic timing advance process, we consider how the MS equalizer would cope with an error in the timing of the transmitted signal.

The table below summarizes the timing and synchronization requirements from GSM 05.10 v6.10.

	Value	05.10 reference
Synchronization between carriers	±1/4	5.3
BTS signaling tolerance	±1	5.6.1
BTS measurement error	±1/2	5.6.3
BTS measurement error <500kmph	±1/4	5.63
MS time base error	±1/2	6.2, 6.3
MS transmission tolerance	±1	6.4
Max picocell BTS-MS range	+1/4 (125m)	
Time slot guard period	8.25	

In the following sections we need a timing advance reference point for determining the timing advance error. For this purpose we define ideal timing alignment as that which would align the transmissions from the MS so they fall in the middle of the BTS time slot equally dividing the guard period.

R.13.1 Steady state timing advance error

In this section we examine the steady state accuracy of the standard timing advance process.

From the figures in the Section 13, it can be seen that the BTS has a tolerance to timing alignment errors. The MS timing advance can vary within this window without triggering the BTS to change the signaled timing advance. In the worst case, this timing advance tolerance window is equal to,

BTS timing tolerance = ±1 (BTS signaling tolerance) ±1/2 (BTS measurement error) ±1/4 (BTS measurement error <500kmph) = ±1.75 bits

R.13.2 Conventional BTS

First, consider the timing accuracy of the MS transmissions when commanded to go to a particular value of timing advance. From the figures in Section 13 we can estimate the worst case error as,

MS transmission timing accuracy = ±1/4 (synchronization between carriers) ±1/2 (MS time base error) ±1 (MS transmission tolerance) = ±1.75

Second, consider the BTS measurement error,

BTS measurement error = ±1/2 (BTS measurement error) ±1/4 (BTS measurement error <500kmph) = ±0.75.

Total error = ±1.75 ±0.75 = ±2.5

Error range = 5

The guard period between slots is 8.25 bits which leaves a margin of 3.25 bits on initial timing advance setting.

R.13.3 Pico-BTS

First, consider the timing accuracy of the MS transmissions when commanded to go to a particular value of timing advance. From the figures above we can estimate the worst case error as, MS transmission timing accuracy = ±1/4 (synchronization between carriers) ±1/2 (MS time base error) ±1 (MS transmission tolerance) = ±1.75.

Next, if we assume that a pico-BTS chooses not to implement dynamic timing advance. In this case we can ignore the BTS measurement error but we have to consider the maximum BTS – MS range,

pico-BTS – MS maximum range = 125m = +1/4 bits

Total error = ±1.75 -0 +1/4 = -1.75 – +2

Error range = 3.75

The guard period between slots is 8.25 bits which leaves a margin of 5 bits on timing advance setting.

R.13.3.1 Pico-BTS relaxation

Present mobile tests require that mobiles maintain performance with shifts in TA of 2 bits. It is suggested that the inter-carrier synchronization be reduced to 2bit periods.

If we relax the constraint on synchronization between carriers from ±1/4 to ±2 bits, the error becomes,

Total error = ±2 (synchronization between carriers) ±1/2 (MS time base error) ±1 (MS transmission tolerance) –0 +1/4 (range) = -3.5 – +3.75

Error range = 7.25

The guard period between slots is 8.25 bits which leaves a margin of 1 bit on timing advance setting.

Given this relaxation, in the worst case, the pico-BTS would have to maintain reference performance as specified in GSM 05.05 while subject to a time alignment error with respect to ideal timing alignment of -3.5 – +3.75 bits.

This suggests a requirement that the pico-BTS maintain reference performance specified in GSM 05.05 with a time alignment error referenced to ideal timing on the BTS receive timeslot of less than ±4 bits

R.13.3.2 MS impact of Pico-BTS relaxation

If the synchronization between carriers is relaxed from ±1/4 to ±2 bits, in the worst case, the MS would have to maintain performance as specified in GSM 05.05 with ±2 bits timing alignment with respect to ideal time alignment.

However, MS are designed to operate in a highly dispersive environment with significant energy at delays up to 16 micro seconds (5bits) and with a worse case static timing alignment error of ±1.75 bits (Section 13.1). This requires a search window of at least 8.5 bits. Consequentially, in the near zero dispersion picocell environment, the ±2 bits timing alignment would not be a problem.

Annex S:
CTS system scenarios

TDoc SMG2 WPB 12/99

Title: System scenario calculations for GSM-CTS

S.1 Introduction

SMG2 was asked to study system scenarios for GSM-CTS.

As for pico-BTS, CTS-FP will be operated in indoor environment, therefore indoor parameters used for pico-BTS system scenarios (see SMG2 WPB Tdoc 188/98) are applied in the CTS system scenarios.

Whatever CTS is used in licensed or license exempt band, the CTS frequency management will be under the control of the regulator and/or the operator on a time and geographical basis. Therefore, the CTS system scenarios have been computed with two objectives:

ensure that CTS transmission offers the same guarantee of non degrading GSM receivers, including those of non-CTS operators, as other GSM transmitters do

minimise the implementation cost of CTS-FP in order to allow re-use of existing GSM-MS hardware.

These scenarios give a theoretical evaluation of worst case situations. It should be kept in mind that CTS principles like Total Frequency Hopping (TFH) and Beacon channel will also contribute to increase the CTS spectrum efficiency.

This goal of this study is to specify the minimum and maximum transmit power for CTS, as well as the transmission (spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise, spurious emission) and reception (blocking, AM suppression, intermodulation) characteristics of the CTS-FP. Performance requirements are also given in section 4.

S.1.1 Parameter Set

S.1.1.1 Transmitter Parameter

Requirements from GSM 05.05:

	GSM900		DCS1800		
	GSM-MS	CTS-MS/FP	GSM-MS	GSM-MS	CTS-MS/FP
ax. TxPwr [dBm]	3		30		
xPwr [dBm]				<=24	
pectrum mask [dBc] 00kHz–1.8MHz / 30kHz bdw	-60		-60	-60	
pectrum mask [dBc] .8MHz–3MHz / 100kHz bdw	-63		-60	-59	
pectrum mask [dBc] MHz–6MHz / 100kHz bdw	-65		-65	-59	
pectrum mask [dBc] 6MHz / 100kHz bdw	-71		-73	-67	

Preliminary assumptions for CTS : same characteristics as for a GSM-MS

	GSM900		DCS1800		
	GSM-MS	CTS-MS/FP	GSM-MS	GSM-MS	CTS-MS/FP
ax. TxPwr [dBm]					
pectrum mask [dBc] 00kHz–1.8MHz / 30kHz bdw		-60			-60
pectrum mask [dBc] .8MHz–3MHz / 100kHz bdw		-63			-60
pectrum mask [dBc] MHz–6MHz / 100kHz bdw		-65			-65
pectrum mask [dBc] 6MHz / 100kHz bdw		-71			-73

S.1.1.2 Receiver Parameter

Requirements from GSM 05.05:

	GSM900		DCS1800	
	GSM-MS	CTS-MS/FP	GSM-MS	CTS-MS/FP
reference sensitivity [dBm]	102		-102	
blocking [dBm], 600kHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 1.6MHz	-43		-43	
blocking [dBm], 1.6MHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 3MHz	-33		-33	
blocking [dBm], $|f-f_0|$ >= 3MHz	-23		-26	
C/I [dB]	9		9	

Preliminary assumptions for CTS : same characteristics as for a GSM-MS

	GSM900		DCS1800	
	GSM-MS	CTS-MS/FP	GSM-MS	CTS-MS/FP
reference sensitivity [dBm]		-102		-102
blocking [dBm], 600kHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 1.6MHz		-43		-43
blocking [dBm], 1.6MHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 3MHz		-33		-33
blocking [dBm], $|f-f_0|$ >= 3MHz		-23		-26
C/I [dB]		9		9

S.1.1.3 Minimum coupling loss values

MCL between CTS-FP and MS: 34.5dB GSM900

MCL between CTS-FP and MS: 40dB DCS1800

These values include 3dB body loss.

S.1.1.4 Path loss models

Pathloss indoor propagation: L = 31.5 + 20lg(d) + 0.9d [dB] GSM 900

L = 37.5 + 20lg(d) + 0.9d [dB] DCS1800

For GSM-MSs and CTS-MSs 3dB body loss is added to the pathloss in the calculations.

S.1.1.5 Margins

Multiple interference margin (MIM) 4 interfering carriers	- 6 dB
Multiple interference margin (MIM) >4 interfering carriers	- 10 dB
MS margin (MSM) for 5% affected mobiles	10 dB
MS margin (MSM) for 10% affected mobiles	15 dB

S.2 Transmitter characteristics

S.2.1 Maximum CTS-FP Transmit Power limited by MS blocking

An upper limit for the maximum transmit power of the CTS-FP $TxPwr_{max}$ is given, according to the calculations in SMG2 Tdoc 144/92 for indoor cells, by the blocking of an uncoordinated MS for > 3 MHz frequency separation (compare SMG2 WPB Tdoc 188/98). This maximum $TxPwr_{max}$ is

$TxPwr_{max}$ = MS blocking level + MCL + MSM - MIM.

For GSM 900:

Taking into account that the CTS-FP is a one-carrier BS and using 10dB MSM the maximum transmit power is

$TxPwr_{max}$ [dBm] = -23 + 34.5 + 10 = **+21.5dBm**. GSM 900

Assuming a multiple interferer condition with four CTS-FPs located around an uncoordinated GSM-MS at minimum loss condition (6dB MIM)

TxPwr$_{max}$ [dBm] = -23 + 34.5 + 10 – 6 = **+15.5dBm**. GSM 900

Considering the measurement based statistics for indoor cells of SMG2 Tdoc 32/97 which tolerates 10% affected mobiles a MSM of 15dB has to be used instead of 10 dB

TxPwr$_{max}$ [dBm] = -23 + 34.5 + 15 – 6 = **+20.5dBm**. GSM 900

For DCS1800:

Taking into account the CTS-FP as a one-carrier BS and 10dB MSM the maximum transmit power is

TxPwr$_{max}$ [dBm] = -26 + 40 + 10 = **+24dBm**. DCS1800

Assuming a multiple interferer condition with four CTS-FPs located around an uncoordinated GSM-MS at minimum loss condition (6dB MIM)

TxPwr$_{max}$ [dBm] = -26 + 40 + 10 – 6 = **+18dBm**. DCS1800

Considering the measurement based statistics for indoor cells of SMG2 Tdoc 32/97 which tolerates 10% affected mobiles a MSM of 15dB has to be used instead of 10 dB

TxPwr$_{max}$ [dBm] = -26 + 40 + 15 – 6 = **+23dBm**. DCS1800

The calculated maximum transmit power levels are in the range from +15dBm to +20dBm for GSM900 and from +18dBm to +24dBm for DCS1800. A further requirement can be deduced from spectrum due to modulation and wideband noise which will be considered below.

S.2.2 Maximum CTS-FP Transmit Power limited by Spectrum due to Modulation and WBN

Again the TxPwr$_{max}$ limit will be given by the requirement not to degrade the receiver performance of an uncoordinated MS. For small cell environments (SMG2 Tdoc 63/92) the maximum allowed wideband noise in a 100kHz measurement bandwidth for >= 1.8MHz frequency separation is

Wideband noise = MS ref. sens. - C/N + MCL - MIM + MSM + conv. fac. (200->100kHz).

For GSM900:

Considering the MSM from SMG2 Tdoc 32/97 and the CTS-FP as single carrier BS:

Max. wideband noise [dBm] = -102 - 9 + 34.5 - 0 + 15 – 3 = **-64.5dBm** GSM900

For a multiple interferer situation with 4 CTS-FPs in close proximity:

Max. wideband noise [dBm] = -102 - 9 + 34.5 - 6 + 15 – 3 = **-70.5dBm** GSM900

For DCS1800:

Considering the MSM from SMG2 Tdoc 32/97 and the CTS-FP as single carrier BS:

Max wideband noise [dBm] = -102 - 9 + 40 - 0 + 15 – 3 = **-59dBm** DCS1800

For a multiple interferer situation with 4 CTS-FPs in close proximity:

Max. wideband noise [dBm] = -102 - 9 + 40 - 6 + 15 – 3 = **-65dBm** DCS1800

For a multiple interferer condition four active CTS-FPs using the same timeslot as an interfered MS have to be located in close proximity to the MS. This situation is very unlikely taking into account that all four CTS-FPs are not synchronised and must all affect the one distinct timeslot used by the MS. Therefore, this situation is not considered furthermore.

From the maximum allowed wideband noise the maximum transmit power of the CTS-FP can be calculated using the spectrum mask values taken as an assumption for the CTS-FP:

TxPwr_{max} [dBm] = max. wideband noise – Spectrum due to modulation with respect to 30kHz bandwidth on carrier + conv. fac. (200->30kHz).

For frequency separation >= 1.8MHz and < 3MHz:

TxPwr_{max} [dBm] = -64.5 + 63 + 8 = **+6.5dBm** GSM900

TxPwr_{max} [dBm] = -59 + 59 + 8 = **+8dBm** DCS1800

For frequency separation >= 3MHz and < 6MHz:

TxPwr_{max} [dBm] = -64.5 + 65 + 8 = **+8.5dBm** GSM900

TxPwr_{max} [dBm] = -59 + 59 + 8 = **+8dBm** DCS1800

For frequency separation > 6MHz:

TxPwr_{max} [dBm] = -64.5 + 71 + 8 = **+14.5dBm** GSM900

TxPwr_{max} [dBm] = -59 + 67 + 8 = **+16dBm** DCS1800

It has to be noted that for secure coexistence of CTS and GSM no compromise has been made here for higher maximum transmit power or lower spectrum mask requirements as for example for the pico-BTS case in SMG2 Tdoc 188/98.

Overview over all values:

	>=1.8MHz <3MHz	>=3MHz <6MHz	>6MHz
$TxPwr_{max}$ GSM 900	+6.5dBm	+8.5dBm	+14.5dBm
$TxPwr_{max}$ DCS1800	+8dBm	+8dBm	+16dBm

S.2.3 Specification of max. CTS-FP Transmit Power and CTS-FP Spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise

S.2.3.1 Maximum CTS-FP transmit power

In chapter 2.1 and 2.2 requirements for the maximum transmit power of the CTS-FP for GSM 900 and DCS1800 are given. This results for GSM900 and DCS1800 are in the range from $TxPwr_{max}$ = +6.5dBm up to +21.5dBm and from $TxPwr_{max}$ = +8dBm up to +24dBm, respectively. Of course, the choice of the $TxPwr_{max}$ has to be adapted more close to the lower limit of that range. A more clear view can be obtained by a detailed analysis of the system scenarios under the aspect of CTS interfering GSM-BTS and GSM-MS in single interferer scenarios.

Regarding the two scenarios, blocking and spectrum due to modulation and wideband noise, this analysis shows that for up to +13dBm $TxPwr_{max}$ for GSM900 and up to +15.5dBm $TxPwr_{max}$ for DCS1800 of CTS-FP and CTS-MS, the available pathloss is only in one scenario lower than the required pathloss. This case is a GSM-MS located indoors close to a CTS-FP and being interfered by the spectrum due to modulation and wideband noise of the CTS-FP. For that case the required pathloss for 1.8MHz frequency separation is:

$$\textbf{min PL}_{\text{CTS-FP/GSM-MS}} = \textbf{TxPwr}_{\text{max CTS-FP}} + \textbf{conv. fac. (200->30kHz)} - \textbf{ref. sens}_{\text{GSM-MS}} + \textbf{C/I} - \textbf{MSM} - \textbf{body loss} - \textbf{spectrum mask}_{\text{CTS-FP (dBc/100kHz)}} + \textbf{conv. fac. (100->200kHz).}$$

For GSM 900:

$$\textbf{min PL}\ [\text{dB}] = TxPwr_{\text{max CTS-FP}} - 8 + 102 + 9 - 15 - 3 - 63 + 3 = \textbf{TxPwr}_{\text{max CTS-FP}} + 25$$

The following table shows the comparison of available and required pathloss (including body loss) between CTS-FP and GSM-MS. The GSM-MS operates in a coverage limited operation receiving at sensitivity level:

$TxPwr_{max}$ [dBm]	5	9	11	13
required coupling loss [dB]	33	37	39	41
available coupling loss [dB]	34.5	34.5	34.5	34.5

In order to best fulfil the coupling loss requirements, it is proposed to tighten the spectrum mask of the CTS-FP by 5 dB :

proposed **spectrum mask** $_{\textbf{CTS-FP (dBc/100kHz)}}$ at 1.8 MHz frequency separation **: - 68 dBc**GSM900

Then, the comparison of available and required pathloss (including body loss) between CTS-FP and GSM-MS (with the GSM-MS operating in a coverage limited operation receiving at sensitivity level) becomes :

$TxPwr_{max}$ [dBm]	5	9	11	13
required coupling loss [dB]	30	32	34	36
available coupling loss [dB]	34.5	34.5	34.5	34.5

Regarding these values, we propose a maximum CTS-FP transmit power $TxPwr_{max}$ of +11dBm for GSM900.

For DCS1800:

$$\textbf{min PL} \text{ [dB]} = TxPwr_{max\ CTS\text{-}FP} - 8 + 102 + 9 - 15 - 3 - 59 + 3 = \mathbf{TxPwr_{max\ CTS\text{-}FP}} + 29$$

The following table which shows again the comparison of available and required pathloss (including body loss) between CTS-FP and GSM-MS is made for the GSM-MS being in a coverage limited operation and receiving at sensitivity level:

$TxPwr_{max}$ [dBm]	8	12	14	16
required coupling loss [dB]	40	44	46	48
available coupling loss [dB]	40	40	40	40

Again here, in order to best fulfil the coupling loss requirements, it is proposed to tighten the spectrum mask of the CTS-FP by 4 dB :

proposed **spectrum mask** $_{\text{CTS-FP (dBc/100kHz)}}$ at 1.8 MHz frequency separation **: - 63 dBc** DCS1800

Then, the comparison of available and required pathloss (including body loss) between CTS-FP and GSM-MS (with the GSM-MS operating in a coverage limited operation receiving at sensitivity level) becomes :

$TxPwr_{max}$ [dBm]	8	12	14	16
required coupling loss [dB]	36	40	42	44
available coupling loss [dB]	40	40	40	40

Regarding these values, we propose a **maximum CTS-FP transmit power $TxPwr_{max}$ of +12dBm for DCS1800**.

S.2.3.2 Spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise

In the previous section, a tightening of the spectrum mask for the CTS-FP is proposed for 1.8 MHz frequency separation. In order to simplify the specification of the spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise, it is proposed to consider only two frequency bands above 1.8 MHz : 1.8 - 6MHz and > 6 MHz. The resulting CTS-FP spectrum mask is :

	GSM900	DCS1800
pectrum mask [dBc] .8MHz–6MHz / 100kHz bdw	-68	-63
pectrum mask [dBc] 6MHz / 100kHz bdw	-71	-67

Below 1.8 MHz frequency separation, the existing MS spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise characteristics shall be used for the CTS-FP specification.

Exception levels :

Exceptions in the spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise requirements are specified today in section 4.2.1 iii), iv) and v) of GSM 05.05. It has been calculated in section 2.2 the maximum allowed wide band noise in a 100kHz measurement bandwidth ; the results are :

Max. wide band noise [dBm] in a 100kHz measurement bandwidth = **-64.5 dBm** GSM900

Max. wide band noise [dBm] in a 100kHz measurement bandwidth = **-59 dBm** DCS1800

These values have been used to calculate the maximum CTS-FP transmit power and the CTS-FP spectrum mask, therefore it is proposed to use them as exception levels for the spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise requirements for frequency offsets above 1.8MHz : no further requirement below **-64 dBm (GSM900)** or **-59 dBm (DCS1800)** is necessary.

For frequency offsets below 1.8MHz, the maximum allowed wide band noise in a *30kHz* measurement bandwidth, derived from the maximum allowed wide band noise in a *100kHz* measurement bandwidth can be calculated :

Max. wide band noise [dBm] in a 30kHz measurement bandwidth
= Max. wbn [dBm] in a 100kHz measurement bw + conv. fac. (100->30kHz) = -64 - 5
= **-69 dBm** GSM900

Max. wide band noise [dBm] in a 30kHz measurement bandwidth
= Max. wbn [dBm] in a 100kHz measurement bw + conv. fac. (100->30kHz) = -59 - 5
= **-64 dBm** DCS1800

It is proposed to use these values as exception levels for the spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise requirements for frequency offset below 1.8MHz : no further requirement below **-69 dBm (GSM900)** or **-64 dBm (DCS1800)** is necessary.

S.2.4 Balanced link for zero interference scenario (Interferer at MCL scenario)

The maximum pathloss is given by

$$\textbf{max PL} = \textbf{TxPwr}_{\textbf{max CTS-FP}} - \textbf{body loss} - \textbf{ref. sens.}_{\textbf{CTS-MS}}$$

max PL [dB] = 11 – 3 + 102 = **110dB** GSM900

max PL [dB] = 12 – 3 + 102 = **111dB** DCS1800

In SMG2 Tdoc 188/98 the receiver sensitivity for pico-BTSs is deduced under the boundary condition that the cell size will stay constant under all conditions. However, this is not so important in a CTS environment. Here we attach more importance to operate at a minimum transmit power. Therefore, the receiver sensitivity of the CTS-FP should be the same as for the CTS-MS : –102dBm. In that case, for balanced link operation, the $\text{TxPwr}_{\text{max}}$ of the CTS-MS is the same as for the CTS-FP:

$$\textbf{TxPwr}_{\textbf{max CTS-MS}} = \textbf{ref. sens.}_{\textbf{CTS-FP}} + \textbf{body loss} + \textbf{max PL}$$

$\mathbf{TxPwr_{max\ CTS\text{-}MS}} = -102 + 3 + 110 = \mathbf{11dBm}$ GSM900

$\mathbf{TxPwr_{max\ CTS\text{-}MS}} = -102 + 3 + 111 = \mathbf{12dBm}$ DCS1800

Following the outcome of the discussion in SMG2 WPB meeting in Milano, 2nd – 6th November 1998, the minimum transmit power $TxPwr_{min}$ of the CTS-FP shall be reduced in order to decrease further interference form CTS on GSM (see section 2.6). However, the minimum transmit power of the CTS-MS shall be kept at +5dBm for GSM900 and 0dBm for DCS1800 for practical reasons concerning implementation.

This will lead to the fact that the link will be balanced for CTS-FP transmit power levels above +5dBm for GSM900 and 0dBm for DCS1800. For CTS-FP transmit power levels below +5dBm for GSM900 and 0dBm for DCS1800 it is acceptable that the link will not be balanced anymore in favour of interference reduction.

S.2.5 Range of Coverage for CTS:

Using the indoor pathloss law (see 1.1.4) the range of coverage (maximum distance between CTS-FP and CTS-MS d_{max}) can be calculated. The pathloss is given by

$PL\ [dB] = 31.5 + 20\log[d] + 0.9d$ GSM900

and

$PL\ [dB] = 37.5 + 20\log[d] + 0.9d.$ DCS1800

Two cases have to be distinguished, the zero interference and the MCL scenario.

For GSM900:
Zero interference scenario:

$\mathbf{max\ PL}\ [dB] = 11 – 3 + 102 = \mathbf{110dB}$

$\mathbf{=> d_{max} = 49.5m}$

Interferer at MCL scenario:

The minimum wanted signal level Rlev for the CTS-FP is given by the spectrum due to modulation and wideband noise of an uncoordinated GSM-MS (interferer). The receive level Rlev for 1.8MHz frequency separation is:

$$\mathbf{Rlev = TxPwr_{GSM\text{-}MS} + conv.\ fac.\ (200\text{->}30kHz) - spectrum\ mask_{GSM\text{-}MS} + conv.\ fac.\ (100\text{->}200kHz) – MCL + C/I}$$

$\mathbf{Rlev}\ [dBm] = 33 – 8 – 63 + 3 – 34.5 + 9 = \mathbf{–60.5dBm}$

The available pathloss for the CTS in that case and the corresponding maximum distance between CTS-FP and CTS-MS are:

max PL = TxPwr – Rlev – 3dB body loss

max PL [dB] = 11 + 60.5 – 3 = **68.5dB**

=> d_{max} **= 14.9m**

For DCS1800:

Zero interference scenario:

max PL [dB] = 12 – 3 + 102 = **111dB**

=> d_{max} **= 45m**

Interferer at MCL scenario:

Again, the minimum wanted signal level Rlev for the CTS-FP is given by the spectrum due to modulation and wideband noise of an uncoordinated GSM-MS (interferer). The receive level Rlev for 1.8MHz frequency separation is:

Rlev = $TxPwr_{GSM-MS}$ **+ conv. fac. (200->30kHz) - spectrum** $mask_{GSM-MS}$
conv. fac. (100->200kHz) – MCL + C/I

Rlev [dBm] = 30 – 8 – 60 + 3 – 40.5 + 9 = **–66.5dBm**

The available pathloss for the CTS in that case and the corresponding maximum distance between CTS-FP and CTS-MS are:

max PL = TxPwr – Rlev – 3dB body loss

max PL [dB] = 12 + 66.5 – 3 = **75.5dB**

=> d_{max} **= 15.6m**

For both frequency bands, GSM900 and DCS1800, this range is reasonable for CTS applications, but **it shows also clearly that the maximum transmit power** $TxPwr_{max}$ **specified above shall not be below +11dBm for GSM900 and +12dBm for DCS1800**.

S.2.6 Minimum CTS-FP transmit power

As already mentioned above, the outcome of the discussion in SMG2 WPB meeting in Milano, 2nd - 6th November 1998, is that the minimum transmit power of the CTS-FP shall be reduced in order to decrease further interference from

CTS on GSM. The minimum transmit power of the CTS-MS shall be kept at +5dBm for GSM900 and 0dBm for DCS1800 to ease the implementation of CTS in the CTS-MS (no hardware changes).

The CTS-FP shall have a certain transmit power range in order to use an efficient power control on the downlink. However, an acceptable compromise has to be found between a low minimum transmit power and the implementation cost in the CTS-FP.

The CTS-FP is a new GSM component which is likely to re-use existing technologies which have shown effectiveness in the past and present. In particular technologies used for the MS have some similarities to those needed for the CTS-FP and CTS-MS. Among these technologies are the components for the RF front end of the terminal, i.e. power amplification, power detection (loop back control), etc... which will be directly impacted by lower transmit power levels.

A reasonable evolution of those components, necessary to obtain lower transmit power levels, can be achieved with the following proposal for the power control range:

CTS-FP power control range = 20 dB.

From that value and from the maximum transmit power levels $TxPwr_{max\ CTS\text{-}FP}$ defined in chapter 2.3.1 it follows for the minimum CTS-FP transmit power level $TxPwr_{min}$:

$TxPwr_{min\ CTS\text{-}FP}$ = - 9 dBm for GSM900

and

$TxPwr_{min\ CTS\text{-}FP}$ = - 8dBm for DCS1800.

S.2.7 Power Level Distribution

For the CTS-FP power control range defined above, it can be roughly estimated which percentage of calls will be operated with the minimum transmit power under zero interference condition. We assume that the CTS-MSs will be evenly distributed over the coverage range. This is really a worst case with respect to the transmit power because there will be clearly a maximum in the distances distribution of the CTS-MS more closer to the CTS-FP. However it gives a first impression about power level distribution.

For the calculations we use the power control range of 20dB proposed in chapter 2.6. Furthermore it is assumed that power control optimises the transmit power to achieve a receive level of –85dBm at the CTS-MS receiver.

GSM900:

For the assumed power control range and using the assumed spatial distribution of CTS-MSs within the coverage range as well as the pathloss law defined in 1.1.4, the CTS-FP transmit power level is in

28% of the calls at the minimum transmit power level of $\mathbf{TxPwr_{min\ CTS\text{-}FP} = –9dBm}$.

DCS1800:

The minimum transmit power level for DCS1800 was defined to be –8dBm and the maximum transmit power level +12dBm. For these data the CTS-FP transmit power is in

24% of the calls at the minimum transmit power level of $\mathbf{TxPwr_{min\ CTS\text{-}FP} = –8dBm}$.

Though this is only a very rough estimation it shows clearly that power control can reduce interference for a significant percentage of calls. A more realistic distances distribution will increase these figures while consideration of interference limited situations will cause a decrease.

Nevertheless, the power control range of 20dB for the CTS-FP seems to be reasonable with respect to implementation and interference reduction.

S.2.8 Spurious Emission

The spurious transmission in the relevant transmit band of the CTS-FP should remain at –36dBm measured in 30kHz bandwidth for an offset between 1.8MHz and 6MHz and in 100kHz bandwidth for an offset larger than 6MHz.

Within the receive band the maximum allowed power level $Txlev_{max}$ is given by the receiver sensitivity and the coupling loss. Two cases have been considered, the reception by an uncoordinated CTS-FP receiver and by an uncoordinated pico-BTS. For the coupling loss a minimum distance of 1m with one wall in-between (7dB loss) or, which is equivalent for GSM900 and DCS1800, a distance of 2m without wall is assumed. The corresponding losses are 39.4dB for GSM900 and 45.4dB for DCS1800 (indoor path loss model from chapter 1.1.4).

Due to the fact that the CTS-PF is a one carrier base station no multiple interferer margin was considered.

$$\mathbf{Txlev_{max} = ref.sens. – C/I + coupling\ loss + conv.\ fac.\ (200\text{->}100kHz)}$$

1) Spurious emission received by an uncoordinated CTS-FP:

$\mathbf{Txlev_{max}}$ [dBm] = -102 – 9 + 39.4 - 3 = -74.6dBm GSM900

$\mathbf{Txlev_{max}}$ [dBm] = -102 – 9 + 45.4 - 3 = -68.6dBm DCS1800

2) Spurious emission received by an uncoordinated pico-BTS:

This case is less stringent because of the higher receiver sensitivity level of the pico-BTS compared to a CTS-FP:

Txlev$_{\mathbf{max}}$ [dBm] = -88 – 9 + 39.4 - 3 = -60.6dBm GSM900

Txlev$_{\mathbf{max}}$ [dBm] = -95 – 9 + 45.4 - 3 = -61.6dBm DCS1800

In both cases the requirements are less stringent than for the MS->MS case which allows manufacturer a low cost re-use of hardware components.

We propose the maximum allowed power level Txlev$_{max}$ in the receive band to be **–75dBm for GSM900** and **–69dBm for DCS1800**.

S.3 Receiver characteristics

S.3.1 Blocking

Following SMG2 Tdoc 188/98 the dynamic range of the receiver is given by the maximum power received from a MS at MCL (upper level) and by the minimum signal level to be received from a MS to meet the reference sensitivity requirement (lower level) ; in this case, the lower level is defined by the wideband noise of an uncoordinated MS:

dynamic range = max. power from uncoord. MS – wanted CTS-FP receive level during blocking
= (TxPwr$_{\mathbf{GSM\text{-}MS}}$ **– MCL) – (MS wideband noise in 200kHz – MCL + C/I)**

GSM900:

dynamic range [dB] = (33 – 34) – (33 + conv.fac. (200->30kHz) – spectrum mask +
conv. fac. (30->200kHz) – 34 + 9)

DCS1800:

dynamic range [dB] = (30 – 40) – (30 + conv. fac. (200->30kHz) – spectrum mask +
conv. fac. (30->200kHz) – 40 + 9)

Dynamic range	GSM900	DCS1800
600kHz <= $\|f\text{-}f_0\|$ < 800kHz	1	51

800kHz <= $\lvert f-f_0 \rvert$ < 1.6MHz	51	51
1.6MHz <= $\lvert f-f_0 \rvert$ < 3MHz	59	61
$\lvert f-f_0 \rvert$ >= 3MHz	67	69

According to SMG2 Tdoc 188/98 this dynamic range can be transformed into GSM 05.05 blocking levels for a wanted signal 3dB above the receiver reference sensitivity:

CTS-FP blocking level = reference sensitivity + 3dB + dynamic range

For GSM900:

600kHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 800kHz: **CTS-FP blocking level** [dBm] **=** -102 + 3 + 51 = **-48dBm**

800kHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 1.6MHz: **CTS-FP blocking level** [dBm] **=** -102 + 3 + 51 = **-48dBm**

1.6MHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 3MHz: **CTS-FP blocking level** [dBm] **=** -102 + 3 + 59 = **-40dBm**

$|f-f_0|$ >= 3MHz: **CTS-FP blocking level** [dBm] **=** -102 + 3 + 67 = **-32dBm**

For DCS1800:

600kHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 800kHz: **CTS-FP blocking level** [dBm] **=** -102 + 3 + 51 = **-48dBm**

800kHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 1.6MHz: **CTS-FP blocking level** [dBm] **=** -102 + 3 + 51 = **-48dBm**

1.6MHz <= $|f-f_0|$ < 3MHz: **CTS-FP blocking level** [dBm] **=** -102 + 3 + 61 = **-38dBm**

$|f-f_0|$ >= 3MHz: **CTS-FP blocking level** [dBm] **=** -102 + 3 + 69 = **-30dBm**

For GSM900 and DCS1800 these values are between 2dB and 9dB less stringent than the MS blocking levels. However, we propose not to loosen the blocking requirement of the CTS-FP in order to keep a similar hardware for the CTS-FP and CTS-MS; **the assumptions for blocking in 1.1.2 are therefore justified**.

S.3.2 AM suppression

GSM-CTS is basically very similar to a pico BTS environment. In order to allow a direct comparison with pico BTS scenarios, this chapter is made analog to the argumentation in SMG2 WBP Tdoc 188/98. There it is shown that, especially for the for AM suppression test scenarios, precautions have to be made in order to prevent other interference mechanisms to falsify the measurement results. For the test scenarios no MSM margin must be applied. First of all these interference mechanisms will be investigated.

S.3.2.1 Spectrum due to modulation

a) uncoordinated MS -> CTS-FP

The maximum allowed noise level at the interferer site is

$\mathrm{Rlev}_{\text{max noise at FP}}$ = CTS-FP ref. sensitivity – C/I + MCL

This leads to

$\mathrm{Rlev}_{\text{max noise at FP}}$[dB] = -102 – 9 + 34.5 = **-76.5dBm** GSM900
and
$\mathrm{Rlev}_{\text{max noise at FP}}$[dB] = -102 – 9 + 40 = **-71dBm** DCS1800

The maximum generated noise due to modulation for >6MHz frequency offset is

**$\mathrm{MS}_{\text{noise}}$ = $\mathrm{TxPwr}_{\text{max MS}}$ + conv. factor (peak -> 30kHz) –
spectrum mask + conv. factor (100kHz -> 200kHz)**

For an interfering CTS-MS:

$\text{CTS-MS}_{\text{noise}}$[dBm] = 11 –8 –71 +3 = **-65dBm** GSM900

$\text{CTS-MS}_{\text{noise}}$[dBm] = 12 –8 –67 +3 = **-60dBm** DCS1800

For an interfering GSM-MS the maximum noise is larger due to the higher transmit power:

$\text{GSM-MS}_{\text{noise}}$[dBm] = 33 –8 –71 +3 = **-43dBm** GSM900

$\text{GSM -MS}_{\text{noise}}$[dBm] = 30 –8 –73 +3 = **-48dBm** DCS1800

The maximum noise requirement is missed by 11.5dB for an interfering CTS-MS, by 33.5dB for an interfering GSM900 GSM-MS and by 23dB for an interfering DCS1800 GSM-MS.

b) uncoordinated BTS/CTS-FP -> CTS-MS

The maximum allowed noise level at the interferer site is

$\mathrm{Rlev}_{\text{max noise at MS}}$ = CTS-MS ref. sensitivity – C/I + MCL

This leads due to equivalent reference sensitivities to the same figures as in case a):

$\mathrm{Rlev}_{\text{max noise at MS}}$[dB] = -102 – 9 + 34.5 = **-76.5dBm** GSM900
and
$\mathrm{Rlev}_{\text{max noise at MS}}$[dB] = -102 – 9 + 40 = **-71dBm** DCS1800

The maximum noise due to modulation for >6MHz frequency offset is

**$\mathrm{BTS}_{\text{noise}}$ = $\mathrm{TxPwr}_{\text{max BTS}}$ + conv. factor (peak -> 30kHz) –
spectrum mask + conv. factor (100kHz -> 200kHz)**

For an interfering CTS-FP the maximum noise is

$\text{CTS-FP}_{\text{noise}}$[dBm] = 11 –8 –71 +3 = **-65dBm** GSM900

$\text{CTS-FP}_{\text{noise}}$[dBm] = 12 –8 –67 +3 = **-60dBm** DCS1800

For an interfering pico-BTSa higher transmit power and a higher sideband modulation suppression applies:

pico BTS$_{noise}$[dBm] = 20 –8 –80 +3 = **-65dBm** GSM900

pico BTS$_{noise}$ [dBm] = 23 –8 –80 +3 = **-62dBm** DCS1800

The maximum noise requirement is missed by 11.5dB for GSM 900 and by 11dB for DCS1800.

S.3.2.2 Switching transients

a) uncoordinated MS -> CTS-FP

The maximum allowed peak level at the interferer site is

Plev$_{max\ at\ FP}$ **= CTS-FP ref. sensitivity – C/I + MCL + transient margin**

This leads to

Plev$_{max\ at\ FP}$[dB] = -102 – 9 + 34.5 +20 = **-56.5dBm** GSM900
and
Plev$_{max\ at\ FP}$[dB] = -102 – 9 + 40 + 20 = **-51dBm** DCS1800

The maximum generated power level for >1.8MHZ frequency offset according to GSM 05.05 is

MS$_{switching\ transients}$ **= -36dBm** GSM900/DCS1800

The requirement is therefore missed by 20.5dB for GSM900 and by 15dB for DCS1800.

b) uncoordinated BTS/CTS-FP -> CTS-MS

The maximum allowed peak level at the interferer site is

Plev$_{max\ at\ MS}$ **= CTS-MS ref. sensitivity – C/I + MCL + transient margin**

This leads to

Plev$_{max\ at\ MS}$[dB] = -102 – 9 + 34.5 +20 = **-56.5dBm** GSM900
and
Plev$_{max\ at\ MS}$[dB] = -102 – 9 + 40 + 20 = **-51dBm** DCS1800

The maximum generated power level for a CTS-FP and a pico-BTS and >1.8MHZ frequency offset according to GSM 05.05:

CTS-FP$_{switching\ transients}$ **= -36dBm** GSM900/DCS1800

Due to the same reference sensitivities and the same requirement for the maximum generated power level from GSM05.05 the figures are the same as for case a). Therefore, the requirement is also missed by 20.5dB for GSM900 and by 15dB for DCS1800.

S.3.2.3 Blocking

a) uncoordinated MS -> CTS-FP

The maximum generated signal power level at the CTS-FP receiver site is:

$$\mathbf{Plev_{max\ at\ FP} = TxPwr_{MS} - MCL}$$

For a CTS-MS:

$\mathbf{Plev_{max\ at\ FP}}$[dBm] = 11 –34.5 = **-23.5dBm** GSM900

$\mathbf{Plev_{max\ at\ FP}}$[dBm] = 12 –40 = **-28dBm** DCS1800

The blocking requirements for the CTS-FP according to chapter 3.1 are –23dBm for GSM900 and –26dBm for DCS1800. These requirements are fulfilled.

For a GSM-MS a higher transmit power applies:

$\mathbf{Plev_{max\ at\ FP}}$[dBm] = 33 –34.5 = **-1.5dBm** GSM900

$\mathbf{Plev_{max\ at\ FP}}$[dBm] = 30 –40 = **-10dBm** DCS1800

Here the blocking requirement is missed by 22dB for GSM900 and 18dB for DCS1800.

b) uncoordinated BTS/CTS-FP -> CTS-MS

The maximum generated signal power level at the CTS-MS receiver site is:

$$\mathbf{Plev_{max\ at\ MS} = TxPwr_{BTS/FP} - MCL}$$

For a CTS-FP:

$\mathbf{Plev_{max\ at\ MS}}$[dBm] = 11 –34.5 = **-23.5dBm** GSM900

$\mathbf{Plev_{max\ at\ MS}}$[dBm] = 12 –40 = **-28dBm** DCS1800

The blocking requirements for the CTS-MS according to GSM05.05 are –23dBm for GSM900 and –26dBm for DCS1800. These requirements are fulfilled.

For a pico BTS:

$\mathbf{Plev}_{\mathbf{max\ at\ MS}}[\mathrm{dBm}] = 20 - 34.5 = \mathbf{-14.5dBm}$ GSM900

$\mathbf{Plev}_{\mathbf{max\ at\ MS}}[\mathrm{dBm}] = 23 - 40 = \mathbf{-17dBm}$ DCS1800

In this case the blocking requirement is missed by 8.5dB for GSM900 and 9dB for DCS1800.

S.3.2.4 Specification of AM Suppression

The scenarios of chapter 3.2.1 to 3.2.3 show that, based on GSM05.05 specifications, interference from these scenarios will limit the receiver performance. This will also give an indication for the AM suppression test condition. For that we have to distinguish two cases concerning CTS and GSM interferers separately.

Concerning interference from CTS-MS or CTS-FP transmitters the largest deviation from the requirements in the scenarios discussed above comes from switching transients. The maximum failure from the requirement is 20.5dB for GSM900 and 15dB for DCS1800, same for uplink and downlink. These figures are essentially the same as for the pico BTS scenarios, see for comparison SMG2 WPB Tdoc 188/98.

Following the logic from that paper, the signal level for the AM suppression test has to be lowered by the maximum deviation outlined above in order to allow proper testing. From that the maximum interferer power levels for the AM suppression test are

$$\mathbf{PL}_{\mathbf{AM\ suppression\ test}} = \mathbf{TxPwr}_{\mathbf{max}} - \mathbf{MCL} - \mathbf{deviation}$$

Therefore

$\mathbf{PL}_{\mathbf{AM\ suppression\ test}}[\mathrm{dBm}] = 11 - 34.5 - 20.5 = \mathbf{-44dBm}$ GSM900

and

$\mathbf{PL}_{\mathbf{AM\ suppression\ test}}[\mathrm{dBm}] = 12 - 40 - 15 = \mathbf{-43dBm}$ DCS1800

Concerning interference from a GSM-MS, the largest deviation comes from the spectrum mask. The maximum failure is 33.5dB for GSM900 and 23dB for DCS1800. The maximum interferer power levels for the AM suppression test for this case are

$\mathbf{PL}_{\mathbf{AM\ suppression\ test}}[\mathrm{dBm}] = 33 - 34.5 - 33.5 = \mathbf{-35dBm}$ GSM900

and

$\mathbf{PL}_{\mathbf{AM\ suppression\ test}}[\mathrm{dBm}] = 30 - 40 - 23 = \mathbf{-33dBm}$ DCS1800

All these values are less stringent than the actual GSM05.05 specification for the AM suppression of a GSM-MS (which is –31dBm for both, GSM900 and DCS1800) and of a pico-BTS (which is -21dBm in GSM900 and -26dBm in DCS1800). Due to the fact, that the CTS-FP shall re-use the existing MS hardware as far as possible, we propose to take the GSM05.05 AM suppression specification of –31 dBm for the CTS-FP.

S.3.3 Intermodulation

S.3.3.1 uncoordinated CTS-MSs -> GSM-BTS:

Two cases will be considered here concerning CTS to GSM interactions. In the first one, the transmission of two CTS-MSs will cause intermodulation products in a GSM BTS receiver located in close proximity to the CTS-MSs. The most critical case is that of a pico-BTS because distances to the CTS-MSs down to 1 meter have to be considered here. Both CTS-MSs are uncoordinated to the GSM-BTS. This corresponds to scenario 4 of GSM 05.50 Annex A, Fig. 3.2 bottom.

The maximum received power level at the GSM-BTS is

$$\mathbf{Rlev} = \mathbf{TxPwr_{CTS\text{-}MS}} - \mathbf{MCL_{CTS\text{-}MS \rightarrow GSM\text{-}BTS}} + \textbf{margin for other IMs}$$

For the maximum CTS-MS transmit power defined in section 2.4 it follows:

Rlev [dBm] = 11 – 34.5 + 3 = **-20.5dBm** GSM900

and

Rlev [dBm] = 12 – 40 + 6 = **-22dBm** DCS1800

S.3.3.2 uncoordinated CTS-FPs -> MS:

In the second case, the transmission of two CTS-FPs will cause intermodulation products in a MS (CTS or GSM) receiver located in close proximity to the CTS-FPs. This scenario is similar to scenario 3 of GSM 05.50 Annex A, Fig. 3.2 middle, except for the fact that the CTS-FP is a one carrier machine and both signals will stem from two uncoordinated CTS-FPs.

The maximum received power level, now at the MS site, is given by the same expression as above:

$$\mathbf{Rlev} = \mathbf{TxPwr_{CTS\text{-}FP}} - \mathbf{MCL_{CTS\text{-}FP \rightarrow MS}} + \textbf{margin for other IMs}$$

For the maximum CTS-FP transmit power defined in chapter 2.3 it follows:

Rlev [dBm] = 11 – 34.5 + 3 = **-20.5dBm** GSM900

and

Rlev [dBm] = 12 – 40 + 6 = **-22dBm** DCS1800

In both cases considered above (3.3.1 and 3.3.2), the MCLs have to be relaxed in order to meet the requirements of GSM 05.05. However, comparison to pico-BTS scenarios (SMG2 WPB Tdoc 188/98) show that here, for both cases, the situation is much less critical. According to GSM 05.50 Annex A, an increase of the coupling loss of 1dB will reduce the 3rd order IM product by 3dB ; thus if the MCL assumption is increased by 10 dB, the maximum power level for generated intermodulation products for both cases discussed above to will be :

$\mathbf{PL}_{\text{Intermodulation test}}$ [dBm] = -20.5dBm - 30dB = **-50.5dBm** GSM900

and

$\mathbf{PL}_{\text{Intermodulation test}}$ [dBm] = -22dBm - 30dB = **-52dBm** DCS1800

These figures meet, for both cases discussed above, the intermodulation requirements of GSM 05.05 chapter 5.3 for both the MS (CTS and GSM) and the BTS.

S.3.3.3 uncoordinated GSM-MSs -> CTS-FP:

For the case of two GSM-MSs located close to a CTS-FP a higher receive level is observed due to the higher GSM-MS transmit power. This scenario corresponds to scenario 4 of GSM 05.50 Annex A, Fig. 3.2 bottom:

Rlev [dBm] = 33 – 34.5 + 3 = **1.5dBm** GSM900

and

Rlev [dBm] = 30 – 40 + 6 = **-4dBm** DCS1800

These figures correspond exactly to those of uncoordinated GSM-MSs located in close proximity of a pico BTS (see Tdoc SMG2 WPB Tdoc 188/98). Like there a relaxation of the MCL of 17dB will reduce the IM products by 52dB and the requirements become :

$\mathbf{PL}_{\text{Intermodulation test}}$ [dBm] = 1.5dBm - 52 dB = **-50.5dBm** GSM900

and

$\mathbf{PL}_{\text{Intermodulation test}}$ [dBm] = -4dBm - 52dB = **-56dBm** DCS1800

These figures meet the requirements of GSM 05.05, chapter 5.3, which give intermodulation levels of -49 dBm for both GSM900 and DCS1800 MS. Due to the fact, that the CTS-FP shall re-use the existing MS hardware as far as possible, it is proposed to re-use the MS requirements for the specification of the CTS-FP intermodulation.

S.4 CTS-FP TI5 performance requirements

The CTS-FP shall meet the static channel performance as specified in GSM 05.05. The only other radio propagation channel that is relevant to the performance of the CTS-FP is as for the pico-BTS the TI 5 channel.

Therefore the argumentation developed in Tdoc SMG2 WPB 188/98 section 12 is proposed to be applied to the CTS-FP : the performance figures for TU50 no FH at 900MHz are adopted and are met in the TI5 channel when the signal level is increased by 3dB above reference sensitivity level (for sensitivity performance) and the carrier to interference level is increased by 4dB above reference sensitivity level (for interference performance).

S.4.1 Nominal Error Rates for the CTS-FP

In CTS, the CTS-MS will access the CTS-FP on the CTSARCH at a distance smaller than for a GSM MS accessing a BTS, however the transmit power for such attempts will be decreased to 11dBm in GSM900 and 12dBm in DCS1800 (absolute max. transmit powers in CTS).

In the following we reproduce the MCL distribution table first presented by Motorola in SMG2 32/97 and Tdoc SMG2 WPB 188/98, and develop a table of occurance probability for CTSARCH transmit power with a CTS-MS making CTSARCH attempts at 11dBm (GSM900) and 12dBm (DCS1800).

The table below shows the MCL loss versus the chance of occurance :

% of measurements	900MHz MCL dB	1800 MHz MCL dB
0.03	-33	-39
0.1	-34	-40
0.53	-36	-42
1.0	-38	-48
1.43	-39	-45
2.86	-42	-48
4.66	-45	-51
9.58	-49	-55

If we now consider a CTS-MS at MCL sending a CTSARCH at maximum transmit power (11dBm for GSM900, 12dBm for DCS1800), we can generate a table which shows the received CTSARCH power levels at the CTS-FP versus probability of occurance :

% of measurements	900MHz RACH dBm	1800 MHz RACH dBm
0.03	-22	-27
0.1	-23	-28
0.53	-25	-30
1.0	-27	-32
1.43	-28	-33
2.86	-31	-36
4.66	-34	-39
9.58	-38	-43

These maximum received levels are below the existing maximum received power levels at which the NER performance of a MS shall be maintained (-15 dBm in GSM900 and -23 dBm in DCS1800). As the CTS-FP shall re-use the existing MS hardware as far as possible, it is proposed to specify that the CTS-FP shall maintain a BER < 10^{-3} performance and CTSARCH performance at received power levels of -15 dBm for GSM900 and -23 dBm for DCS1800.

S.5 Conclusion

It was shown that for a maximum transmit power of +11dBm for GSM900 and +12dBm for DCS1800, GSM and CTS systems can coexist without degradation of the GSM. Further tightening of the CTS-FP spectrum due to modulation and wide band noise above 1.8MHz frequency separation was proposed in addition.

The 20dB power control range for the CTS-FP, which leads to a minimum CTS-FP transmit power of –9dBm for GSM900 and of –8dBm for DCS1800, allows significant interference reduction and is an acceptable compromise for implementation cost.

Blocking parameters from GSM-MS characteristics were shown to be justified for use in CTS-MS and CTS-FP, as well as AM suppression and intermodulation characteristics.

Annex T: GSM 400 system scenarios

TDoc SMG2 WPB 542/99

T.0 Introduction

This paper discusses system scenarios for GSM 400 operation primarily in respect of the 05.05 series of recommendations. To develop the GSM 400 standard, all the relevant scenarios need to be considered for each part of 05.05 and the most critical cases identified. The process may then be iterated to arrive at final parameters that meet both service and implementation requirements.

T.1 Frequency bands and channel arrangement

GSM 400 systems are specified for two frequency allocations. Primary utilisation will be allocations around 450 MHz. For some countries allocations around 480 MHz will be possible. Thus the systems to be specified are for operation in the following frequency bands:

GSM 450 Band

450.4 – 457.6 MHz: mobile transmit, base receive;

460.4 – 467.6 MHz: base transmit, mobile receive;

GSM 480 Band

478.8 – 486 MHz: mobile transmit, base receive;

488.8 – 496 MHz: base transmit, mobile receive;

with a carrier spacing of 200 kHz.

Consequently, if we call F1(n) the *n*th carrier frequency in the lower band, and Fu(n) the nth carrier frequency in the upper band, we have for GSM 450;

$$Fl(n) = 450.6 + 0.2*(n-259) \quad (MHz) \quad (259 \le n \le 293)$$

$$Fu(n) = Fl(n) + 10 \quad (MHz)$$

and for GSM 480;

$$Fl(n) = 479 + 0.2*(n-306) \quad (MHz) \quad (306 \le n \le 340)$$

$$Fu(n) = Fl(n) + 10 \quad (MHz)$$

The value n is called the Absolute Radio Frequency Channel Number (ARFCN).

In the following unless otherwise specified, references to GSM 400 includes both GSM 450 and GSM 480.

T.2 System Scenario Calculations for GSM 400 systems

T.2.1 Worst case proximity scenarios

The purpose of the present document is to justify the adoption of E-GSM 900 radio frequency requirements to GSM 400 systems with minimal changes. This will make it easy to adapt standard GSM technology. Parameters like body loss and multiple interference margin are chosen to be identical that was used in GSM 900 or DCS 1800 system scenario calculations performed earlier in SMG. This was decided for to keep comparison with different system scenario calculations easy. It has to be noted that with chosen approach the GSM 400 scenario calculations are little too pessimistic compared for scenarios in reality.

As was seen with GSM 900 and DCS 1800 cases all worst case scenarios are not met. Compromises have been made while the parameters have been statistical probabilities of occurrences and implementation issues. Evidently it would also be more severe to block a BTS than a single MS. Statistical properties of occurrence state that coordinated case is more important to fulfill than uncoordinated case. Because of narrow spectrum available at GSM 400 bands it is relevant to assume that systems are operated in a coordinated manner in vast majority of cases. Uncoordinated scenarios might happen in some cases and thus those are also discussed in scenario calculations.

Tables below show examples of close proximity scenarios in urban and rural environments for GSM 400 and GSM 900 systems. Different antenna heights are considered in different environments. Low antennas are assumed to have lower gain (10 dBi) than high antennas, that is (18 dBi) for GSM 900 and (14 dBi) for GSM 400.

Table 1 Worst case proximity scenarios for GSM 400

	Rural		Urban		
	Street	Building [1]	Street	Building [1]	Street
BTS height, H_b (m)	50	50	15	30	30
MS height, H_m (m)	1.5	15	1.5	20	1.5
Horizontal separation (m) [4]	50	100	15	60	15
BTS antenna gain, G_b (dB) [2]	14	10	10	14	14
BTS antenna gain, G'_b (dB) [3]	0	10	2	9	0
MS antenna gain, G_m (dB)	0	0	0	0	0
Path loss into building (dB)		6		6	
Cable/Connector Loss (dB)	2	2	2	2	2
Body Loss (dB)	1	1	1	1	1
Path loss - antenna gain (dB)	65	65	53	61	59

Table 2 Worst case proximity scenarios for GSM 900

	Rural		Urban		
	Street	Building [1]	Street	Building [1]	Street
BTS height, H_b (m)	20	15	15	30	30
MS height, H_m (m)	1.5	15	1.5	20	1.5
Horizontal separation (m) [4]	30	30	15	60	15
BTS antenna gain, G_b (dB) [2]	18	10	10	18	18
BTS antenna gain, G'_b (dB) [3]	0	10	2	13	0
MS antenna gain, G_m (dB)	0	0	0	0	0
Path loss into building (dB)		6		6	
Cable/Connector Loss (dB)	2	2	2	2	2
Body Loss (dB)	1	1	1	1	1
Path loss - antenna gain (dB)	65	60	59	63	65

Notes: [1] Handset at height H_m in building

[2] Bore-sight gain

[3] Gain in direction of MS

[4] Horizontal separation between MS and BTS

Path loss is assumed to be free space i.e. 25.5 + 20 log d(m) dB for GSM 400 systems and 31.5 + 20 log d(m) dB for GSM 900 systems, where d is the length of the sloping line connecting the transmit and receive antennas. The coupling loss is defined between antenna connectors. The transmitter power and receiver sensitivity is measured at the respective antenna connectors.

Coupling between BTSs may result either from the co-siting of BTSs or from several BTSs in close proximity with directional antenna. The minimum coupling loss between BTSs is assumed to be 30 dB. This is defined as the loss between the transmitter combiner output and the receiver multi-coupler input.

GSM 400 systems are targeted to offer large coverage in rural areas. It is reasonable to assume that BTS heights in rural area are higher than in urban area thus minimum coupling loss (MCL) value of 65 dB between BTS and MS is valid assumption in rural areas. For GSM 900 system scenario calculations performed earlier dense urban area MCL value of 59 dB was used. With the identical scenario GSM 400 systems will provide 6 dB less MCL thus resulting into the value 53 dB.

MS to MS close proximity MCL for DCS 1800 was 40.5 dB and 6 dB less for GSM 900. Straightforward calculation suggests using MCL of 28.5 dB for the worst case MS to MS scenario. Recent measures indicate that body loss for small hand sets is rather 10 dB than 1 dB (05.50 v 6.0.2 Appendix H). By using this higher body loss factor worst case scenario requirements were much milder.

It can be concluded that worst case scenario requirements for GSM 400 systems are in some cases 6 dB tighter than for GSM 900. This must be considered in cellular planning recommendation 03.30. It may be necessary to recommend to utilise lower output power at GSM 400 band BTSs in dense urban area if MCL can be very small (i.e. low antenna heights). This is not a drawback anyway while we remember that a useful carrier too has a smaller path loss at lower frequencies, thus reduced output power is gained back and coverage for urban cells can be maintained the same as at higher bands.

Worst case scenarios usually involve a "near/far" problem of some kind, the component scenario assumptions as given in the scenarios paper for "near" and "far" can be summarised as follows.

"Near"	MCL [dB]
BTS -> MS	53
MS -> BTS	53
MS -> MS	28.5
BTS -> BTS	30

"Far"	TX power [dBm]	RX Sensitivity [dBm]
BTS	39	-104
MS	33	-102

Other parameters used in scenario calculations are:

Parameter	**Value [dB]**
BTS power control range	30
MS power control range	26
C/I margin	9
Multiple interferers margin (MIM)	10
Transient margin	20
Margin for other IM's	3

It can be speculated that MIM for GSM 400 should be lower than 10 dB because of lesser amount of carriers, but as was stated in the beginning GSM 900 system scenario calculation parameters are chosen for comparison reasons.

T.3 Worst Case Scenario Requirements

T.3.1 Transmitter

T.3.1.1 Modulation, Spurs and noise

T.3.1.1.1 Co-ordinated BTS -> MS

Max. Tx noise level in Rx bandwidth = [BTS power] - [Power control range] - [C/I margin] - [MIM] =

39 – 30 – 9 –10 = **- 10 dBm**

T.3.1.1.2 Uncoordinated BTS -> MS

Max. Tx. level of noise in Rx. bandwidth = [MS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] - [MIM] + [MCL] =

-102 – 9 – 10 + 53 = **-68 dBm**

Max. Tx level of spur in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [MCL] =

-102 – 9 + 53 = **-58 dBm**

T.3.1.1.3 Coordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> BTS

Max. Tx level in Rx bandwidth = [BTS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [MCL] =

-104 – 9 + 53 = **-60 dBm**

T.3.1.1.4 Coordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> MS

Max Tx level in Rx bandwidth = [MS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] + [MCL] =

-102 – 9 + 28.5 = **-82.5 dBm**

T.3.1.1.5 Coordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> BTS

Max Tx level noise in Rx bandwidth= [BTS sensitivity] - [C/I margin] - [MIM] + [MCL] =

-104 – 9 –10 + 30 = **-93 dBm**

T.3.1.2 Switching transients

T.3.1.2.1 Uncoordinated MS -> BTS

Max. peak level in effective Rx BW at MS = [BTS sensit.] - [C/I margin] + [MCL] + [Transient margin] =

-104 – 9 + 53 + 20 = **-40 dBm**

T.3.1.2.2 Uncoordinated BTS -> MS

Max. peak level in effective Rx BW at BTS = [MS sensit.] - [C/I margin] + [MCL] + [Transient margin] =

-102 – 9 + 53 + 20 = **-38 dBm**

T.3.1.3 Intermodulation

T.3.1.3.1 Coordinated BTS -> MS

Required IM attenuation in BTS = [C/I margin] + [BTS power ctrl range] + [margin for other IMs] =

9 + 30 + 3 = **42 dB**

T.3.1.3.2 Uncoordinated BTS -> MS

Required IM attenuat. in BTS = [BTS power] - {[Max. allowed lev. at MS1] + [MCL BTS2->MS1]} =

39 - {[-102 – 9 –3] + 53} = **100 dB**

T.3.1.3.3 Uncoordinated MSs -> BTS

Required IM attenuat. in MS = [MS power] - {[Max. allowed level at BTS2] + [MCL MS->BTS2]} =

33 – {[-104 –9 –3] + 53} = **96 dB**

T.3.1.3.4 Uncoordinated MS & MS -> MS

Required IM attenuat. in MS = [MS power] - {[Max. allowed level at MS3] + [MCL MS->MS3]} =

33 - {[-102 –9 –3] + 28.5} = **118.5 dB**

T.3.2 Receiver

T.3.2.1 Blocking

T.3.2.1.1 Coordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> MS

Max. level at MS receiver = [BTS power] + [MIM] - [MCL] =

39 + 10 – 53 = **-4 dBm**

T.3.2.1.2 Coordinated MS -> BTS

Max level at BTS receiver = [MS power] - [Power control range] - [MCL] =

33 – 26 – 53 = **-46 dBm**

T.3.2.1.3 Uncoordinated MS -> BTS

Max level at BTS receiver = [MS power] - [MCL] =

33 – 53 = **-20 dBm**

T.3.2.1.4 Coordinated & Uncoordinated MS -> MS

Max. level at MS receiver = [MS power] - [MCL] =

33 - 28.5 = **4.5 dBm**

T.3.2.1.5 Coordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> BTS

Max. level at BTS receiver = [BTS power] + [Multiple interferers margin] - [MCL] =

39 + 10 – 30 = **19 dBm**

T.3.2.2 Intermodulation

T.3.2.2.1 Coordinated & Uncoordinated BTS -> MS

Max. received level at MS1 = [BTS power] - [MCL BTS2->MS1] + [Margin for other IMs] =

39 – 53 + 3 = **-11 dBm**

T.3.2.2.2 Coordinated MS -> BTS

Max. received level at BTS1 = [MS power] - [MS power ctrl range] - [MCL MS-> BTS1] + [Margin for other IMs] =

33 – 26 – 53 + 3 = **-43 dBm**

T.3.2.2.3 Uncoordinated MS -> BTS

Max. received level at BTS1 = [MS power] - [MCL MS-> BTS1] + [Margin for other IM's] =

33 – 53 + 3 = **-17 dBm**

T.3.2.3 Maximum level

T.3.2.3.1 Coordinated MS -> BTS

Max level at BTS = [MS power] - [MCL] =

33 – 53 = **-20 dBm**

T.3.2.3.2 Coordinated BTS -> MS

Max level at MS = [BTS power] - [MCL] =

39 – 53 = **-14 dBm**

T.4 Transmitter characteristics

For readability the chapter numbering in the transmitter and receiver characteristics chapters are aligned with current GSM 05.05 chapter numbering.

The worst case scenario requirements and current GSM 05.05 specification for GSM 900 are summarized in the tables beginning of each relevant chapter. Specification requirements in the table entries are converted to 200 kHz bandwidth to be comparable for scenario calculation results.

T.4.1 Output power

T.4.1.1 Mobile Station

Coverage gain is seen as one of the major benefits for the down banded GSM system. In order to gain the most of this benefit it was decided to allow the same power classes for GSM 400 as was initially chosen for GSM 900.

The absolute tolerance on power control levels has been chosen to be the same as with GSM 900.

T.4.1.2 Base Station

Following GSM 900, the BTS power classes are specified at the combiner input. In order to provide the operator some flexibility same power classes as for GSM 900 are chosen.

The tolerance on the BTS static power control step size is same as for GSM 900.

T.4.2 Output RF Spectrum

T.4.2.1 Spectrum due to the modulation and wideband noise

	Coordinated scenarios		Uncoordinated scenarios		According to GSM 05.05 GSM900	
	GSM400	GSM900	GSM400	GSM900	39/33 dBm TX pwr	Frequency offset
Transmitter						
Modulation and wide band noise (allowed) [dBm]					**Introduced [dBm]**	
BTS -> MS	-10	-10	-68	-62	-27	600 kHz
MS -> BTS	-60	-54	-60	-54	-27	600 kHz

Coordinated case

In coordinated case BTS wideband noise requirement are fulfilled with both GSM 900 and GSM 400 systems and thus there is no need to change the specification for BTS TX mask.

Worst case scenario requirements for MS wideband noise are tighter than for BTS. Since the table entries in GSM 05.05 are relative, as the level of the transmitter is reduced, the absolute specification becomes tighter. For coordinated MS to BTS interference it is to be noted that power control works and MS will be powered down. For MS close to BTS it is relevant to expect that minimum MS TX power is used. Thus introduced wideband noise is reduced accordingly down to –43 dBm at 600 kHz offset. Still there is a gap of 11 dB in GSM 900 scenarios and specification.

Probability of this scenario is low and actually allowing this to happen is not practical cellular planning. Low power users operating very close to BTS may block users locating in the edge area of very large cells that operate with full power and still close to sensitivity level. In other words blocking of some users at cell edge would require large cells in dense urban areas with very small handover margin. In sensible cellular planning these should be contradictory occurrences. Thus it was felt that there is no need to make specification too tight because of speculation of some unpractical occurrences.

Uncoordinated case

The theoretical worst case uncoordinated scenarios are missed quite a lot. This was situation also in higher bands. Now the mismatch is about 6 dB worse than in GSM 900. In practice this situation is very rare. First as was discussed earlier it is not probable that uncoordinated scenario should happen in narrowband. Secondly the theoretical calculations are done while MS close to disturbing BTS operates at sensitivity level which is not a common situation.

If uncoordinated scenarios are planned it may be decided by the operators that in dense urban areas where MCL may reach low values maximum power level is reduced by 6 dB in respect to those used in GSM 900 case. Still due to smaller path loss, low powered GSM 400 systems would offer equal coverage than GSM 900 system. Down powering of system is a natural choice anyway in urban areas where cellular planning is capacity driven rather than targeting to large cells.

As a conclusion it is seen unnecessary to do any changes to existing GSM 900 modulation mask while it is adapted to GSM 400 systems.

T.4.2.2 Spectrum due to switching transients

Coordinated case

GSM 05.05 defines modulation mask, switching transients, spurious emissions and intermodulation specifications to be consistent with each other (GSM 05.50 V6.0.2 Annex D). In previous it was justified that GSM 900 modulation mask is seen to be appropriate at 400 MHz bands. Due the consistence, current switching transient requirements at 900 MHz band are enough at 400 MHz bands also.

Uncoordinated case

For uncoordinated scenarios down banded system may need to be down powered in dense urban scenarios to fulfil GSM 900 performance. Down powering will affect similarly for switching transients also and again it is felt that down powered GSM 400 systems perform as well as GSM 900.

No changes in respect to GSM 900 requirements are thus proposed.

T.4.3 Spurious emissions

T.4.3.1 Principle of the specification

No changes to measurement conditions are needed.

	Coordinated scenarios		Uncoordinated scenarios		According to GSM 05.05 GSM900	
	GSM400	GSM900	GSM400	GSM900	39/33 dBm TX pwr	Frequency offset
Transmitter						
Spurious emissions (allowed at RX) [dBm]					**Introduced [dBm]**	
BTS Normal	-93	-93			-95	Own RX-band
BTS Micro M3		-93			-78	Own RX-band
BTS R-GSM		-93			-86	Own RX-band
MS P-GSM	-82.5	-76.5			-76	Own RX-band
MS E-GSM		-76.5			-64	Own RX-band
MS R-GSM		-76.5			-57	Own RX-band

T.4.3.2 Base transceiver station

Current specification for BTS introduces –95 dBm level of spurious emissions in 200 kHz BTS RX band. The transition band between TX and RX band is only 3 MHz for GSM 400 systems that operate with full bandwidth and thus rather deep sloped filtering is required. Current understanding is that the GSM 900 specification can be adopted to GSM 400 systems. (For R-GSM the requirement is relaxed down to –86 dBm because of low number of carriers expected in R-GSM BTS.)

While GSM 400 BTS is co-sited with higher bands, measures must be taken for mutual protection of receivers. GSM 400 systems must not produce exceeding noise level in relevant up-link bands for GSM 900 and DCS 1800. GSM 900 and DCS 1800 are currently specified to allow at maximum –36 dBm spurious emissions at 400 MHz bands while measured the peak power in 3 MHz band. This corresponds to about –56 dBm at 200 kHz peak power value. This does not quite match with the requirements for GSM 400 systems. However no changes to higher band specifications are proposed anyway while GSM 400 system is specified. If BTSs of different frequency bands are co-sited the coupling loss must be increased by antenna arrangement or with external filters, but this must not be a part of GSM specification.

T.4.3.3 Mobile station

In idle mode power measured in GSM 900 down link band is limited to –57 dBm at 100 kHz measurement band. In up link band allowed level is –59 dBm. For uplink the wideband noise scenario requirement is –60 dBm at 200 kHz band. Due to different measurement methods (i.e. average vs. peak value) in wideband noise and spurious emission conditions it is reasonable to assume that GSM 900 requirements can be adopted to GSM 400 systems.

When allocated a channel existing GSM 900 and DCS 1800 are currently specified to allow at maximum –36 dBm spurious emission peaks at 9 kHz – 1 GHz bands with measurement conditions specified in GSM 05.05. No changes is proposed for GSM 400 systems.

When allocated a channel spurious emission at MS RX band for E-GSM is –67 dBm at 100 kHz band. This is relaxed from the original P-GSM requirement –79 dBm. Requirement is further relaxed to –60 dBm for R-GSM MS. The initial discussions with component manufacturers indicate that TX filter that limits spurious emissions at 3 MHz from the band edge down to –67 dBm in GSM 400 bands would be feasible.

T.4.4 Radio frequency tolerance

No reason for changes in GSM 05.05 (defined in GSM 05.10).

T.4.5 Output level dynamic operation

T.4.5.1 Base station

This specification only affects the interference experienced by co-channel cells in the same PLMN. The requirement on the relative power level of unactivated timeslots is -30 dBc that is in line with the BTS power control range.

No reason to modify current specification.

T.4.5.2 Mobile station

Tightening this requirement from current GSM 900 specification would mean that the requirement for active MS would be about as tight as requirement in idle mode. This is not felt to be a reasonable requirement and thus it is proposed that GSM 900 specification is adopted without changes.

The same relaxation as for GSM 900 at preceding slot is allowed.

T.4.6 Phase accuracy

No reason for changes in GSM 05.05 (defined in GSM 05.04).

T.4.7 Intermodulation attenuation

For GSM 900 system intermodulation attenuation is specified only for BTS. Required intermodulation attenuation in coordinated case for both GSM 900 and GSM 400 systems is 42 dB while current specification states that attenuation is 70 dB.

No changes are proposed for intermodulation attenuation specification.

T.5 Receiver characteristics

T.5.1 Blocking characteristics

	Coordinated scenarios		**Uncoordinated scenarios**		**According to GSM 05.05 GSM900**	
	GSM400	**GSM900**	**GSM400**	**GSM900**	**39/33 dBm TX pwr**	**Frequency offset**
MS <- BTS	-4	-10	-4	-10	-23	3 MHz
BTS <- MS	-46	-52	-20	-26	-13	3 MHz
MS <- MS	4.5	-1.5	4.5	-1.5	0 (-5 for EGSM)	Own TX-band
BTS <- BTS	19	19	19	19	8	Own TX-band

GSM 400 system passband and transition band between TX and RX bands are much smaller than in GSM 900 system. While determining out-of-band limits it was decided to keep the ratio of passband and transition band about the same as for GSM 900 system. Thus out-of-band transition bandwidth at high frequencies is chosen to be 6 MHz, which is relatively the same as for GSM where 20 MHz was chosen. Passband to transition band ratio for GSM 400 system is quite close to the respective ratio in E-GSM, thus E-GSM has been chosen as a reference system for low out-of-band blocking requirements.

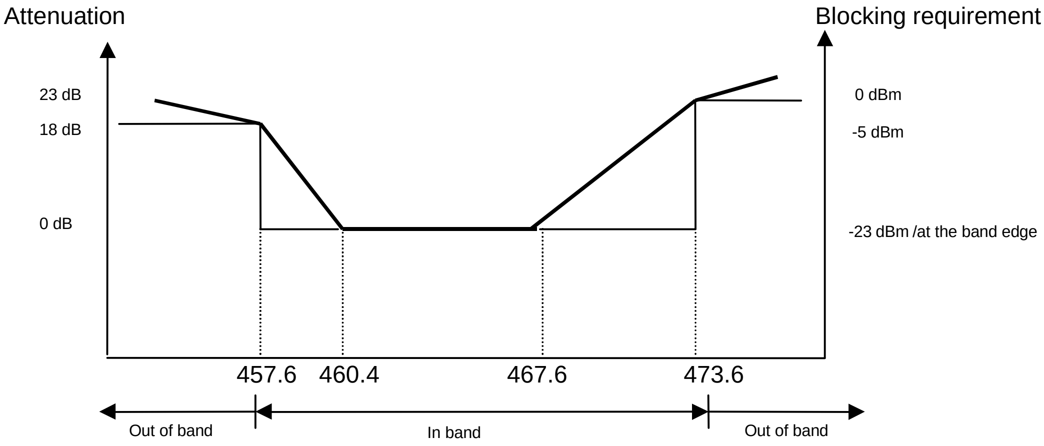
Frequency Band	Frequency range (MHz) GSM 450	
	MS	BTS
In-band	457.6 – 473.6	444.4 – 460.4
out-of-band (a)	0.1 - < 457.6	0.1 - < 444.4
out-of-band (b)	N/A	N/A
out-of band (c)	N/A	N/A
out-of band (d)	> 473.6 - 12,750	> 460.4 - 12,750

Frequency Band	Frequency range (MHz) GSM 480	
	MS	BTS
In-band	486.0 – 502.0	472.8 – 488.8
out-of-band (a)	0.1 - < 486.0	0.1 - < 472.8
out-of-band (b)	N/A	N/A
out-of band (c)	N/A	N/A
out-of band (d)	> 502.0 - 12,750	> 488.8 - 12,750

The out-of-band blocking specification relates to the GSM 400 band and the feasibility of the receiver filter. Due to narrow gap between TX and RX bands at low frequency side of the MS out-of-band blocking requirement is chosen to be same as for EGSM i.e. –5 dBm. At the high frequency side of the MS GSM 900 out-of-band blocking requirement of value 0 dBm has been chosen.

The MS in-band blocking specification close to the received channel has not been changed, this is limited by the receiver synthesizer phase noise. The blocking specification at > 3 MHz offset still misses the scenario requirements T.3.2.1.1 and T.3.2.1.4. Power consumption considerations make it anyway undesirable to further tighten the specification. Power consumption would grow, because of the extra current needed to compensate the losses in filters. While considering the low amount of interfering carriers in GSM 400 systems the scenario is in practice very close to current GSM 900 scenario.

The combinations of these proposal amounts to a filter specification over the MS receive band as shown below.



Frequency band	**E-GSM 900**		**GSM 450 and GSM 480**	
	MS dBm	**BTS dBm**	**MS dBm**	**BTS dBm**
in-band				
600 kHz≤ $\lvert f-f_0 \rvert$ < 800 kHz	-43	-26	-43	-26
800 kHz≤ $\lvert f-f_0 \rvert$ < 1.6 MHz	-43	-16	-43	-16
1.6 MHz≤ $\lvert f-f_0 \rvert$ < 3 MHz	-33	-16	-33	-16
3 MHz ≤ $\lvert f-f_0 \rvert$	-23	-13	-23	-13
out-of-band				
(a) [Note 1]	-5	8	-5	8
(b)	-	-	-	-
(c)	-	-	-	-
(d)	0	8	0	8

Note 1: Relaxation for E-GSM MS is in the band 905 – 915 MHz.

The BTS in-band blocking requirement has kept same as for GSM 900 system. Scenario requirement T.3.2.1.2 is -46 dBm that considers blocking from the BTS own MSs. The proposal meets the scenario requirements even at 600 kHz offset. Requirement T.3.2.1.3 is -20 dBm, which is for mobiles from other operators. This is missed at 600 kHz but it is met at 800 kHz offset. No changes are recommended due to the non-probable occurrence of un-coordinated scenario and especially with full power, small MCL and small frequency offset.

The out-of-band specification has not been changed, although it does not meet scenario requirement T.3.2.1.5 (19 dBm). This is because the 30 dB coupling loss assumption between base stations is rather pessimistic, it corresponds to two 14 dBi antennas on boresight 26 m apart. Under these circumstances, operators may need to adopt specific mutual arrangements (e.g. antenna arrangements or extra operator specific receive filters) which need not form part of the GSM standard.

T.5.2 AM suppression characteristics

AM suppression requirement is targeted for uncoordinated operation where two operators share the band. Current requirements are about the same for both GSM 900 and DCS 1800 systems. Even though it is assumed that uncoordinated scenarios are rare for GSM 400 still AM suppression specification is written for GSM 400 system for the specification to be consistent with GSM systems in other bands. It is suggested that GSM 900 system requirement is applied for GSM 400 systems.

T.5.3 Intermodulation Characteristics

	Coordinated scenarios		Uncoordinated scenarios		According to GSM 05.05 GSM900	
	GSM400	GSM900	GSM400	GSM900	39/33 dBm TX pwr	Frequency offset
Intermodulation (Max level introduced) [dBm]					**Allowed [dBm]**	
MS <- BTS	-11	-17	-11	-17	-49	
BTS <- MS	-43	-49	-17	-23	-43	

The GSM 900 specification for handportables limits the maximum level to -49 dBm. Any tightening of this specification will increase the power consumption of the receiver. The proposed level of -49 dBm for the MS fails to meet scenario requirement T.3.2.2.1, but the only consequence is that the MS is de-sensed when close to a BTS with the appropriate transmitters active. Statistical probabilities of occurrence of this situation is highest in dense urban areas and while GSM 400 BTS power level is recommended to be reduced the scenario is similar to GSM 900 system. In rural areas MCL is easily higher than 53 dB.

The worst case for BTS receiver IMs is when two MSs approach the base station, the scenario requirement is covered in sections T.3.2.2.2 and T.3.2.2.3 and is -43 dBm for coordinated mobiles and -17 dBm for uncoordinated.

The GSM 900 system requirement -43 dBm has been proposed since the probability of the uncoordinated scenario with maximum power and minimal MCL is low both spatially and spectrally. If the coupling loss between both MSs and the BTS increases by 1dB the level of a third order IM product will reduce by 3 dB.

T.5.4 Spurious emissions

Current requirements are the same for both GSM 900 and DCS 1800 systems. It is suggested that the same is adopted to GSM 400 systems. No changes are proposed for this requirement.

T.6 Receiver performance

Reference sensitivity levels for GSM 400 are determined to be equal to those of GSM 900. The reference sensitivity performance specified in Table 1 and Table 1a [GSM 05.05] for GSM 900 may be taken as GSM 400 reference sensitivity performance requirement while the MS speed is doubled. The same applies for reference interference performance in Table 2 and Table 2a [GSM 05.05].

Current specification states that for static conditions, a bit error rate of 10exp-3 shall be maintained up to –15 dBm for GSM 900. From GSM 400 scenario calculations T.3.2.3.1 and T.3.2.3.2 it can be seen that maximum signal level expected in BTS antenna is –20 dBm and in MS antenna –14 dBm. These being calculated with pessimistic MCL values it may be concluded that current GSM 900 performance requirement with –15 dBm received power level should be applicable also for GSM 400 systems.

Chip error rate for GSM 900 has been defined for static channel and EQ50 channel. It is reasonable to assume that in static conditions the performance of GSM 400 and GSM 900 are equal and no changes are proposed. EQ50 channel for GSM 900 corresponds about to EQ100 in case of GSM 400. Thus it is decided to keep the performance requirement equal while doubling the speed.

Annex U:
850 MHz and 1900 MHz Mixed-Mode Scenarios

850 MHz and 1900 MHz Mixed-Mode Scenarios

U.1 Introduction

850 MHz and 1900 MHz mixed-mode is defined as a network that deploys both 30 kHz RF carriers and 200 kHz RF carriers in geographic regions where the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) regulations are applied. There are two scenarios in these regions:

- Mixed-mode multi-carrier BTS in FCC regulated environment
- Mixed-mode multiple MS and BTS, uncoordinated close proximity

The following documents describe the basis for the 850 MHz and 1900 MHz mixed-mode base station RF requirements:

[1] TIA/EIA-136-280 "Base Station Minimum Performance"

[2] Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 47, Part 22 "Public Mobile Service", Subpart C and H

[3] Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 47, Part 24 "Personal Communications Services (PCS)", Subpart E

[4] Tdoc ETSI SMG2 EDGE 44/99, Source: TIA TR45.3 AHIC, Title: Liaison Statement to ETSI SMG2 WPB Regarding ETSI SMG2 WPB's Response to TIA TR45.3 AHIC's Tdoc SMG2 WPB 30/99 "EDGE Blocking Specifications"

[5] TR45.3.AHIC/99.02.18.04, Source: Nortel Networks, Title: Proposed Liaison Statement to ETSI SMG2 WPB Regarding ETSI SMG2 WPB Response to TR45.3 AHIC Tdoc SMG2 WPB 30/99 "EDGE Blocking Specifications"

[6] ETSI GSM 05.05 "Radio Transmission and Reception", Release 1997

U.2 BTS Wide Band Noise and Intra BTS Intermodulation Attenuation

U.2.1 Overview

U.2.1.1 TIA/EIA-136

In TIA/EIA-136, the conducted spurious emissions limits are specified as -13 dBm peak measured in 30 kHz outside the authorized transmit band (see TIA/EIA-136-280, §3.4.2.2.1). This includes conducted spurious energy from spurs and intermodulation products in addition to the wideband noise.

850 MHz

For output powers 50 W or less, the peak power level of any emissions within the base station transmit band between 869 and 894 MHz, measured using a 30 kHz bandwidth centered 120 kHz or more from the carrier frequency, shall not exceed a level of 45 dB below the mean carrier output power or -13 dBm, whichever is the lower power. For output powers greater than 50 W, the peak power level of any emissions within the base station transmit band between 869 and 894 MHz, measured using a 30 kHz bandwidth centered 120 kHz or more from the carrier frequency, shall not exceed a level of 60 dB below the mean carrier power output power (see TIA/EIA-136-280 §3.4.2.2.3.1).

1900 MHz

For output powers 50 W or less, the peak power level of any emissions within the base station transmit band between 1930 and 1990 MHz, measured using a 30 kHz bandwidth centered 120 kHz or more from the carrier frequency, shall not exceed a level of 45 dB below the mean carrier output power or -13 dBm, whichever is the lower power. For output powers greater than 50 W, the peak power level of any emissions within the base station transmit band between 1930 and 1990 MHz, measured using a 30 kHz bandwidth centered 120 kHz or more from the carrier frequency, shall not exceed a level of 60 dB below the mean carrier power output power (see TIA/EIA-136-280 §3.4.2.2.3.2).

Also, the radiated products from co-located transmitters must not exceed FCC spurious and harmonic level requirements that would apply to a single transmitter (see TIA/EIA-136-280, §3.4.4.1.1).

Finally, TIA/EIA-136 provides an additional requirement for intermodulation performance such that transmit intermodulation products must not exceed -60 dBc relative to the per carrier power in a multi-carrier BTS environment.

U.2.1.2 ETSI GSM

In GSM 05.05, the wideband noise specification is defined for a single RF carrier. GSM 05.05 does not make any specific provisions for the stackup of noise power. For example, a 10 RF carrier BTS would be allowed to radiate wideband noise levels that are 10 dB above those of a single RF carrier BTS.

Transmit spurs are specified separately from wideband noise in GSM 05.05 and are allowed to be up to -36 dBm rms measured in 200 kHz (see GSM 05.05, §4.2.1). The specification allows for: 3 spurs in the range of 600 kHz to 6 MHz offset from the carrier, and 12 more spurs in the range from 6 MHz offset from the carrier to the edges of the relevant transmit band.

Finally, intra BTS intermodulation levels are allowed to be -70 dBc peak with all the carriers on.

U.2.2 Scenario - Mixed-Mode Multi-Carrier BTS in FCC Regulated Environment

Aside from the frequency bands, the main constraint is the number of RF carriers in the BTS. The extreme condition occurs when there are a large number of RF carriers in the BTS.

The 850 MHz mixed-mode system is required to operate in the following frequency bands:

- 824 - 849 MHz: mobile transmit, base receive;
- 869 - 894 MHz: base transmit, mobile receive

The 1900 MHz mixed-mode system is required to operate in the following frequency bands:

- 1850 - 1910 MHz: mobile transmit, base receive;
- 1930 - 1990 MHz: base transmit, mobile receive

with a carrier spacing of 200 kHz for GPRS-136HS and 30 kHz for TIA/EIA-136. Also, the 200 kHz GPRS-136HS carriers and 30 kHz TIA/EIA-136 carriers can be deployed at different power levels and may use portions of the existing Tx chain.

As the number of RF carriers in a BTS increases, the wideband noise requirements become more stringent vis-à-vis a single RF carrier BTS. For example, with 40 RF carriers transmitted via a single antenna subsystem (i.e., a multi-carrier BTS), the wideband noise performance of a single transceiver in such a case would have to be at least 16 dB tighter than a single transceiver in a one-carrier BTS.

NOTE: The scenario description in §2.3 of GSM 05.50 Annex A investigates the potential impact of intra BTS intermodulation products contributing to interference between uncoordinated service providers. Specifically, as a mobile station accepting service from a service provider approaches within close proximity of an uncoordinated BTS, the intra BTS intermodulation products may introduce an added source of interference.

In geographic regions governed by FCC regulations, inter-licensee interference is regulated by CFR, Title 47, Part 22 for 850 MHz systems and CFR, Title 47, Part 24 for PCS 1900 MHz systems. CFR, Title 47, Parts 22 and 24 describe emission limits on any frequency outside a service provider's licensed frequency block. These emission limits include the intra BTS intermodulation products that fall within an adjacent service provider's licensed frequency block.

These emissions limits and the conditions imposed by the FCC must be considered when establishing intra BTS intermodulation attenuation performance in geographic regions governed by FCC regulations.

U.2.3 BTS Wide Band Noise and Intra BTS Intermodulation Attenuation Analysis

850 MHz and 1900 MHz Non-Mixed Mode

This analysis examines the total conducted spurious emissions that would be radiated from a BTS that is compliant with TIA/EIA-136-280 (i.e., for 850 MHz or 1900 MHz non-mixed-mode operation).

For this analysis, it is assumed that the BTS that transmits 39 dBm rms per 30 kHz carrier. As noted in §1.1.1, the BTS total conducted spurious emissions are limited to -13 dBm peak measured in 30 kHz. The conversion factor between peak and rms power level is taken to be 10 dB. Therefore, the summation of wideband noise and intermodulation products (i.e., the total noise budget) is limited to -23 dBm rms measured in 30 kHz. The total noise budget can be tailored to meet the needs of a particular system. For the purposes of this analysis, equal amounts of power (i.e., -26 dBm rms) are budgeted to the wideband noise and intermodulation products.

As an example, for a sector that is deployed with 20 RF carriers, the wideband noise would be restricted to -39 dBm rms measured in 30 kHz (-26 dBm rms - $10\log_{10} 20$). This represents -78 dBc measured in 30 kHz [39 dBm rms per 30 kHz carrier - (-39 dBm rms)].

Using the same example, this represents -65 dBc measured in 30 kHz for intermodulation products [39 dBm rms per 30 kHz carrier - (-26 dBm rms)]. This particular example (i.e., a BTS that transmits 39 dBm rms per 30 kHz carrier with 20 carriers) results in an intermodulation attenuation requirement which exceeds the -60 dBc stipulated in TIA/EIA-136-280. However, in conjunction with the wideband noise component, the system meets the -13 dBm peak total conducted spurious emissions requirement (i.e., for high BTS power levels, the -13 dBm specification applies). For a BTS that transmits ≤ 34 dBm rms per 30 kHz carrier (i.e., for low BTS power levels), the -60 dBc requirement applies.

NOTE: This assumed the use of an A+B band transmit filter for 850 MHz operation and an A+B+C+D+E+F band transmit filter for 1900 MHz operation. If an A or B band transmit filter were to be used separately instead for 850 MHz operation, then the power levels of the out-of-band intermodulation products would be attenuated even further. The same holds true if an A or B or C or D or E or F band transmit filter were to be used separately instead for 1900 MHz operation.

850 MHz and 1900 MHz Mixed Mode

For 850 MHz and 1900 MHz mixed-mode operation, the addition of GPRS-136HS 200 kHz RF carriers must be done in a way that is consistent with the existing non-mixed mode specification environment. Referring to the above analysis, the mixed-mode intra BTS intermodulation specifications become:

- For 30 kHz channel alone, the intermodulation products must be at least -60 dBc measured in a 30 kHz bandwidth relative to the 30 kHz channel carrier power measured in a 30 kHz bandwidth.

- For 200 kHz channel alone, the intermodulation products must be at least -60 dBc measured in a 200 kHz bandwidth relative to the 200 kHz carrier power measured in a 200 kHz bandwidth.

- For 30 kHz channel mixed with 200 kHz channel, two measurements must be made and both of the following limits satisfied*:*

  (a) All intermodulation products must be at least -60 dBc measured in a 30 kHz bandwidth relative to the 30 kHz channel carrier power measured in a 30 kHz bandwidth, and

(b) All intermodulation products must be at least -60 dBc measured in a 200 kHz bandwidth relative to the 200 kHz carrier power measured in a 200 kHz bandwidth.

The measurement of intermodulation products can be expressed in peak or average values, provided that they are expressed in the same parameters as the per carrier power.

In terms of their effect on adjacent band systems, these specifications imply no worse performance than existing non-mixed mode TIA/EIA-136 systems.

NOTE: A manufacturer, whose transmitters are to be used with another manufacturer's combining and isolation equipment, may choose to specify a different intermodulation performance for the transmitter itself with the understanding that the overall goal of 60 dB attenuation is to be achieved when all combining and isolation equipment is in place in a normal installation.

Impact on Performance

The following analysis examines the impact on performance of -60 dBc intra BTS intermodulation on 850 MHz and 1900 MHz mixed mode (while the calculations make use of absolute values for distance, the results are dependent upon relative geometry). See Figure T.2.1.

Figure T.2.1 Intra BTS intermodulation performance analysis.

The parameters are:

IMD **= -60 dBc (intra BTS intermodulation attentuation level).**

γ **= -38 (decade loss figure).**

$DCI = 10$ **dB (minimum C/I).**

$$DR = 10^{\frac{IMD+DCI}{\gamma}} = 20.7$$ **(distance ratio which will meet desired C/I given IMD).**

$R_1 + R_2 = 1000$ **m (maximum cell site radius).**

$$DR = \frac{R_2}{R_1}$$ **(base to coordinated mobile R_2 / interfering base to mobile R_1).**

$$R = (R_1 + R_2)\frac{DR}{1+DR} = 953.9$$ **m (R where C/I due to interfering base meets required minimum C/I).**

Because the distance to the interfering base station is small, the reduction in antenna gain has to be accounted for. An additional factor of 10 dB needs to be accounted for.

Therefore, the region below 10 dB is restricted to:

$ANT\_CORR = 10$ **dB (assumed antenna gain correction).**

$$DR = 10^{\frac{IMD+DCI-ANT\_CORR}{\gamma}} = 37.9$$

$$R = (R_1 + R_2)\frac{DR}{1+DR} = 974.3 \text{ m}$$

So in this case, it has been shown that only the last 2.6% of the range is potentially exposed.

$$\frac{R_1}{R_2} = 2.6\%$$

This is 0.07% of the area.

$$\left(\frac{R_1}{R_2}\right)^2 = 0.07\%$$

Where power control is used and when less than the maximum number of channels is operating, the actual IMD levels will be significantly reduced.

U.3 BTS Blocking and AM Suppression Characteristics

Blocking and AM suppression characteristics are closely related and must be examined together. The primary difference between the two is that the blocking test uses a CW tone while the AM suppression test uses a modulated signal.

U.3.1 Overview

U.3.1.1 TIA/EIA-136

TIA/EIA-136 specifications do not include BTS blocking or AM suppression specifications in the fashion of GSM 05.05. The closest equivalent is the protection against spurious response interference requirement (see TIA/EIA-136-280, §2.3.2.4). For this test, an interfering π/4 DQPSK modulated signal is injected into the system at -50 dBm along with a desired π/4 DQPSK modulated signal 3 dB above the receiver reference RF sensitivity. The ability of the BTS receiver to discriminate between these two signals is then determined.

U.3.1.2 ETSI GSM

In GSM 05.50, the approach for determining blocking requirements is to identify the minimum coupling loss for a particular scenario and then use the resulting signal level to define the blocking test.

U.3.2 Scenario - Mixed-Mode Multiple MS and BTS, Uncoordinated Close Proximity

Aside from the frequency bands, the main constraint is the separation of the uncoordinated MS and BTS. The extreme condition is the case where the MS is close to the uncoordinated BTS and far from its coordinated BTS.

The 850 MHz mixed-mode system is required to operate in the following frequency bands:

- 824 - 849 MHz: mobile transmit, base receive;
- 869 - 894 MHz: base transmit, mobile receive

The 1900 MHz mixed-mode system is required to operate in the following frequency bands:

- 1850 - 1910 MHz: mobile transmit, base receive;
- 1930 - 1990 MHz: base transmit, mobile receive

with a carrier spacing of 200 kHz for GPRS-136HS and 30 kHz for TIA/EIA-136. Also, portions of the existing Rx chain may be used.

Since TIA/EIA-136 specifications do not include BTS blocking and AM suppression specifications in the fashion of GSM 05.05, this scenario (see Figure **T**.3.1) will be used to generate these specifications for mixed-mode operation.

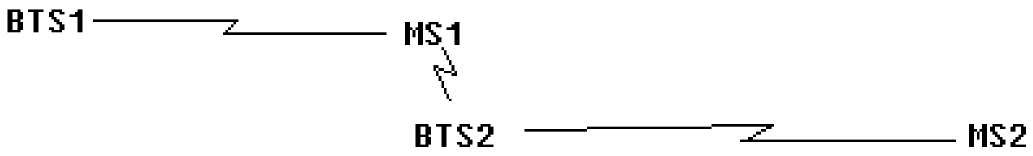


Figure T.3.1 Blocking and AM suppression.

U.3.3 Blocking Analysis

For this analysis, it is assumed that GPRS-136HS mobiles at 850 MHz and 1900 MHz will have similar "spectrum due to the modulation and wide band noise" (see GSM 05.05, §4.2.1) performance characteristics as their GSM 900 and DCS 1800 counterparts, respectively. Also, a 29 dBm mobile transmit power level is assumed at 850 MHz while a 30 dBm mobile transmit power level is assumed at 1900 MHz.

U.3.3.1 Definition

The receiver system noise floor of a GPRS-136HS channel is assumed to be -112 dBm. This is derived by the summation of kTB (-120 dBm) and NF (GSM 05.50 Annex A suggests NF value of 8 dB; however, current technology suggest a more appropriate number such as 4 dB for this analysis) of the system. Operationally, blocking is defined as the situation where a combination of MS noise, BTS noise, and BTS LO noise results in desensitization of the receiver by more than 3 dB. The LO noise performance is budgeted to contribute 0.5 dB to the desensitization. See Figure **T**.3.2.

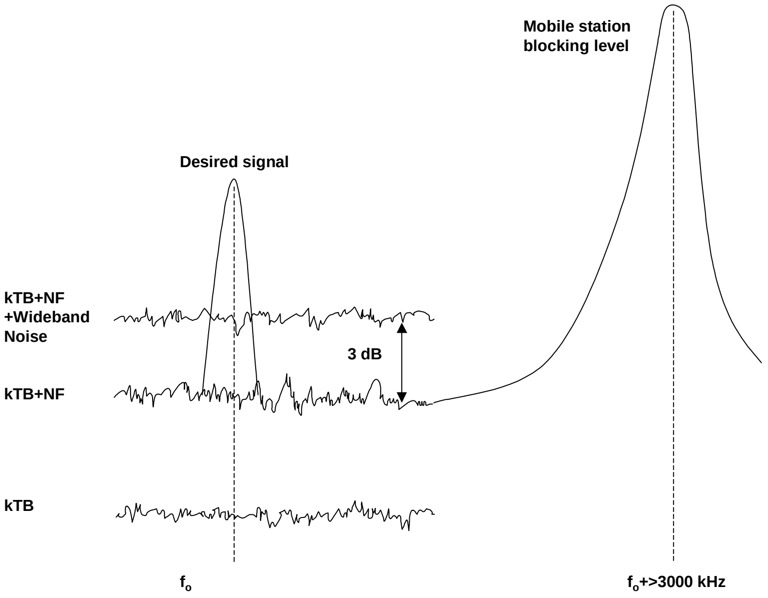


Figure T.3.2 Operational definition of blocking.

U.3.3.2 Calculation

- Step 1 - Receiver system noise floor

$$-112\ \text{dBm}$$

- Step 2 - Acceptable 850 MHz MS wideband noise in 200 kHz

$$MSN200 = 10\log_{10}\left[10^{\left(\frac{-112+3-0.5}{10}\right)} - 10^{\left(\frac{-112}{10}\right)}\right] = -113\ \text{dBm}$$

- Step 3 - Resulting BTS LO phase noise power for 0.5 dB degradation in BTS receiver sensitivity

$$LO = 10\log_{10}\left[10^{\left(\frac{-109}{10}\right)} - 10^{\left(\frac{MSN200}{10}\right)} - 10^{\left(\frac{-112}{10}\right)}\right] = -119\ \text{dBm}$$

- Step 4 - 850 MHz MS wideband noise in 100 kHz (i.e., MS wideband noise is measured using a 100 kHz filter)

$$MSN100 = MSN200 - 3 = -116\ \text{dBm}$$

- Step 5 - Calculate the Associated Blocking Tone Level (ABTL), given -114 dBm received noise level.

$$ABTL = MSN100 + 71 + 8 = -37\ \text{dBm}$$

where 71 dBc is relative to desired signal's carrier power in 30 kHz [for 850 MHz MS (≤ 33 dBm transmit power GSM 05.05 §4.2.1) wideband noise at ≥ 6000 kHz] and 8 dB is 30 kHz to 200 kHz conversion factor from GSM 05.50 §6.

To account for MS and BTS performance margins it is proposed that the blocking test level be increased to -33 dBm for the larger frequency offsets. In addition the same value will be applied to 1900 MHz mixed mode as well.

The reference sensitivity performance as specified in the above example shall be met when the following signals are simultaneously input to the receiver:

- a useful signal at frequency fo, 1 dB above the reference sensitivity level as specified in subclause 6.2 in GSM 05.05;
- a continuous, static sine wave signal at a level as in the table below and at a frequency (f) which is an integer multiple of 200 kHz.

U.3.4 AM Suppression Analysis

Since blocking and AM suppression characteristics are closely related, the analysis used in the previous section can be used to determine the AM suppression requirement.

Annex V:
LCS scenarios

V.1 Introduction

The purpose of the documents in this annex is to give background information about LCS requirements in GSM 05.05/05.10.

Section V.2 defines the worst case proximity scenario for the control mobile station of a TOA Type A LMU which is colocated at a BTS (a TOA Type A LMU is an LMU which is accessed over the normal GSM air interface as described in GSM 03.71).

Section V.3 discusses the TOA LMU (Type A and B) RF requirements as specified in Annex H.1.2 of GSM 05.05.

Section V.4 presents simulation results of TOA LMU performance as specified in Annex H.1.3 of GSM 05.05.

Section V.5 discusses the RIT measurement requirements for a TOA LMU as specified in Annex H.1.4.

Section V.6 presents simulation results of an E-OTD LMU and an E-OTD capable mobile station as specified in Annex H.2 and I of GSM 05.05, respectively.

Section V.7 discusses the relationship between BTS frequency source stability, location estimate accuracy and LMU update rates as described in Annex C of GSM 05.10.

Annex V.A gives background information about the channel models and system simulator parameters used for performance evaluation of mobile positioning methods.

Annex V.B gives simulation results about coexistence of EDGE and GSM modulated signals for E-OTD positioning.

V.2 TOA Type A LMU in a Co-Located Deployment

V.2.1 Constraints

Aside from the frequency bands, the main constraint is the physical separation of the Type A LMU and BTS. The extreme conditions are when the Type A LMU is close to or remote from the BTS.

V.2.2 Frequency Bands and Channel Arrangement (Section 2 of 05.05)

The system is required to operate in at least one of the following frequency bands

(a) PCS1900

- 1850-1910 MHz: LMU transmit, base receive;
- 1930 - 1990 MHz: base transmit, LMU receive;

with a carrier spacing of 200 kHz.

In order to ensure the compliance with the radio regulations outside the band, a guard band of 200 kHz between the edge of the band and the first carrier is needed at the bottom of each of the two subbands.

V.2.3 Proximity for DCS1800/PCS1900

Table V.1 shows the worst-case coupling-loss example that might be encountered in a colocated deployment.

Table V.1. Worst case proximity scenario for co-located deployment

Characteristic	**Value**
BTS height, H_b (m)	15
LMU OTA antenna height, H_m (m) [4]	3
Horizontal separation (m) [3]	6
BTS antenna gain, G_b (dB) [1]	10
BTS antenna gain, G'_b (dB) [2]	0
LMU OTA antenna gain, G_m (dB)	0
Path loss into building (dB)	
Cable/Connector Loss (dB)	2
Body Loss (dB)	N/A
Path loss – antenna gain (dB)	62.6

Notes: 1) Bore-sight gain

2) Gain in direction of LMU OTA antenna

3) Horizontal separation between LMU OTA antenna and BTS

4) The LMU OTA (Over The Air) antenna is the Rx/Tx antenna the Type A LMU is using to communicate with the GSM network ("control mobile station")

Path loss is assumed to be free space i.e. 38.0 + 20 log d(m) dB, where d is the length of the sloping line connecting the transmit and receive antennas.

These examples suggest that the worst (ie lowest) coupling loss is 62.6 dB. This is about 2.5 dB less than the minimum coupling loss (MCL) of 65 dB that is assumed for a standard MS – BTS configuration. The coupling loss is defined as that between the transmit and receive antenna connectors. To ensure that no degradation or saturation effects occur, the LMU OTA antenna should have appropriate attenuation added to its output such that the MCL is maintained at or above 65 dB.

V.2.4 Inputs needed

Working assumptions

Propagation model	Free space (up to [200] m maximum)

V.2.5 Conclusion

Colocating a TOA Type A LMU causes the current assumptions about minimum coupling loss between the BTS and the control mobile station of the LMU (OTA Rx/Tx antenna) to be violated by about 2.5 dB (in the worst case). This number is so low that no additional standardization is required. Appropriate attenuation should be added to its output port such that the MCL is maintained at or above 65 dB.

V.3 Discussion of TOA LMU RF Specification

V.3.1 Introduction

Two physical configurations of the uplink TOA (UL-TOA) location measurement unit (LMU) installation are expected; stand alone, and shared. A stand-alone LMU is defined as an LMU unit external to a GSM base station cabinet with its own set of antennas. This stand-alone unit may be co-located with a GSM base station, or deployed at a remote location. While this is the most desirable implementation from a performance and deployment flexibility standpoint, it is recognized that for aesthetic and economic reasons, an LMU which shares the existing base station antenna infrastructure may be required. This sharing can be accomplished for an LMU placed inside the base station cabinet, or for an LMU external to the cabinet.

To maintain the noise figure of the GSM base station when a stand-alone LMU is coupled into the BTS antenna, a remote LNA will be required at the antennas to compensate for the excess insertion loss introduced. If the LMU resides within the BTS cabinet, it is assumed that the coupling will occur within the RF distribution chain for the GSM TRX modules. For this case, the coupling will most likely occur after the duplexor and pre-amplification, and either side of the internal multi-couplers.

For either the external or internal coupling case, the LMU TOA receiver may be exposed to RF input signals, which are amplified to a level that is greater than that required to compensate for the losses incurred in the system. This has a twofold effect; 1) it will improve the system input sensitivity, and 2) it will increase the input power level of in-band and out-of-band interference and blocking sources. These two effects combined will result in an increase in the required dynamic range of the TOA receiver, resulting in increased implementation complexity and cost. Proposed here is a simple method of maintaining the stand- alone LMU TOA receiver sensitivity and dynamic range when configured with a shared antenna configuration.

The solution suggested, takes advantage of the fact that the front end gain block can set the system noise figure (and hence sensitivity of the LMU) if there is sufficient gain in the block to overcome all of the losses that occur between the gain block and the LMU front end. It will be shown, that for a given LNA noise figure, there is a unique excess gain allowed, at the input to the LMU, which results in no change to the LMU input sensitivity for a shared unit versus a stand alone unit. Simultaneously, for reasonable LMU and LNA receiver design parameters, this excess gain is small enough to not significantly change the design requirements for the upper end of the stand-alone LMU receiver dynamic range.

V.3.2 Analysis Model

Figure V.3.1 illustrates the block diagram for a generic (coupling either internal or external to the BTS cabinet) shared antenna installation. In this figure, the gain element is represented by the block containing GainLNA/NFLNA. After this gain block is a coupling element which divides the input signal into the BTS and LMU paths. The coupling ratio of this element should be determined based on the excess gain available to the LMU as described below. Should the coupling ratio not be sufficient to "pad" the input RF signal into the LMU to an acceptable level, then an in-line attenuator can be inserted between the coupling device and LMU.

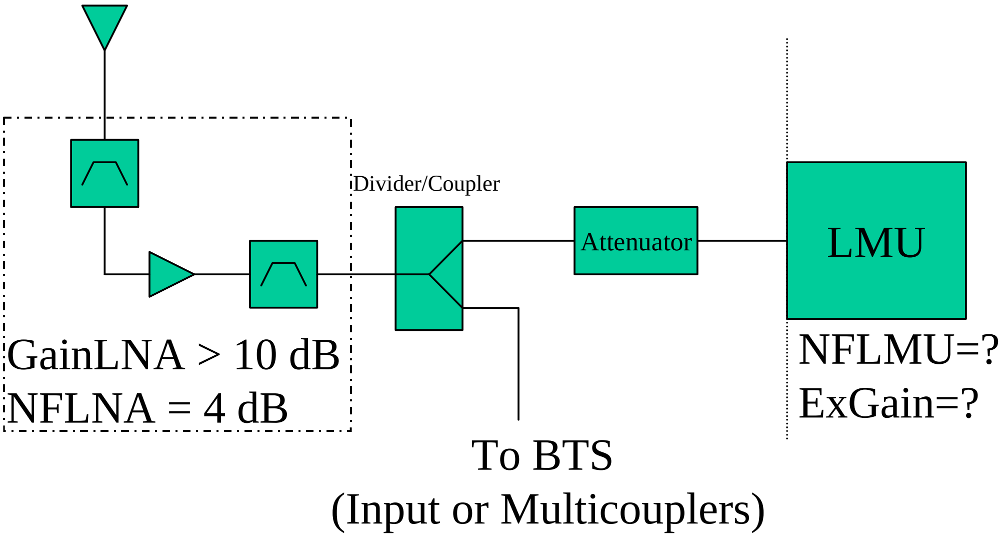


Figure V.3.31. Analysis Block Diagram

V.3.3 Results

Figure V.3.2 illustrates the excess gain allowed, at the LMU receiver input, which results in a minimal degradation of the stand alone LMU input noise figure, when the LNA noise figure is 4 dB. As shown, an LMU receiver with an input noise figure of 6 dB can tolerate an excess gain of 4 dB before any change in the receiver sensitivity is seen. For this configuration, an excess gain of 6 dB would result in an improvement in the receiver sensitivity of 2 dB, while at the same time requiring that the receiver high power RF input characteristics (blocking, inter-modulation, AM suppression) be designed with a minimum margin of 6 dB. For an LMU receiver with a 5 dB noise figure, 6 dB of excess gain at the input will have no effect on the receiver sensitivity performance, while requiring a 6 dB increase in the high RF input power receiver characteristic margins. However, if the LMU noise figure is 8 dB, then a 6 dB excess gain at the input will result in a 4 dB increase in receiver sensitivity and a minimum 6 dB increase in the margin required for the high power RF input characteristics.

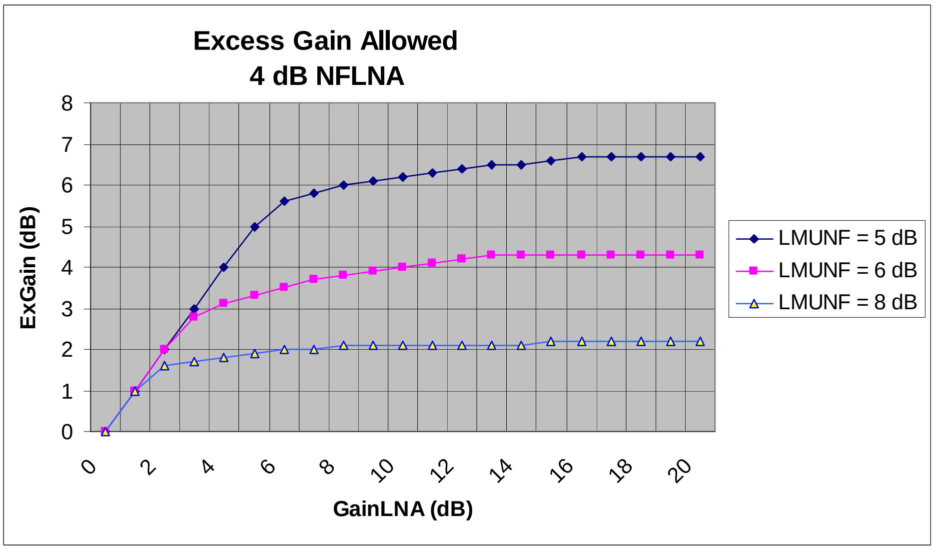


Figure V.3.32. Excess Gain allowable versus Input LNA gain for various LMU noise figure values.

V.3.4 Conclusions

The analysis performed, shows that for a stand alone LMU receiver, with a noise figure between 5 dB and 8 dB, preceded by an LNA block, with a noise figure of 4 dB, an excess gain at the LMU input of 6 dB can be tolerated with minimal impact to the receiver design. The net effect of adding an LNA block in front of the LMU TOA receiver is to amplify the desired and interference input RF signals by the same amount. It is therefore proposed that the carrier power requirement for Blocking, Inter-modulation, and AM suppression be 9 dB (3 dB + 6 dB) above the reference sensitivity, and that the interference power levels be increased by 6 dB over those specified in Section 5.1 of GSM 05.05 for a normal BTS. By specifying the interference environment and carrier power levels in this way, the effect on the cost and complexity of the radio hardware design suggests that the specified sensitivity, blocking, AM suppression, and inter-modulation requirements can be met with a single radio architecture for stand alone and shared antenna LMU applications.

V.4 Simulation results for TOA–LMU performance

V.4.1 Introduction and requirements

The Uplink Time−of−Arrival (TOA) positioning method requires Location Measurement Units (LMUs) to accurately measure the TOA of signals transmitted by an MS upon request (see GSM 03.71). Typically, LMUs are colocated at BTS sites. The main task of a TOA–LMU is to capture the bursts from the MS and estimate a TOA value relative to the LMUs internal time base. To calculate the MS position, TOA measurements from at least three (3) LMUs are required. To avoid situations with poor measurement geometry and to combat low SNR, it may be preferable to use more LMUs for measurement. In cellular systems of today, the Carrier–to–Interference ratio (*C/I*) to distant BTSs (LMUs) is typically low.

Figures V.4.1 and V.4.2 show the *C/(I+N)* distribution for the first 6 measurement links for the Bad Urban and Rural environment, respectively. The system simulation parameters are as follows (see Annex V.A):

Parameter	Value
Receiver Noise	-118 dBm
Adjacent Channel Attenuation	18 dB
Frequency Plan	3/9
Antenna Gain (Sector)	17.5 dB
MS Peak Power	0.8 W
Frequency Band	900 MHz
Handover Margin	3 dB
Log-Normal Fading	6 dB
Lognormal Correlation Distance	110 m
Inter-BS Lognormal Fading Correlation	0
Base Station Antenna Height	30 m
MS Antenna Height	1.5 m
Distance between BS Bad Urban: Rural:	 1500 m 30000 m
Channel Utilization Bad Urban: Rural:	 80% 40%

At the 10th percentile, 3 measurement links can be found with a *C/(I+N)* greater than about 0 dB. To allow TOA measurements performed at up to 5 LMUs, TOA measurements at *C/(I+N)* of less than −10 dB shall be possible (at the 10th percentile). At the 3rd percentile, the necessary *C/(I+N)* requirement for up to 5 LMUs is −13 dB.

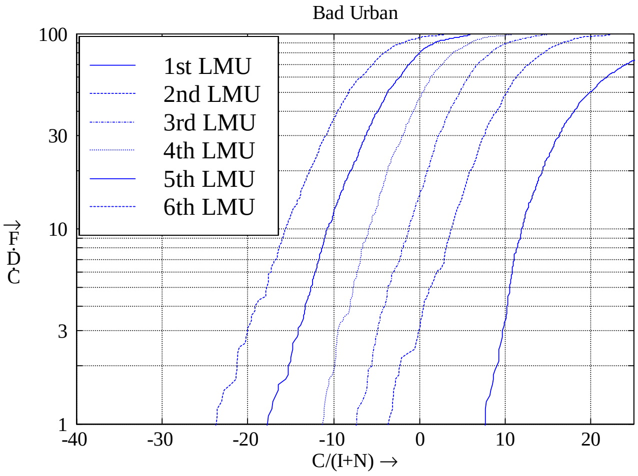


Figure V.4.1. ***C/(I+N)*** **distribution in Bad Urban environment.**

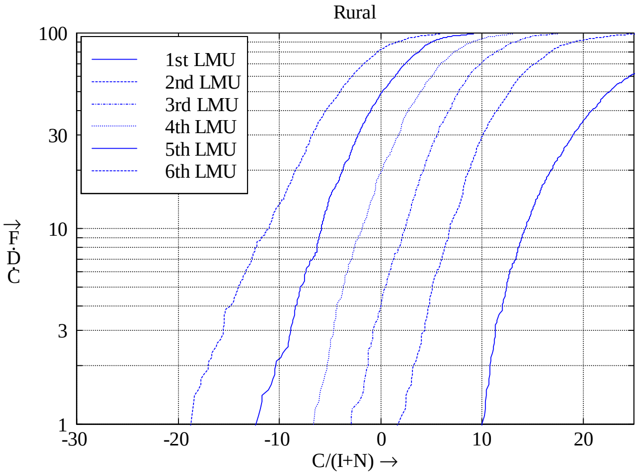


Figure V.4.2. ***C/(I+N)*** **distribution in Rural environment.**

Positioning accuracy in a cellular system depend on a number of factors. The most important ones are:

- **Measurement Geometry**. The location of the LMUs and the MS will influence the accuracy of the position fix, due to the phenomenon called Geometric Dilution of Precision (GDOP).
- **Number of Measuring LMUs**. Increasing the number of measuring LMUs yields in general better accuracy.
- **TOA Measurement Accuracy**. TOA measurement accuracy depends on SNR, propagation environment (multipath), etc.

Figure V.4.3 shows the Circular Error Probability (CEP) (*i.e.* the probability of locating the MS within a circle of radius *r* ("CEP-radius")) for different number of LMUs, for different accuracies of the TOA estimate and for different CEP radii. The assumption were as follows:

- Hexagonal arrangement of LMUs in a cellular network.
- The TOA measurement errors are assumed to be Gaussian distributed with standard deviation σ_r , which is equal for each measurement link. σ_r={0.17, 0.33, 0.5, 0.67} [µs] which corresponds to σ_r = {50, 100, 150, 200 } [m] as shown in the figure legend of Figure V.4.3.
- 4 different CEP radii are evaluated in Figure V.4.3: 50m 100m, 150m and 300m (shown in the title of each figure).

From FigureV.4.3 (upper right) one can see, that in order to locate a MS within a radius of 100 m in 67% of the cases, 5 LMUs are required with a TOA estimation standard deviation of about 100 m for each measurement link. To locate 95% of the MSs within 300 m, 3-4 LMUs are required with TOA estimation accuracy of 100m (lower right figure).

NOTE: Positioning performance is determined from a multitude of individual links each with distinct operating point (C/I and E_b/N_0), shadow fading, and multipath dispersion. These random parameters, the random delay estimates corresponding to unique realizations of noise and interference, plus the unique solution geometry for any mobile location chosen in the service area mean there is not a straightforward, systematic way to relate average position location performance to individual link performance. The analysis above is only valid under the given assumptions. In reality, the TOA measurement accuracy will vary considerably between the different LMUs. For example, the LMU co-located with the serving BTS will always have a better TOA estimation accuracy than the neighbour links. However, under the assumptions above, the FiguresV.4.3 give some indication of the required TOA estimation accuracy. The TOA estimation accuracy should be about 100 m per link if 5 LMUs are used in order to obtain 100 m (67%) and 300m (95%) positioning accuracy.

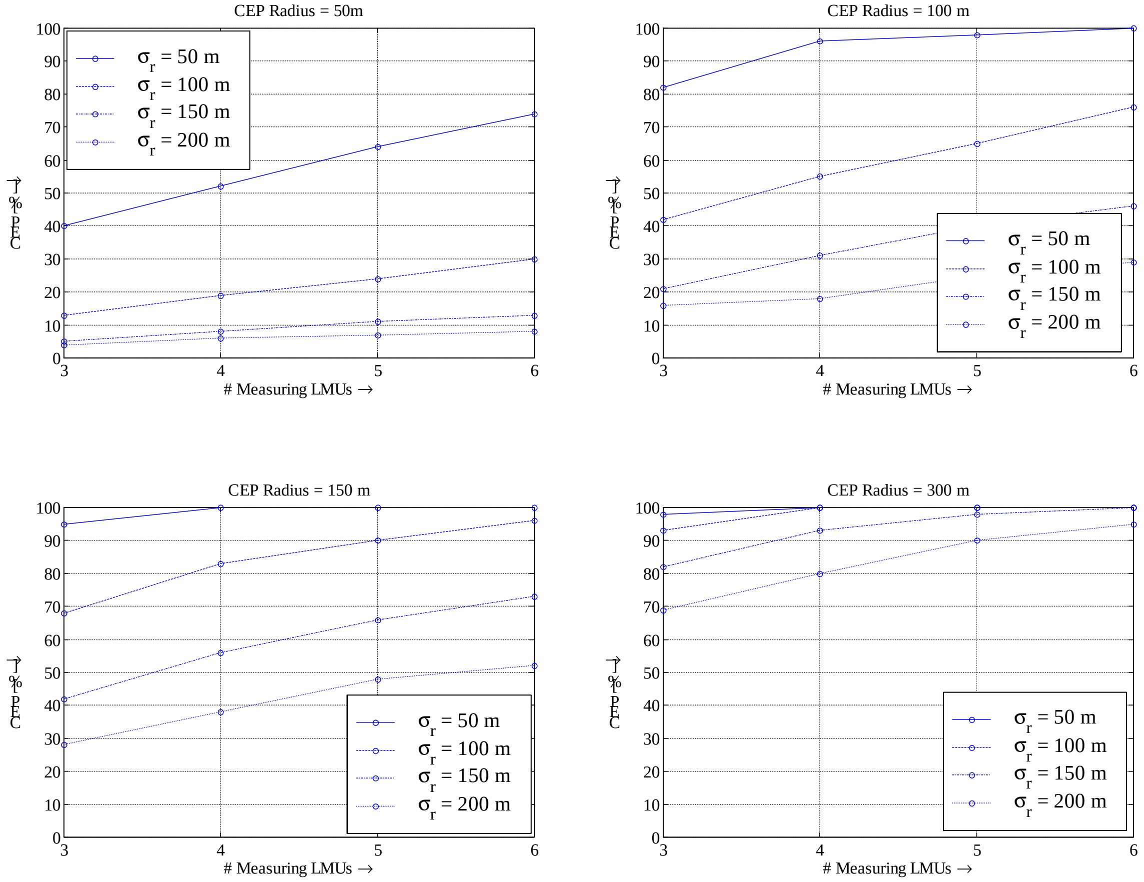


Figure V.4.3. Circular Error probability for various CEP radii.

V.4.2 Simulation model

All simulations are based on floating point calculations in all parts of the transmission chain. No quantization effects are taken into account. In order to cover the performance of a real receiver an additional implementation margin of three (3) dB shall be allowed. This means, that a simulated value at –12 dB C/I corresponds to the performance of a real LMU at –9 dB C/I. Taking a reasonable noise figure (8 dB) into account, a simulated value of –16 dB E_b/N_0 corresponds to the performance of a real LMU at –13 dB E_b/N_0 which corresponds to the reference sensitivity input level of the LMU as defined in GSM 05.05 (Annex H.1, Table H.1.1).

- The carrier signal consists of GMSK modulated Random Access Bursts. The duration of the carrier signal is 320 ms. The Access Bursts occur once every TDMA frame in a 26-frame multiframe, except in frame number 12 and 25.

- The access bursts contain 36 encrypted bits, which include the handover reference number and (indirectly) the BSIC of the base station to which the handover is intended. The handover reference number and the BSIC is made known to the LMU(GSM 04.71). Therefore, the whole Access Burst is used for TOA estimation (and not only the training sequence).

- The measurement accuracy is the root–mean–square error (90%) as defined in GSM 05.05 (Annex H.1.3.1). A total number of 1000 measurement trials are performed.
  NOTE: The RMS_{90} criterion has been chosen here because it is less sensitive to occasional large outliers in the TOA estimate. For a limited number of test iterations, the measured RMS_{90} error converges more quickly to the true RMS_{90} error than the 100% RMS error because infrequent large outliers do not influence the statistic.

- The LMU uses a correlation search window of 20 bit periods (GSM 04.71), as defined in GSM 05.05 (Annex H.1.3.1).

- The true time of arrival is uniformly distributed within the correlation search window for each measurement trial.
  NOTE: This is necessary in order to randomize the sampling instant at the LMU and therefore, to avoid sampling the correlation function always close to its maximum value.

- The interfering signal consists of GMSK modulated normal bursts. The training sequence is chosen randomly from the 8 possible normal bursts training sequences, but kept fixed during one 320 ms measurement trial.

- The time offset between the carrier and the interferer signal is uniformly distributed between 0 and 156.25 bit periods, but fixed during one 320 ms measurement trial, as defined in GSM 05.05 (Annex H.1.3.2).
  NOTE: At very low *C/I* values, the cross correlation between the carrier training sequence and interfering training sequence is not negligible. Therefore, it is necessary to define this measurement scenario.

V.4.3 Assumed TOA estimation algorithm

The used TOA estimation algorithm performs first a correlation of the received bursts with the expected sequence and second an incoherent integration of the correlation results in order to find the maximum value of the correlation. The correlation result is interpolated to give the desired resolution. A multipath rejection algorithm is applied which exploits the fading of the multipath channel.

V.4.4 Simulation results

V.4.4.1 Sensitivity performance

Figure V.4.4 shows the root–mean–square error (RMSE_{90}) of the estimated TOA (in µs) at the LMU as function of E_b/N_0 in an AWGN channel. Above a certain E_b/N_0 , the TOA estimation error decreases exponentially with increasing E_b/N_0 Below a certain E_b/N_0 value, the TOA error increases rapidly, because the bursts are less likely to be detected. The TOA error is then uniformly distributed within the correlation search window. The detection threshold is around –20 dB E_b/N_0. The Figure V.4.5 shows the corresponding result in a flat Rayleigh fading channel, with perfect decorrelation between the bursts.

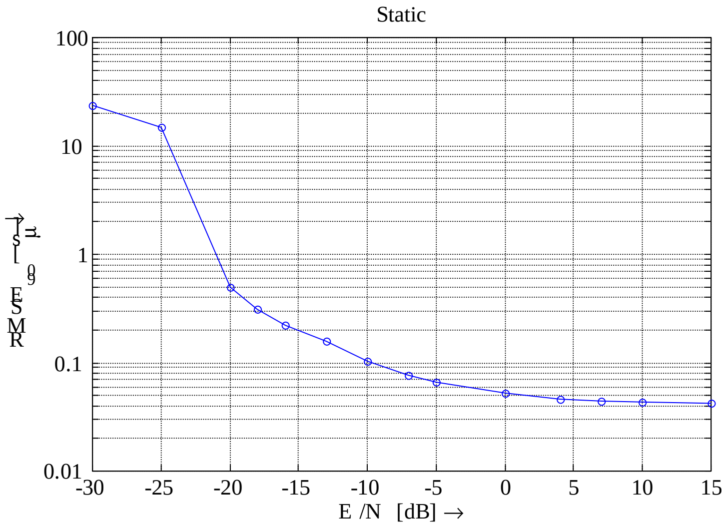


Figure V.4.4. TOA estimation error (in µs) as function of E_b/N_0 in a static channel.

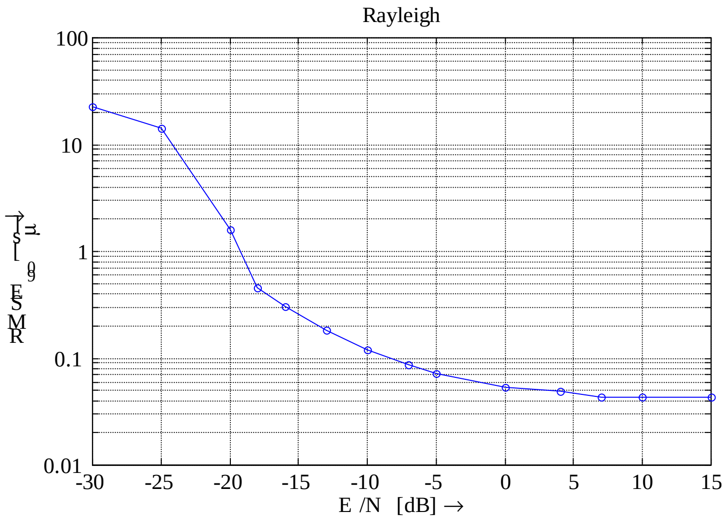


Figure V.4.5. TOA estimation error (in µs) as function of E_b/N_0 in a flat Rayleigh fading channel.

V.4.4.2 Interference performance

Figures V.4.6 and V.4.7 show the TOA estimation performance as function of the carrier–to–interference ratio (*C/I*) is a static channel and in a flat Rayleigh fading channel, respectively (E_b/N_0=28 dB (according to GSM 05.05 (Annex H.1.3.2)).

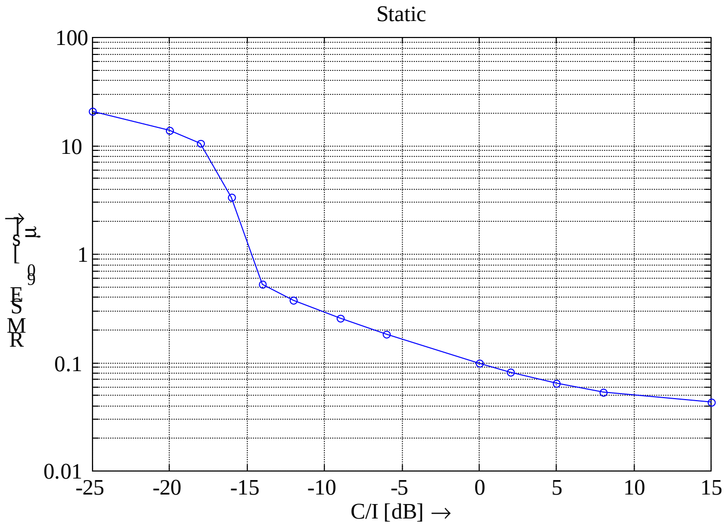


Figure V.4.6. TOA estimation error (in µs) as function of *C/I* in a static channel.

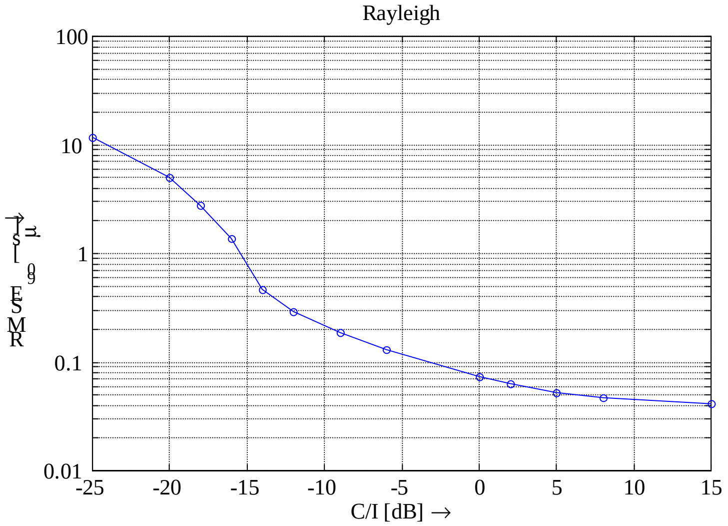


Figure V.4.7. TOA estimation error (in µs) as function of *C/I* in a flat Rayleigh fading channel.

V.4.4.3 Multipath performance

Figure V.4.8 shows the performance of the TOA LMU in a multipath propagation channel. The channel profile is the typical urban channel (TU, 12 tap setting), as specified in Annex C of GSM 05.05. The MS speed is assumed to be 3 km/h and ideal FH is assumed (according to GSM 05.05, Annex H.1.3.3)

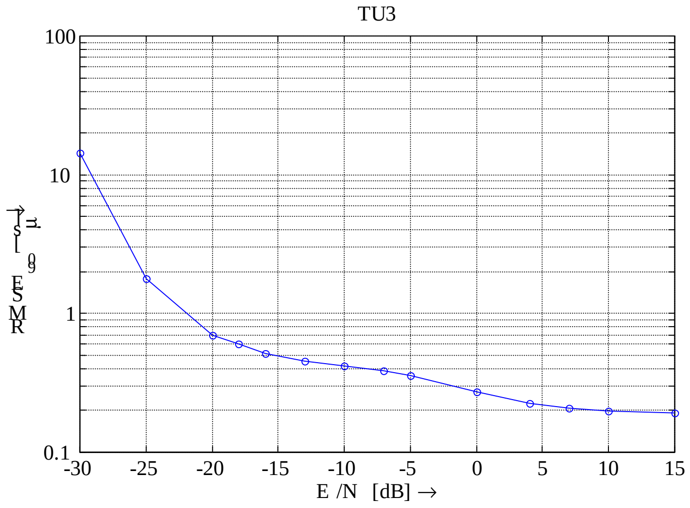


Figure V.4.8. TOA estimation error (in µs) as function of E_b/N_0 in a TU3 channel.

NOTE: The purpose of the multipath test case in GSM 05.05 (Annex H.1.3.3) is only to guarantee that the LMU is able to handle multipath errors. For comparison, if the TOA estimate at the LMU would be determined without any multipath rejection mechanism (*i.e.* determine the maximum in the correlation only) the results shown in Figure V.4.9 would be obtained. In that case, the TOA estimation error will not decrease with increasing SNR and the estimated TOA will be the mean excess delay of the channel profile. The channel models defined in GSM 05.05 (Annex C) have only been chosen here to simplify testing of LMUs. For evaluation of positioning systems, more complex channel models have been developed, which are described in Annex V.A.

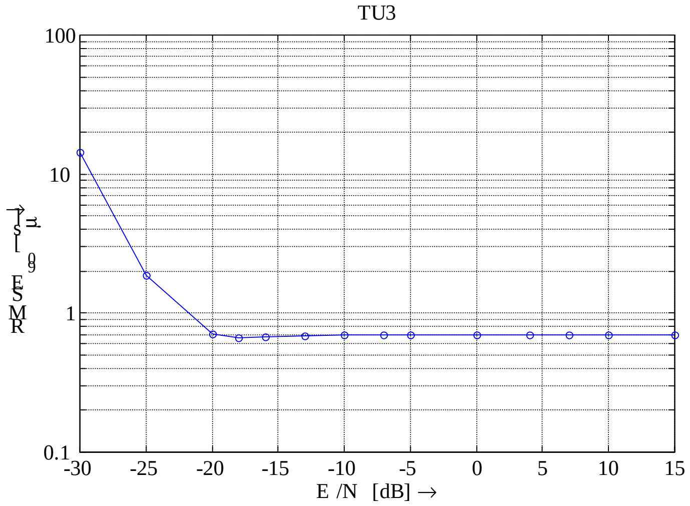


Figure V.4.9. TOA estimation error (in μs) as function of E_b/N_0 in a TU3 channel without multipath rejection.

V.4.4.4 Positioning Performance

Assumptions:

- Evaluation using channel models and system simulation techniques according to Annex V.A
- Measurement signal: 70 handover access bursts (41 bit training sequence) measured with diversity during 0.32 seconds (resulting in 140 bursts processed)
- Frequency hopping over 4 frequencies
- Two antennas used for reception
- Frequency plan 3/9
- 3, 5 or 7 location measurement units were ordered to measure. All units were able to perform the measurements, i.e. no blocking has been considered.
- 250 Monte-Carlo runs
- Perfect time stamping (knowledge of "RTD" between different TOA units)

Simulation Results:

Environment	MS speed [km/h]	Perc. at 125m [%]	Error at 67% [m]	Error at 90% [m]	RMSE of 90% [m]	Number of LMUs
Urban A	**3**	**51**	**221**	**>500**	**238**	**3**
		79	**97**	**173**	**82**	**5**
		85	**83**	**139**	**70**	**7**
Urban A	**50**	**59**	**181**	**>500**	**192**	**3**
		86	**79**	**146**	**66**	**5**
		91	**60**	**113**	**53**	**7**
Urban B	**3**	**64**	**133**	**313**	**114**	**3**
		95	**56**	**88**	**45**	**5**
		98	**43**	**67**	**35**	**7**
Urban B	**50**	**76**	**89**	**270**	**88**	**3**
		97	**40**	**74**	**34**	**5**
		98	**29**	**57**	**25**	**7**
Suburban	**3**	**80**	**93**	**225**	**85**	**3**
		99	**49**	**75**	**40**	**5**
		99	**40**	**61**	**33**	**7**
Suburban	**50**	**83**	**82**	**178**	**75**	**3**
		99	**42**	**69**	**35**	**5**
		99	**31**	**53**	**27**	**7**
Rural	**3**	**81**	**80**	**205**	**72**	**3**
		99	**36**	**61**	**30**	**5**
		99	**30**	**52**	**25**	**7**
Rural	**100**	**87**	**63**	**146**	**54**	**3**
		99	**29**	**50**	**24**	**5**
		99	**24**	**36**	**19**	**7**

V.5 Discussion of RIT measurement performance of TOA LMU

For Uplink-TOA, the LMU is required to perform Radio Interface Timing (RIT) measurements to associate GSM time for a BTS to the time base the LMU is using (i.e. GPS time) (GSM 04.71). This RIT measurement allows the SMLC to calculate for each TOA measuring LMU a correlation search window which contains the correlation peak corresponding to the propagation delay of the mobiles signal. The width of this correlation search window is established by the maximum range ambiguity from the mobile to each LMU plus additional system errors. The range ambiguity arrises because the location of the mobile prior to the location measurement is known only to within the serving cell or sector plus Timing Advance (TA) radius. Additional ambiguity is introduced from Timing Advance errors, BTS and LMU location errors, MS transmitt timing uncertainties and RIT measurement errors. An RIT measurement error up to +/- 2 bits is typically a minor component of the overall ambiguity and does not impact the performance of the Uplink TOA location system.

V.6 Simulations Results for E-OTD LMUs and E-OTD Capable MSs

V.6.1 Introduction

E-OTD LMUs' and E-OTD MSs measurement performance are specified in GSM 05.05 annex H.2 and I, respectively. The object of this section is to give some justification for the figures found in the requirements in 05.05.

First, a presentation of the simulation results for E-OTD measurement accuracy is given. The simulations show the E-OTD accuracy achieved for the configurations used in GSM 05.05. Secondly, simulation results for the overall location accuracy achieved in an idealised network are also provided.

There are equal requirements for an E-OTD LMU and an E-OTD capable MS. Hence, the simulation results apply to both.

V.6.2 E-OTD Measurement Accuracy

The downlink E-OTD positioning method requires the mobile to measure the time of arrival of bursts received on the BCCH of neighbor sites relative to a reference (or serving) site. Since a position calculation requires measurements from at least three sites, the caller is positioned by measuring the time of arrival of multiple GSM bursts transmitted on the Broadcast Control Channel (BCCH) from at least three sites on the cell plan. The simulations in this report only cover GMSK modulated bursts. In EDGE, it is allowed to have 8-PSK modulated bursts on the BCCH carrier (on time slots 1-7). Annex V.B gives a presentation of the probability of distinguishing 8-PSK modulated bursts from GMSK modulated bursts.

For more detailed information about the E-OTD location method, see GSM 03.71 Annex C.

V.6.2.1 Sensitivity Performance

The been performed in the following way based on the requirements in GSM 05.05

- GMSK modulated normal bursts (TSC #0) have been used for E-OTD measurement.
- The E-OTD MS receives a reference BCCH carrier with a power level of 20 dB above the reference sensitivity level of –102 dBm.
- The E-OTD MS receives a neighbour BCCH carrier with power levels in the range of –8 to 20 dB relative the reference sensitivity level of –102 dBm.
- The channel is static, remaining at a constant signal level throughout the measurements.

- The E-OTD Mobile Station receives twenty-six GMSK modulated normal bursts from the reference site, and twenty-six GMSK modulated normal bursts from the neighbour site.

- The E-OTD Mobile Station uses a correlation search window of 9 bit periods, i.e., it searches within +/-4 bit periods of the actual location of the training sequence. This corresponds to measurement uncertainty of +/- 14.76 µs (or +/- 4.4 km).

- The E-OTD measurement algorithm was implemented using multipath rejection with no measurement weighting.

- The measurement accuracy of the E-OTD Mobile Station is defined as the RMS value of 90% of the measurements that result in the least E-OTD error, according to annex I.2.1 of GSM 05.05.

- N=300 trials were used to determine the measurement error.

- A SNR of 0 dB is assumed at an input power level of –110 dBm.

The simulation results are shown in Figure V.6.1.

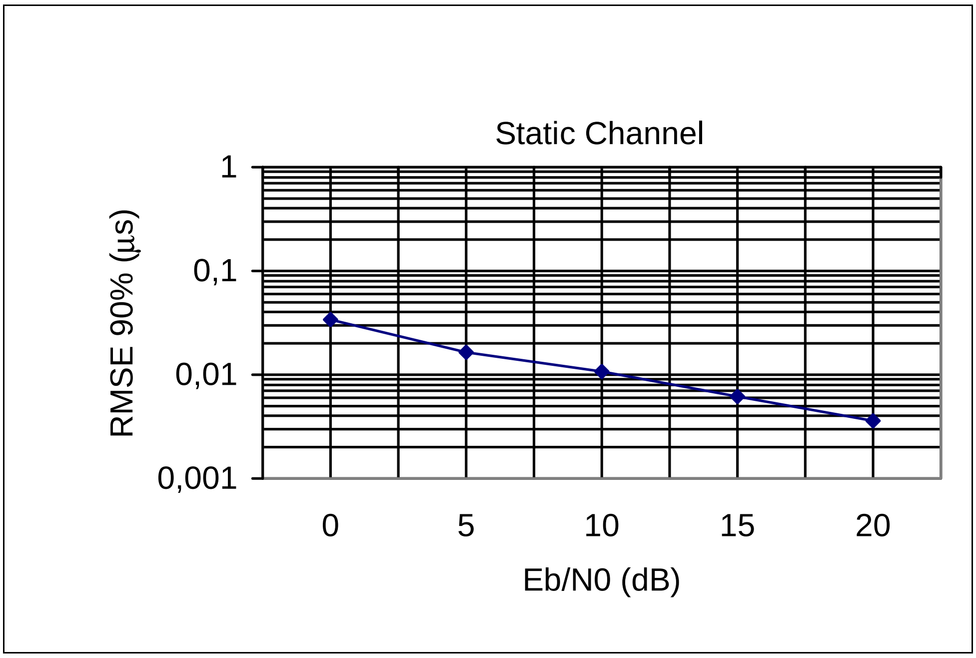


Figure V.6.1 E-OTD Mobile Station measurement accuracy in the static channel.

V.6.2.2 Interference Performance

For interference simulations, conditions are for the static channel case, but the neighbour BCCH carrier is now fixed at a power level of –82 dBm and has one of the following interfering channels:

Interfering channel	C/I Simulation range [dB]
Co-channel interference	0 → 10
Adjacent channel interference: 200 kHz	-18 → -8
Adjacent channel interference: 400 kHz	-41 → -39

The simulation results are shown in Figures V.6.2 to V.6.4

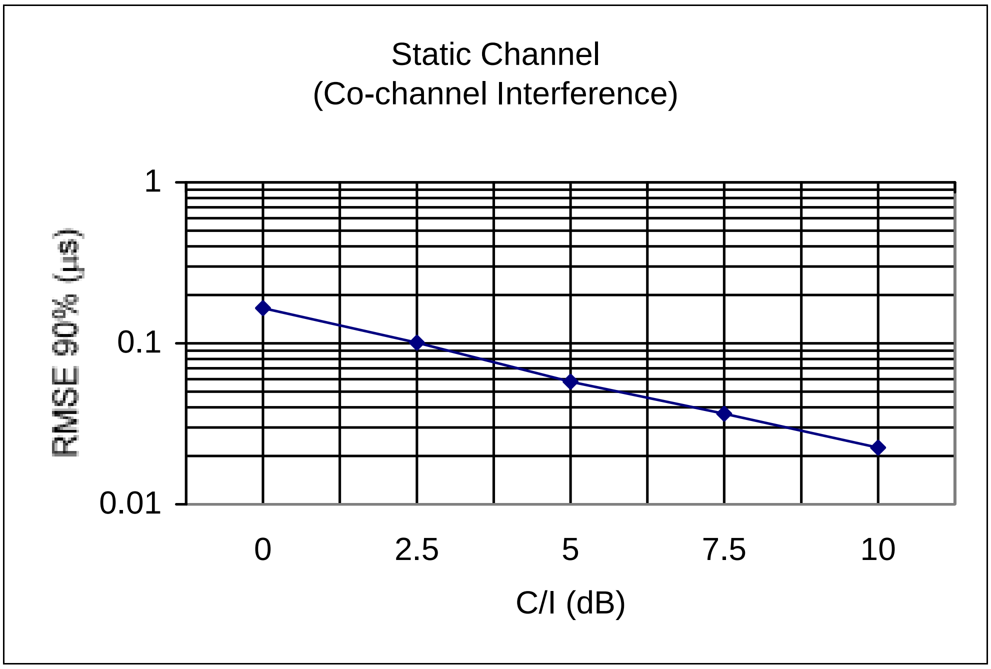


Figure V.6.2. E-OTD Mobile Station measurement accuracy in the static channel in the presence of co-channel interference.

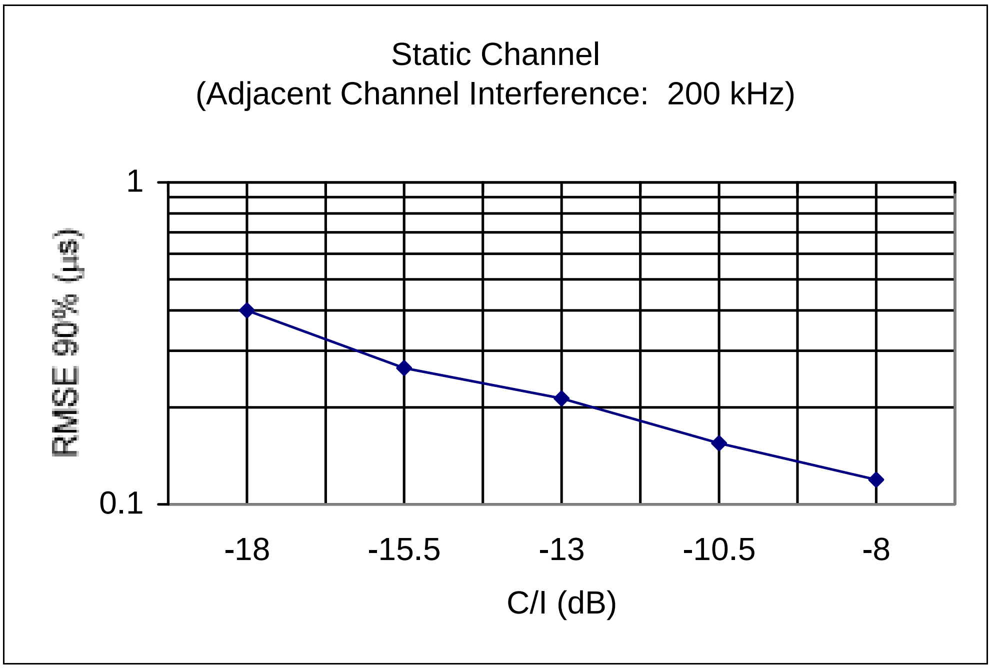


Figure V.6.3 E-OTD Mobile Station accuracy in the static channel in the presence of adjacent channel interference.

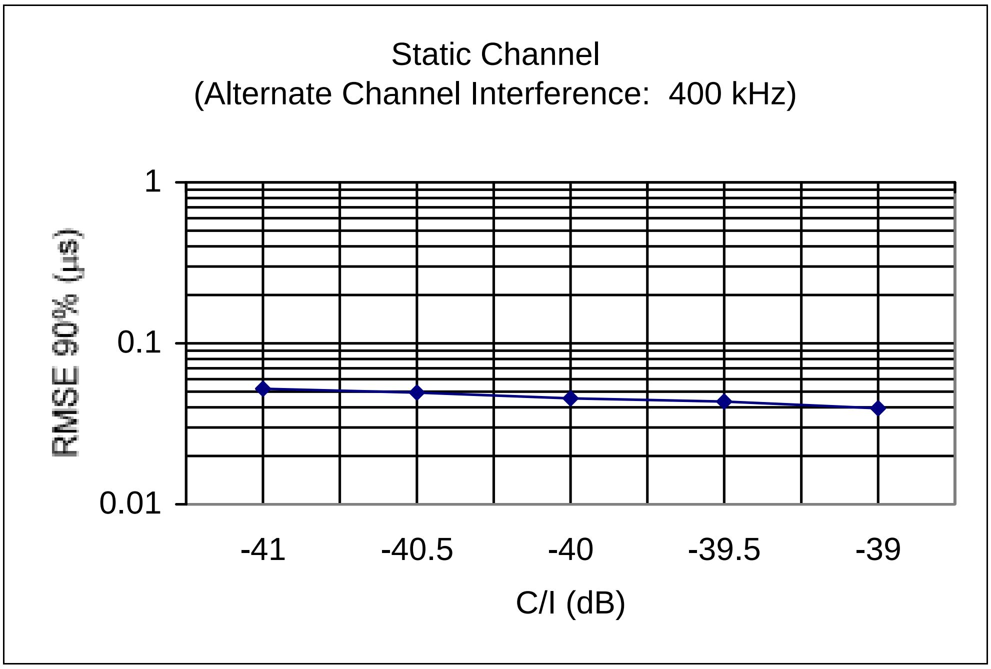


Figure V.6.4 E-OTD Mobile Station accuracy in the static channel in the presence of alternate channel interference.

V.6.2.3 Multipath performance

For multipath simulations, conditions are for the static channel case, but the neighbour BCCH carrier now propagates through the TU3 channel. Results are shown in Figure V.6.5.

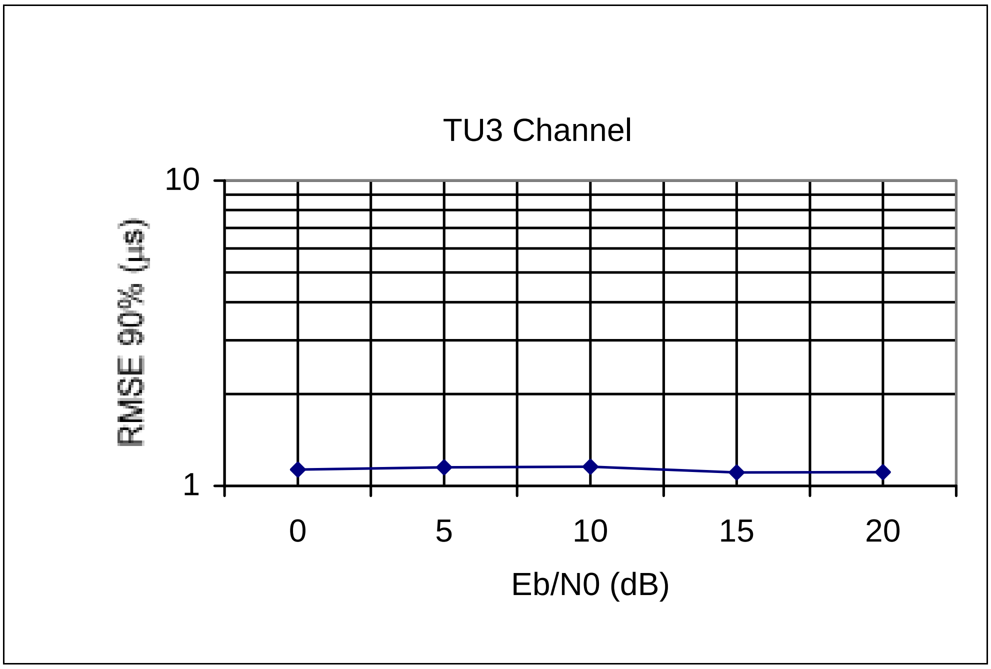


Figure V.6.5 E-OTD Mobile Station accuracy in the TU3 channel.

NOTE: The purpose of the multipath test case in GSM 05.05 is only to guarantee that the LMU and MS are able to handle multipath errors. The channel models defined in GSM 05.05 (Annex C) have only been chosen here to simplify testing of LMUs and MSs. For evaluation of positioning systems, more complex channel models have been developed, which are described in Annex V.A.

V.6.3 Location accuracy

This section aims to give a presentation of simulated location accuracy with the simulation results shown in the previous section.

NOTE: Positioning performance is determined from a multitude of individual links each with distinct operating point (C/I and E_b/N_0), shadow fading, and multipath dispersion. These random parameters, the random delay estimates corresponding to unique realisations of noise and interference, plus the unique solution geometry for any mobile location chosen in the service area mean there is not a straightforward, systematic way to relate average position location performance to individual link performance. The analysis above is only valid under the given assumptions.

V.6.3.1 Network parameters

Thirty-six base stations were arranged in a uniform 6 x 6 pattern over the simulation area and assigned to the 4/12-frequency plan. This frequency plan is defined as having three (120°) sectors per site and four sites per cluster, for a total of 108 sites on the cell plan. It is configured such that the same sector of every other site is a co-channel interferer. The distance between adjacent base stations was defined according to the assigned multipath channel, in accordance with Annex V.A.

Two hundred fifty mobile stations were randomly placed over the entire simulation area. In order to simulate an infinite network (and thereby avoid edge effects), the simulation area was wrapped around so that base stations always surrounded every mobile, even those located at the edge. This technique circumvented the problem of having a mobile at the edge experience less interference than one located in the geometrical centre of the simulation area. This wrap-around technique permits a mobile that is making measurement on the BCCH of a site located on the northwest border to experience interference from co-channel sites located on the southeast border.

The following gives a summary of the simulation assumptions/parameters have been used to simulate the network:

PARAMETER	**VALUE USED**
Number of mobiles	250
Cell geometry	Uniform hexagonal
Frequency plan	4/12
Maximum gain of transmitting antenna	17 dBi
Lognormal correlation distance	110 m
Carrier frequency	900 MHz
Channel speeds	3, 50 km/h
Number of BTS'	36 (wrap-around technique used to avoid edge effects)
Maximum number of bursts measured	26
Standard deviation of lognormal fading	6 dB
BTS receiver antenna diversity	2 antennas, 6 m apart

ENVIRONMENT	**CELL RADIUS [M]**	**PATH LOSS AT 1 KM AND 900 MHZ [DB]**

Urban A	500	126
Urban B	500	126
Suburban	1500	116
Rural	10,000	98

Only the MS E-OTD measurement accuracy has been taken into account in the simulations. Perfect knowledge of RTD values is assumed. The channel models used are the ones defined in Annex V.A.

A least squares (LS) method has been used to calculate the position of the MS.

V.6.3.2 Simulation results

Table V.6.1 summarises the results for the different channel models.

Environment	MS speed [km/h]	Perc. at 125 m [%]	Perc. at 50 m [%]	67 % [m]	90% [M]	95% [m]	RMSE of 90% [m]	Number of Meas. units[1]
Urban A	3	**41**	**11**	**273**	**>500**	**>500**	**242**	**3**
		49	**13**	**169**	**307**	**422**	**145**	**5**
		55	**14**	**149**	**276**	**349**	**129**	**7**
Urban A	**50**	**43**	**12**	**220**	**>500**	**>500**	**208**	**3**
		55	**17**	**160**	**292**	**406**	**136**	**5**
		57	**13**	**146**	**255**	**340**	**126**	**7**
Urban B	**3**	**54**	**15**	**159**	**394**	**>500**	**145**	**3**
		78	**32**	**104**	**173**	**239**	**86**	**5**
		82	**33**	**90**	**154**	**209**	**76**	**7**
Urban B	**50**	**60**	**25**	**144**	**461**	**>500**	**153**	**3**
		80	**37**	**84**	**160**	**196**	**77**	**5**
		89	**45**	**79**	**126**	**165**	**65**	**7**
Suburban	**3**	**72**	**27**	**112**	**346**	**>500**	**108**	**3**
		92	**48**	**68**	**118**	**138**	**58**	**5**
		97	**57**	**57**	**84**	**101**	**48**	**7**
Suburban	**50**	**76**	**36**	**93**	**560**	**>500**	**116**	**3**
		95	**59**	**55**	**100**	**122**	**47**	**5**
		100	**68**	**49**	**71**	**79**	**41**	**7**
Rural	**3**	**75**	**28**	**99**	**416**	**>500**	**110**	**3**
		98	**49**	**64**	**101**	**116**	**53**	**5**
		100	**63**	**54**	**88**	**100**	**46**	**7**

---

[1] The number of measured units is the number of BTSs the MS has measured. 3 measured units means that the MS has measured the 3 strongest BTSs.

Rural	50	79	38	93	360	>500	95	3
		98	59	54	85	98	46	5
		100	68	48	72	82	41	7

Table V.6.1 Location accuracy simulation results.

V.7 BTS Frequency Source Stability, E-OTD reporting periods and E-OTD Location Accuracy

V.7.1 Factors determining E-OTD stability

In order to minimise network traffic required to support E-OTD LCS the OTDs must be reported as infrequently as possible and so it becomes important to determine the accuracy with which OTDs can be predicted. By viewing OTDs as measuring the relative phase of BTS transmissions it is clear that it is the phase stability of the BTS frequency source which determines the maximum acceptable OTD reporting period.

Assuming that the systemic phase noise disturbances are Gaussian and that LMU reporting period τ is relatively short (1000s of seconds) then the OTD Maximum Time Interval Error (MTIE, see ITU-T Recommendation G.810) is related to the OTD reporting period τ by

$$\Delta t = \tau \left\{ E\left[\left(\frac{\Delta f_i}{f_0} - \frac{\Delta f_j}{f_0} \right) + \left(\frac{D_i}{f_0} - \frac{D_j}{f_0} \right) \left(\frac{\tau}{2} \right) \right] \right\}$$

$$\left. + \quad C_P \sqrt{ Var\left[\left(\frac{\Delta f_i}{f_0} - \frac{\Delta f_j}{f_0} \right) + \left(\frac{D_i}{f_0} - \frac{D_j}{f_0} \right) \left(\frac{\tau}{2} \right) \right] + \left(\frac{\Delta f_i(\tau)}{f_0} \right)^2 + \left(\frac{\Delta f_j(\tau)}{f_0} \right)^2 } \right\} \qquad (1)$$

where $E[\ ]$ denotes the mathematical expectation operator, $Var[\ ]$ denotes the statistical variance of the bracketed quantity, $\Delta f/f_0$ characterizes the clock frequency accuracy, D/f_0 characterizes the normalized clock frequency drift rate, τ characterizes the time required to accumulate an OTD error of MTIE = Δt sec due to frequency instabilities, C_p sets the OTD measurement integrity at probability percentile $100p$, and $(\Delta f(\tau)/f_0)$ characterizes the RMS fractional frequency deviation which is related to the TIE_{rms} (RMS Time Interval Error, see ITU-T Recommendation G.810).

The physics of equation (1) is particularly interesting, since it partitions the frequency stability effects into two terms. The first term characterizes the frequency instability degradations due to the average values of the frequency offsets between BTS OTD reference signals. The second term characterizes the RMS fluctuations of the BTS OTD reference signal frequency offsets, their frequency drifts and the time dependent phase noise fluctuations.

Since the OTD reference signal drift rate (aging) times the measurement period will be small relative to the clock frequency offset and phase noise effects, these terms can be neglected (or they can be estimated through signal processing) for the τ intervals of interest. Thus (1) reduces to

$$\Delta t = \tau \cdot \left\{ E\left(\frac{\Delta f_i}{f_0} - \frac{\Delta f_j}{f_0} \right) \right.$$

$$\left. + \ C_P \sqrt{ Var\left[\left(\frac{\Delta f_i}{f_0} - \frac{\Delta f_j}{f_0} \right) \right] + \left(\frac{\Delta f_i(\tau)}{f_0} \right)^2 + \left(\frac{\Delta f_j(\tau)}{f_0} \right)^2 } \right\} \qquad (2)$$

From the perspectives of Equations (1-2), the OTD time stability requirements can be assessed. Here C_P sets the OTD measurement integrity in a probability sense that, after τ seconds, the relative frequency difference between two BTS clocks will cause Δt seconds of time error to accumulate between BTS clocks with probability p. For example, with p=0.997, then C_p=3 and with p=0.90, C_p=1.65. The value of C_p also serves to weight the relative importance of the systematic and random frequency instability effects on the accumulation of time error.

Finally, if one further assumes that the OTD reference signal frequency accuracies are also estimated using signal processing methods and that these estimates are sufficiently accurate so as to place these disturbances well below those set by the random phase noise effects, then (2) reduces to

$$\Delta t = \sqrt{2} \cdot C_P \cdot TIE_{\mathrm{rms}}(\tau)$$

This equation relates MTIE to the $\mathrm{TIE}_{\mathrm{rms}}$ value as a function of the OTD reporting period, τ, and can be used to demonstrate trade-offs between location accuracy, MTIE, OTD reporting period and $\mathrm{TIE}_{\mathrm{rms}}$ for a confidence level of *p*.

V.7.2 Relationship between range errors and location error

The relationship between E-OTD range measurement errors and location errors depends on the number and relative positions of the BTSs present. This relationship is sometimes summarised by a value known as the horizontal dilution of precision, HDOP. Since at least three BTSs are required for E-OTD location we consider as a reference scenario the case of three BTSs arranged in an equilateral triangle. As an MS moves inside the equilateral triangle defined by the BTSs the HDOP varies between 1.2, when the MS is at the centroid, to a maximum of 2.6.

E-OTD MTIE ± @ 95%	**$r_{\max}$ ± @ 95%**	**E-OTD radial location error (rms)**
50ns	15 meters	9.1m – 19.1m
100ns	30 meters	18.3m – 38.2m
200ns	60 meters	36.7m – 76.4m

Table V.7.1. Location error as a function of OTD MTIE.

Table V.7.1 shows the behaviour of location accuracy under the reference scenario for three levels of timing error, OTD MTIE, and corresponding range error, $r_{\max}$. Note that the timing error, E-OTD MTIE, is a function of both BTS frequency source stability and the E-OTD reporting period (see GSM 5.10).

Annex V.A: Evaluation of Positioning Measurement Systems

1. Introduction

In order to evaluate and compare different positioning measurement systems, it is highly desirable to define a common positioning simulator.

The single most important effect when evaluating positioning performance is multi-path propagation. The performance of positioning measurement systems is very dependent on the severity of the multi-path propagation. A simulator is more efficient than field trials when evaluating performance with respect to multi-path, since it can model a vast number of radio channels. Due to the importance of multi-path, it is essential to define a common channel model when comparing positioning performance.

The present document proposes a complete positioning simulator. The details are however focused on the essential channel model. The proposed channel model has a multi-path statistic that corresponds to a large number of field measurements.

The outline is as follows. In Section 2 an overview of the positioning simulator is provided. The remaining part of the document describes the various components of the positioning simulator:

- System Simulator (see Section 3)
- Radio Link Simulator (see Section 4)
- Channel Model (Sections 5-7)
- Position Calculation and Statistical Evaluation (Section 8)

2. Positioning Simulator

In order to evaluate the positioning performance, it is not sufficient to only simulate the measurement performance over a radio link. Instead an integrated positioning simulator is needed. The positioning simulator performs the following steps (see Figure 2.1):

- *Define environments and system parameters*. This includes multi-path channel characteristics, path loss parameters, inter-BS distance and frequency plans.
- *System simulation*. Generate frequency and cell plan. Randomly place MS on the cell pattern. For each MS:

1. Select measurement links:
   A strategy needs to be implemented which links to use when to positioning the particular MS
2. Determine characteristics for each link:
   For example: C/I, C/N, C/A, distance (d), angle (α)
3. *Radio Link Simulation*. For each link a realization of the channel model needs to be utilized by the radio link simulator to determine the measurement value and its corresponding measurement quality for the specific link.
4. *Position Calculation and Statistical Evaluation*. Estimate the position of the MS given the measurement data and BS locations. Compute circular error and present statistics.

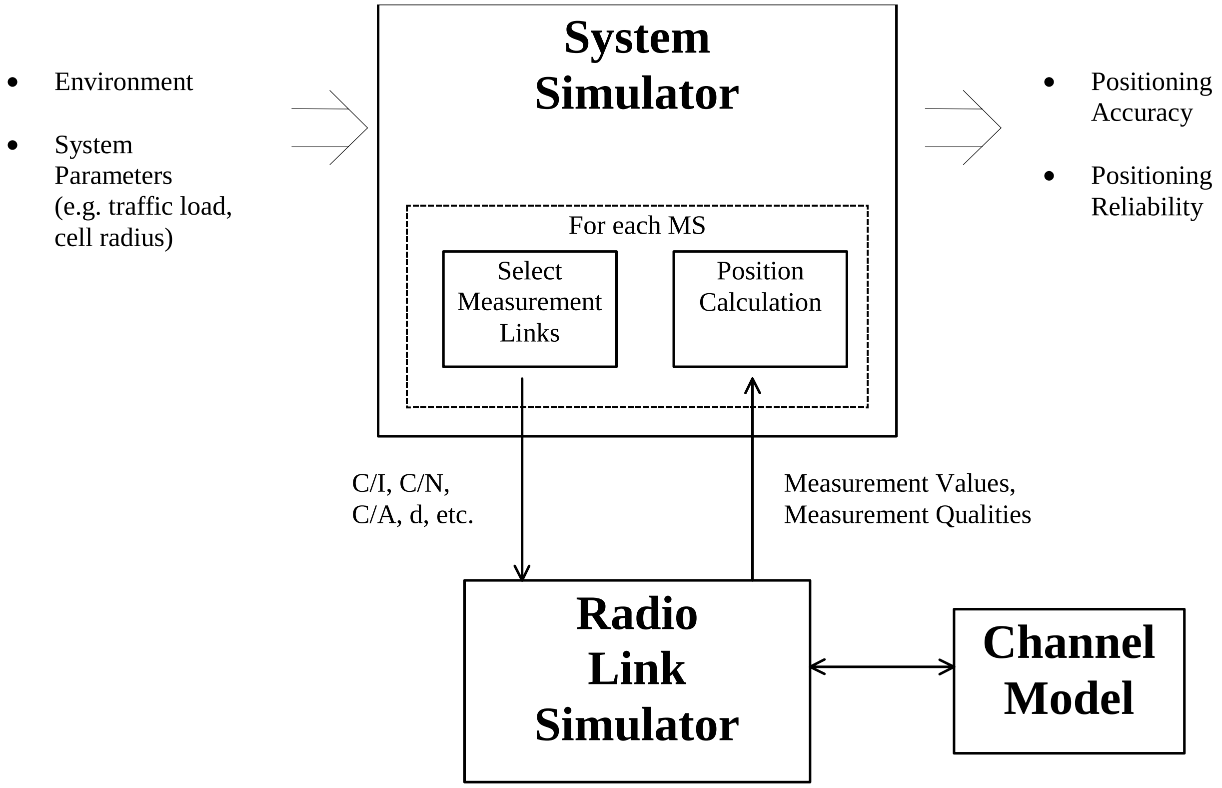


Figure 2.1. Positioning Simulator

3. System Simulator

The System Simulator is the basis of the Positioning Simulator. Here a cell and frequency plan is created and mobile stations to be positioned are randomly distributed over the cell structure (see Figure 3.1). In order to save infra-structure costs, usually one physical base station is built to serve three different cells. Directional antennas are used to differentiate the coverage areas, as shown in Figure 3.1. Each base station serves three surrounding cells. The coverage area of the cells are represented by hexagons.

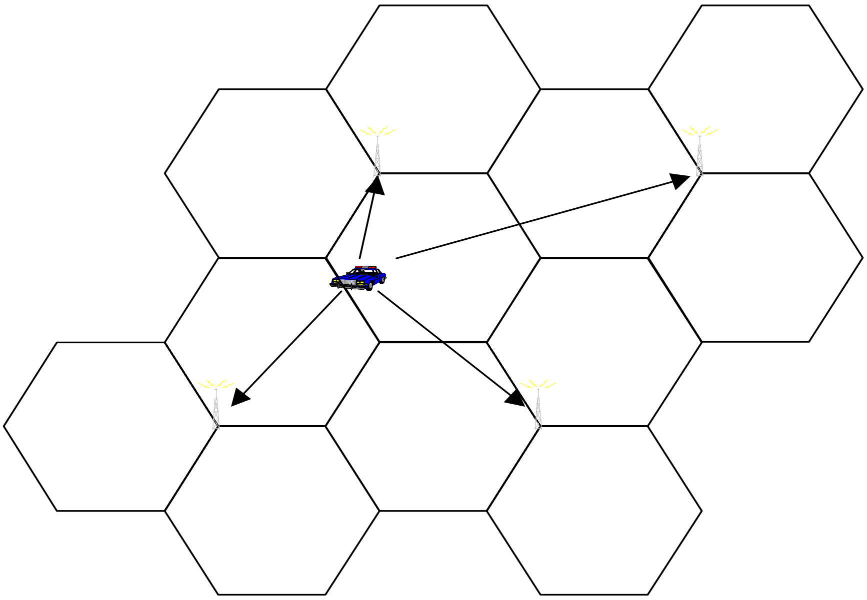


Figure 3.1. A MS in system

Initiation

BS's are placed over an area in a uniform hexagonal pattern, and a frequency plan is defined. The frequency plan assigns each BS a number of traffic channels and one Broadcast Control Channel (BCCH). MS's are placed randomly on the cell plan. The number of MS's is chosen corresponding to the desired offered traffic. In order to avoid that MS's close to the borders of the cell area have a more advantageous interference situation, a wrap around technique is used. This means for example that an MS located on the northeast border can be disturbed by BS's on the southwest side.

Path loss calculations

The received signal power is computed according to the Okumura-Hata formula (see [10]) as

$$P_r = P_t + g_a - L_p - \gamma \log(d) + g_f \qquad (3.1)$$

In (3.1), P_t is the transmitted power, g_a is the antenna gain in the direction to the MS, L_p and γ are environmental dependent constants, *d* is the distance in km, and g_f is the lognormal fading. The lognormal fading is determined from a "lognormal fading map", which defines the excess path loss at different points on the cell plan. Parameters such as correlation distance for the lognormal fading and inter-BS lognormal fading correlation are taken into account. If the inter-BS lognormal fading correlation is zero the excess path losses to different BS's are independent.

The excess path loss in indoor environments is modeled as a lognormal random variable with mean *m* and standard deviation σ. In practice this is implemented by adding *m* to the path loss and increasing the standard deviation of the lognormal fading, so that the lognormal fading consists of the sum of the outdoor and indoor fading.

For the uplink, the MS peak output power used is 0.8W (29dBm) and receiver noise in the BS -118dBm. It is possible to simulate the effect of MS power control. If this option is used less output powers can be used e.g. close to the serving cell.

On the downlink, the BS transmits continuously with full power on the BCCH channel and is not subject to any power control. Simulations are run for balanced links, i.e. the relation between transmission power and receiver noise is the same as for uplink. Note that *absolute* values of transmit power and noise do not affect the result and do not need to be specified.

Channel allocation

The system simulator is static, i.e. snapshots of the system are taken. To model the dynamic behavior, handover margins are used. A mobile randomly tries to connect to a BS with a signal strength that is within the handover margin from the strongest BS. The number of available channels in the system is fixed and finite. Thus, only a part of the MSs is able to connect. The fraction of connected MS's to the total number of channels is calculated and is called channel utilization. The total number of placed MS's is chosen to give desired channel utilization.

C and I calculations

Based on the channel allocations, the total received signal powers and interference powers for all possible radio links are computed. Thereby, cochannel and adjacent channel interference, and receiver noise is taken into account. For communication, only C/I[2] on the allocated channel for a particular MS is interesting. For positioning, C and I for all BS-MS radio links are interesting since measurements must be performed to more than one BS. The C and I values are passed to the radio link simulator. Note that the calculated C and I are average values. Fast fading and multi-path propagation is modeled in the radio link simulator.

---

[2] To simplify notation we let I denote the combined effect of cochannel interference (I), adjacent channel interference (A) and receiver noise (N).

On TCH channels Discontinuous Transmission (DTX**)** may be used. With this feature the MS does not transmit during speech pauses. The model assumed is that MS is active 60 % of the time. The effect of DTX is that the interference levels are lowered. DTX does not apply to BCCH channels.

Dropping calls with too low C/I

The C/I on the traffic channel is checked. If TCH C/I is below 9 dB on downlink or uplink traffic channel, the MS is considered not to be able to maintain the call, and the MS is omitted from the calculation. From a positioning perspective this is acceptable since MS will anyway not be able to communicate its position.

System simulator parameters

All parameters common to the system simulator are listed in Table 3.1 below. Environment dependent parameters are listed in Table 3.2.

Parameter	**Suggested Value**
Receiver Noise	-118 dBm
Adjacent Channel Attenuation	18 dB
Frequency Plan (3 Sector) on TCH	3/9[3]
Frequency Plan (3 Sector) on BCCH	4/12[1]
Antenna Peak Gain (Sector)	17.5 dB
MS Peak Power	0.8 W
Frequency Bands	900 MHz
BS Receiver Antenna Diversity	2 Antennas 6 m apart
Handover Margin	3 dB
Log-Normal Fading (outdoors)	6 dB
Lognormal correlation distance	110m
Inter-BS lognormal fading correlation	0
Base Station Antenna Height	30 m

Table 3.1. Common System Parameters

---

[3] The frequency reuse strategies are often expressed as m/n, where m denotes the number of sites per cluster and n denotes the number of cells per cluster.

Environment	Distance Between BS [m]	Mobile Speed [km/h]	Average Channel Utilization	Log-normal fading std (outdoor + indoor) [dB]	γ (900 MHz)	*Lp (+m)* [dB] (900 MHz)	Channel Model (see Section 5)
Bad Urban	**1500**	**3** **50**	**80%**	**6**	**35**	**126**	**Bad Urban**
UrbanA	**1500**	**3** **50**	**80%**	**6**	**35**	**126**	**Urban A**
UrbanB	**1500**	**3** **50**	**80%**	**6**	**35**	**126**	**UrbanB**
Suburban	**4500**	**3** **50**	**80%**	**6**	**35**	**116**	**Suburban**
Rural	**30000**	**3** **100**	**40%**	**6**	**35**	**98**	**Rural**
Indoor UrbanA	**1500**	**3**	**80%**	$\sqrt{6^2+6^2}$ **= 8.5**	**35**	**126+13.5 = 139.5**	**UrbanA**
Indoor UrbanB	**1500**	**3**	**80%**	$\sqrt{6^2+6^2}$ **= 8.5**	**35**	**126+13.5 = 139.5**	**UrbanB**
Indoor Suburban	**4500**	**3**	**80%**	$\sqrt{6^2+6^2}$ **= 8.5**	**35**	**116+7 = 123**	**Suburban**

Table 3.2. System Environments

4. Radio Link Level Simulator

The radio link simulator needs to be developed according to the proposed positioning measurement method. As stated, an essential part is the channel model. Multi-path propagation and fading which is inherent in mobile communications has a great influence on the positioning performance.

It is therefore crucial that the same channel model is used when evaluating different positioning measurement systems. The proposed channel model is presented in its wide-band version in Section 5 and with a GSM adaptation in Section 6.

Assuming a certain channel model environment, a measurement value and quality can be determined for each link realization based on distance, angle, speed, C/I, C/A and C/N. These results are of course interesting, *e.g.*, to find the rmse under certain assumptions, but the bottom line results are achieved when combined with the system simulator in Section 3.

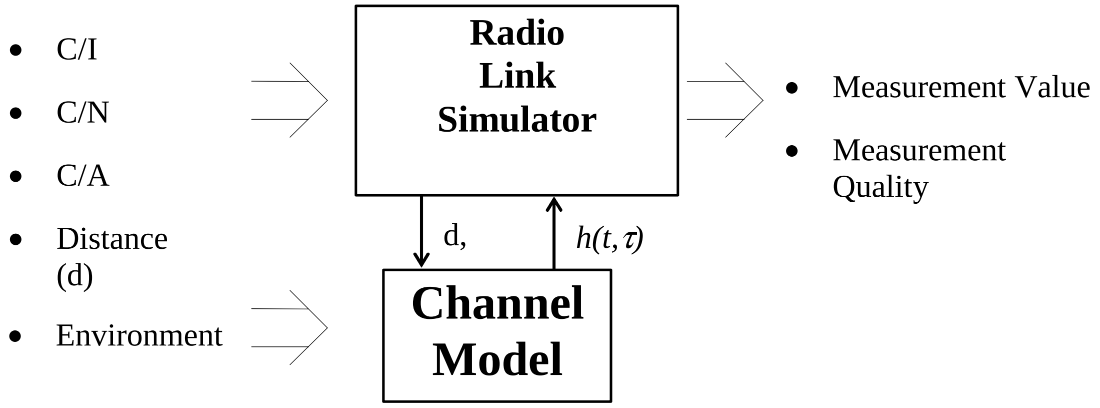


Figure 4.1. Radio Link Simulator

5. Channel Model

In order to compare different proposals for positioning measurement systems, a common channel model is required. In this section, such a channel model is proposed based on requirements specific to evaluation of positioning techniques.

5.1 Channel model requirements

Important factors when modelling the radio channel for positioning evaluation are the following:

- The channel model should be based on physical, measurable parameters. Such parameters are; power delay profile shape, delay spread, angle of arrival distributions and fading statistics.
- Mean excess delays are important, due to the fact that positioning techniques often use time estimations to position the mobile, and the accuracy of such techniques depends on the mean excess delay of the impulse response. Therefore the mean excess delays generated by the model should conform to measurements.
- The model should be based on a wide-band channel that can be adapted to the GSM bandwidth.
- The model should represent the general channel behaviour in a range of typical environments, corresponding to geographically diverse conditions.
- It should be possible to study the influence of antenna diversity.

5.2 Channel model

The channel model uses the same basic structure as the CODIT model [1], [2], but with some fundamental differences. These differences are due to the following:

- The modelling of the delay spread as a distance dependent parameter.
- Field measurements presented by Motorola, and by Ericsson, and results found in the literature [3]-[5].
- Modelling of base station antenna diversity.

Generation of the modelled radio channel for a specific MS-BS configuration is a 6-step process:

1. Generate the delay spread
2. Generate an average power delay profile (*apdp*)
3. Adjust the power delay profile so that it produces the desired delay spread.

4. Generate short-term fading of the impulse response by the physical process of summation of partial waves.
5. Generate multiple, partially correlated channels for multiple BS antennas (space diversity).
6. Filtering to GSM bandwidth

5.3 Delay spread

Due to the impact of multi-path propagation on positioning accuracy, modelling of the delay spread is of importance. The model used is from Greenstein [3], and is based on two conjectures:

- At any given distance from the base station, the delay spread is lognormally distributed.
- The median delay spread increases with distance.

Both these conjectures are supported by measurements to a certain degree. The proposed model is the following:

$$\tau_{rms} = T_1 d^{\varepsilon} y \qquad (5.1)$$

Here τ_{rms} is the rms delay spread, T_1 is the median value of the delay spread at d = 1 km, ε is a distance-dependence exponent, and y is a lognormal variate, meaning that $Y = 10 \log y$ is a Gaussian random variable with standard deviation σ_Y.

Parameter values have been chosen based on the recommendations in [3] and the following reported measurements:

- Motorola reports on field measurements where the distance dependence is weaker than what is suggested by [3], suggesting a lower value for ε.
- Ericsson reports on field measurement results showing that for the urban environment the original recommendations for ε in [3] gives the best fit.

To accomodate both types of distance dependence of the delay spread into the model, two Urban environments are included: UrbanA which fits the Ericsson observations and UrbanB which fits the Motorola observations. In other environments the weaker distance dependence is used.

The parameter values of the model are given in Table 5.1.

Environment	T_1	**ε**	**σ_Y**
Bad Urban	**1.0 µs**	**0.3**	**4 dB**
UrbanA	**0.4 µs**	**0.5**	**4 dB**
UrbanB	**0.4 µs**	**0.3**	**4 dB**
Suburban	**0.3 µs**	**0.3**	**4 dB**
Rural	**0.1 µs**	**0.3**	**4 dB**

Table 5.1. Parameter values for the delay spread model

The model also assumes that there is no correlation between delay spread values measured to different base stations from the same mobile.

5.4 Average power delay profile

The average power delay profile (local average of the squared magnitude of the impulse response) is modelled as the sum of a number of discrete impulses

$$p(\tau) = \sum_i p_i \cdot \delta(\tau - \tau_i) \qquad (5.2)$$

Each impulse corresponds to an infinite bandwidth representation of an impinging wave which has been scattered (reflected, diffracted) in the propagation environment.

The original procedures for generating p_i and τ_i in the CODIT model [2] has been expanded and changed as more information on the shape of the *apdp* has been presented, such as:

- The field measurement results presented by Motorola, which shows that the ratio between delay spread and mean excess delay is of the order 2:1 for rural and suburban,, and of the order 1:1 to 2:1 for urban environments.
- Measurement results by Ericsson showing a 1:1 ratio for urban environments.

Table 5.2 shows the parameters used for generating the *apdp*:s in the different environments. Again, the UrbanA parameters correspond to the results presented by Ericsson and the UrbanB parameters correspond to Motorola's results.

Environment	Scatterer #	Time delay τ_i	Relative Power p_i	Average delay spread to mean excess delay ratio	Nakagami-m parameter
Bad Urban	1-20	0-τ_{max}	{0.5-1.5}*exp(-6τ/τ_{max})	1:1	1
UrbanA	1-20	0-τ_{max}	{0.5-1.5}*exp(-6τ/τ_{max})	1:1	1
UrbanB	1-20	As UrbanA, but adjust time delays after calculating relative powers: $\tau = \tau \cdot \left(1+\frac{\tau}{\tau_{max}}\right)^{2.3}$		1.5:1	1
Suburban	1	0	4.3	2:1	15
	2-6	0-τ_{max}	0.1-0.4		1-5
Rural	As suburban				

Table 5.2. Parameters for the average power delay profile

5.5 Matching the delay spread of the channel model to the delay spread model

A simple rescaling of the time delay axis is used to compress or expand the average power delay profiles to give the desired delay spread. To elaborate, if a given realization of an average power delay profile has delay spread d_1, but the delay spread model realization value is d_2, the time delays of the *apdp* scatterers are simply multiplied by d_2/d_1. The *apdp* will then have delay spread d_2.

5.6 Short-term fading

The modelling assumption is that each of the scatterers in the impulse response fades individually. The fading is modelled by the physical process of summation of a large number of waves, where the power distribution of the waves is chosen in order to generate Nakagami-m fading statistics [6]. The m-parameter values in the model are given in Table 5.2. (m = 1 for Rayleigh, m>>1 for Rice). The complex phase of each wave is random.

The arrival angles of the waves at the mobile are generated from a truncated Gaussian distribution (standard dev. = 0.15 rad) around a mean AoA. The mean AoA for each scatterer is generated from a uniform (0-2π) distribution. 100 waves are used for each scatterer.

The knowledge of all arrival angles, amplitudes and phases of the waves allows us to calculate the complex sum at any position of the mobile. In this way we are able to physically generate the fading of the scatterers as the mobile moves.

5.7 Diversity

When using more than one base station antenna for reception/transmission, we need to model the channel for each antenna, with a certain amount of decorrelation between the antenna signals. This is modelled in the same physical manner as the short-term fading, we only need to obtain knowledge about the angles of arrival (departure) at the base station. The following assumptions are made:

Scattering is primarily occurring close to the mobile [7], so that each scatterer can be viewed as a point source from the base station. (All partial waves for that scatterer have the same angle of arrival at the BS)

The angle of arrival of each scatterer is modelled from a Gaussian with standard deviation:

$$\sigma_\theta(\tau_i) = \frac{c \cdot \tau_i}{d} \qquad (5.3)$$

This approach is is similar to that in [8], but with the inclusion of the time delays of the scatterers. The expression above can be shown [6] to lead to approximately a Laplacian power azimuth spectrum, which has been observed in measurements [9].

5.8 Limitations

The following limitations of the model should be kept in mind, so as not to apply the model outside its area of validity.

- Wide-Sense Stationarity is assumed, so dynamic changes in the propagation environment is not modelled. All movement of the mobile is assumed to be on a local scale, with no movements around street corners or into houses etc.
- The model, especially the delay spread model, is intended to give the average behaviour rather than be able to reproduce the specifics of any given real-world location.

5.9 Summary of the channel model

The model is summarized below:

Delay spreads are generated according to $\tau_{rms} = T_1 d^{\varepsilon} y$ (see equation 5.1). The chosen parameter values are given in Table 5.3.

Environment	T_1	ε	σ_Y
Bad Urban	**1.0 µs**	**0.3**	**4 dB**
UrbanA	**0.4 µs**	**0.5**	**4 dB**
UrbanB	**0.4 µs**	**0.3**	**4 dB**
Suburban	**0.3 µs**	**0.3**	**4 dB**
Rural	**0.1 µs**	**0.3**	**4 dB**

Table 5.3. Delay spread model parameters for the different environments

Parameters for generation of *apdp*:s and fading are given in Table 5.4.

Environment	Scatterer #	Time delay τ_i	Relative Power p_i	Average delay spread to mean excess delay ratio	Nakagami-m parameter
Bad Urban	**1-20**	**0-τ_{max}**	**{0.5-1.5}*exp(-6τ/τ_{max})**	**1:1**	**1**
UrbanA	**1-20**	**0-τ_{max}**	**{0.5-1.5}*exp(-6τ/τ_{max})**	**1:1**	**1**
UrbanB	**1-20**	**As UrbanA, but adjust time delays after calculating relative powers:** $\tau = \tau \cdot \left(1 + \frac{\tau}{\tau_{\max}}\right)^{2.3}$		**1.5:1**	**1**
Suburban	**1**	**0**	**4.3**	**2:1**	**15**
	2-6	**0-τ_{max}**	**0.1-0.4**		**1-5**
Rural	**As suburban**				

Table 5.4. Parameters for the average power delay profile and short-term fading

Short-term fading is generated with

- 100 partial waves for each scatterer
- Partial wave phases: {0-2π}

Base station angles of arrival are generated from a Gaussian distribution with standard deviation: $\sigma_\theta(\tau_i) = c \cdot \tau / d$. The base station angles of arrival, in conjunction with the positions of the base station antennas, are sufficient for calculating the channel at different base antennas.

6. GSM Adaptation

This section describes a FIR Filter Implementation of the Channel Model for GSM Simulations.

6.1 FIR Filter Implementation

The implementation of the CODIT based channel model in GSM simulations is by means of a FIR filter. The channel model delivers the complex amplitude $a_i(t)$ and delay $\tau_i(t)$ of each path i from which the time-variant infinite bandwidth channel impulse response $h(t,\tau)$ is formed and which is the basis of the FIR filter implementation:

$$h(t,\tau) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} a_i(t)\delta(\tau - \tau_i(t)) \quad (6.1)$$

The discrete time implementation of the channel model consists of a tapped-delay-line with a tap spacing defined by the system sampling period T and tap weight coefficients $g_n(t)$, where $n=0,...,L$ is the tap index. The number of required taps L, *i.e.*, the length of the FIR filter, is determined by the product of the maximum excess delay of the environment and the system sampling rate.

The tap weights $g_n(t)$ can be calculated by taking the signal bandwidth into account. The bandwidth occupied by the real band-pass signal is denoted by W. Then the band occupancy of the equivalent low-pass signal is $|f| \leq ½W$, which allows to define the system sampling rate $1/T=W$. By this, the channel can be considered band-limited with null spectral components out of the system bandwidth, sampling it with the same rate. Thus, the multiplicative tap weights $g_n(t)$ are obtained by filtering $h(t,\tau)$ with an ideal low-pass filter with cut-off frequency $1/2T=W/2$ and sampled at rate $1/T=W$ [2]:

$$g_n(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\sin\left(\pi W\left(\tau - \frac{n}{W}\right)\right)}{\pi W\left(\tau - \frac{n}{W}\right)} h(t,\tau)\, d\tau \quad (6.2)$$

Substituting $h(t,\tau)$ (equation (6.1)) into the equation above yields the tap weights of the FIR filter implementation of the channel model:

$$g_n(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} a_i(t) \frac{\sin\left(\pi W\left(\tau_i(t) - \frac{n}{W}\right)\right)}{\pi W\left(\tau_i(t) - \frac{n}{W}\right)} \qquad (6.3)$$

Thus, each complex amplitude $a_i(t)$ delivered by the CODIT model is multiplied by a sinc function shifted by the amount of the corresponding time delay $\tau_i(t)$ and summed up for all scatterers N.

The sampling frequency used for the "Positioning Simulator" has been chosen to 16 times the bit rate in GSM, *i.e.*, $1/T = W = 16 \cdot (13e6/48)$ Hz $\approx 16 \cdot 270833$ Hz ≈ 4333333 Hz. This relative high sampling frequency has been chosen to allow in the simulations over-sampling at the receiver which may improve the performance of time delay estimation algorithms in a TOA or TDOA based positioning system. In order to implement the above equation (6.3) the sinc function has to be truncated. In the proposed "Positioning Simulator", the impulse responses are truncated to 30 microseconds.

The channel output signal is obtained by convolution of this sampled impulse response with the simulated GMSK signal (sampled at the same rate). Since the channel is power normalized, the signal mean power is kept after this convolution. This allows to simulate interference signals and thermal noise which can be added to the channel output signal.

6.2 Sampling in Time Domain

With time-variance being relatively slow for all bands (900,1800 and 1900 MHz), the channel can be assumed quasi time-invariant, i.e. time-invariant over the duration of one burst. Therefore, no change of the delay profile during a burst has to be modeled and hence, only one sample of the delay profile is required for each burst. Since the channel model is only a function of position, moving vehicles can be easily simulated. For each burst a new channel impulse response is computed based on a given desired position. This allows also to simulate accelerating moving mobiles.

6.3 Frequency Hopping

The radio interface of GSM uses slow frequency hopping. Because the channel impulse response delivered by the proposed modified CODIT model has infinite bandwidth, frequency hopping can be easily implemented by filtering out the frequency bands of interest. The complex impulse response of equation (6.1) for one burst is multiplied by $\exp(j2\pi f_H \tau_i(t))$, which results in a frequency translation with magnitude f_H , *i.e.,* with spectrum $H(f-f_H)$. Defining for each burst a different frequency f_H the channel to use for each burst is centered around frequency 0 in base-band. This translated impulse responses are then filtered and sampled as described in section 6.1.

7. Position Calculation and Statistical Evaluation

The position calculation function utilizes the available measurements, e.g time of arrival (TOA) measurements from three or more BS-MS links, to produce a position estimate. It is desirable that a position estimate is delivered even in cases where it is not possible to produce the number of measurements required by the particular method. In the latter case e.g. a position estimate related to the position of the serving cell can be used.

The statistical evaluation is based on computing the difference between the estimated position $(\hat{x}, \hat{y})$ and the true position (x,y). One possible error measure is to define the circular error

$$ce_i = \sqrt{(x_i - \hat{x}_i)^2 + (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2} \qquad (8.1)$$

Here subscript i denotes quantities related to the ith MS. Statistics on the circular error could be presented by

- Plotting the cumulative distribution function (CDF) of *ce*
- Displaying certain CDF percentile values, like e.g. 67% and 90% levels
- Determine the amount of position estimates satisfying $ce < 125$ m

Another possibility is to compute the root mean square error (*rmse*):

$$rmse = \sqrt{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\left((x_i - \hat{x}_i)^2 + (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2\right)} \qquad (8.2)$$

Here N is the total number of positioned MS's. The *rmse* calculation is very sensitive to occasional poor position estimates (caused e.g. by poor measurements or lack of measurements). A measure which is less sensitive to these rare so-called outliers is obtained by omitting the 10% worst cases in the *rmse* calculation.

8. References

[1] W. R. Braun and U. Dersch, "A physical mobile radio channel model", IEEE Transactions on Vehicular Technology, Vol. 40, No. 2, May 1991.

[2] J. Jimenez, *et al.*, "Final propagation model", R2020/TDE/PS/DS/P/040/b1, June 1994.

[3] L. J. Greenstein, V. Erceg, Y. S. Yeh and M. V. Clark, "A new path-gain/delay-spread propagation model for digital cellular channels", IEEE Transactions on Vehicular Technology, Vol. 46, No. 2, May 1997.

[4] D. C. Cox and R. P. Leck, "Distributions of multipath delay spread and average excess delay for 910-MHz urban mobile radio paths," IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation, Vol. AP-23, No. 2, pp. 206-213, March 1975.

[5] A. S. Bajwa and J. D. Parsons, "Large area characterisation of urban UHF multipath propagation and its relevance to the performance bounds of mobile radio systems," IEE Proceedings, Vol. 132, Pt. F, No. 2, pp- 99-106, April 1985.

[6] U. Dersch and R. J. Rüegg, "Simulations of the time and frequency selective outdoor mobile radio channel", IEEE Transactions on Vehicular Technology, Vol. 42, No. 3, pp. 338-344, August 1993.

[7] W. C. Y. Lee, "Effects on correlation between two mobile radio base-station antennas", IEEE Trans. Communications, Vol. COM-21, No. 11, Nov. 1973, pp. 1214-1224.

[8] F. Adachi, M. T. Feeney, A. G. Williamson and J. D. Parsons, "Crosscorrelation between the envelope of 900 MHz signals received at a mobile radio base station site", IEE Proceedings, Vol. 133, Pt. F, No. 6, Oct. 1986.

[9] K. I. Pedersen, P. E. Mogensen and B. H. Fleury, "Power azimuth spectrum in outdoor environments", IEE Electronics Letters, 28th Aug. 1997, Vol. 33, No. 18.

[10] Masaharu Hata, "Empirical Formula for Propagation Loss in Land Mobile Radio Service," IEEE Transaction on Vehicular Technology, Vol. VT-29, No. 3 (1980), pp 317-325.

Annex V.B: Simulations on Co-Existence of EDGE and GSM Modulated Signals

Introduction

In a scenario where GSM-GMSK and EDGE-8PSK modulated signals coexist, it is of interest to assess the mutual effect of different modulation formats on the performance of TOA estimation algorithms. The EDGE modulation format has been designed in such a way that mutual orthogonality between EDGE and GSM users is guaranteed for communication purposes. However, since EDGE training sequences have been derived from the binary GSM training sequences, it is possible that at low Signal-to-Noise Ratio (SNRs) levels, where communication cannot take place but TOA estimation is still possible, these two modulation formats interfere with each other.

The present document assesses this problem, providing some simulation results.

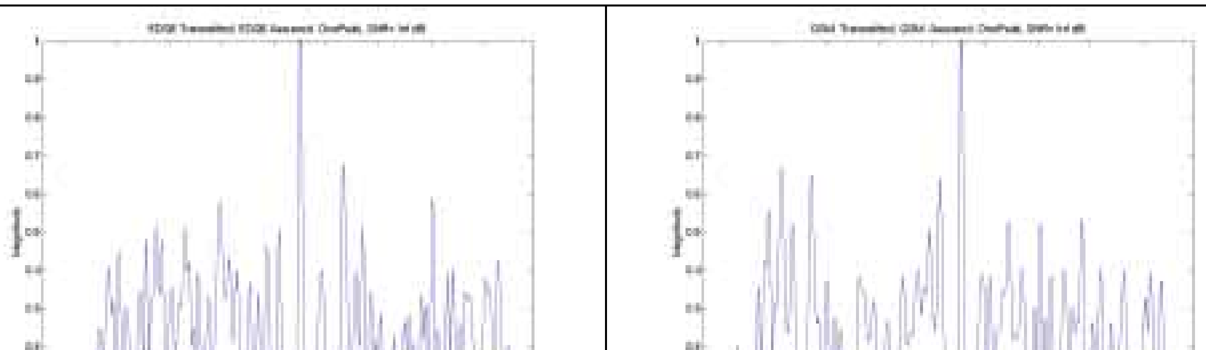
A generic TOA estimation can be figured out as follows: the transmitter transmits a modulated burst over the channel. At the receiver side, the burst is correlated with the known training sequence embedded in the transmitted burst. Based on the features of the resulting correlation function, the TOA is estimated.

Under ideal circumstances, the correlation function has a peak clearly higher than the adjacent side-lobes; however, due to multipath, noise, etc. side-lobes can emerge, leading to erroneous TOA estimates. To avoid this problem, the correlation function can be checked, and eventually rejected, *before* estimating the TOA.

This method can be applied also when the modulation format of the received signal is unknown (e.g., when it can be either GMSK or 8PSK). In fact, correlation between an EDGE modulated burst and a GSM training sequence, or vice versa, results in a correlation function without any dominant peak.

Figure 33 reports the correlation functions obtained by correlating an EDGE modulated burst ("EDGE Transmitted") with the corresponding EDGE ("EDGE Assumed") and GSM ("GSM Assumed") training sequences, in ideal condition of a Line-Of-Sight (LOS) noiseless propagation channel. Similar plots are reported for a GSM transmitted burst, on the right-hand side of the figure. It is evident that, when the training sequence does not match with the actual modulation of the received burst, the resulting correlation function is far from the ideal one.

The presence of GSM and EDGE signals at the same time, and its effect on the TOA estimation performance, can be then analyzed by simply estimating the percentage of bursts rejected by the correlation function check procedure.



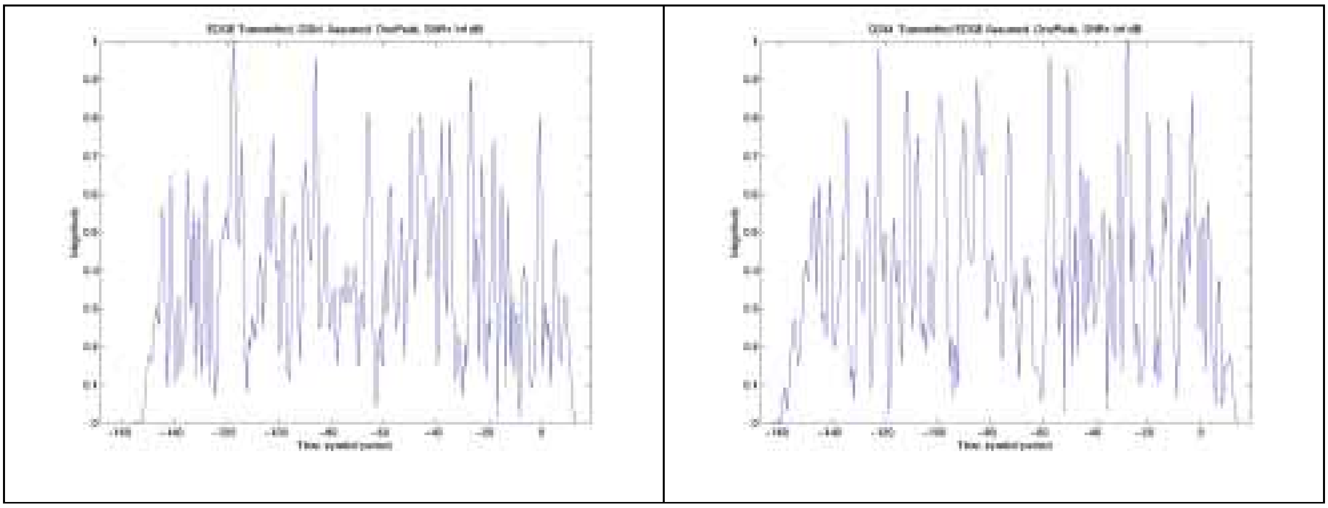


Figure 33: Examples of correlation functions in a ideal line-of-sight (LOS) noiseless channel.

Simulations

Simulations have been conducted according to the scheme described in Figure 2. The goal is to calculate the percentage of rejected bursts when the received bursts are correlated with the corresponding GSM and EDGE training sequences.

Given a certain Signal-to-Noise Ratio (SNR), a Mobile Station (MS) speed and a channel type compliant with T1P1 models, one EDGE-modulated normal burst and one GSM-modulated normal burst are generated. The *binary* training sequence embedded in the modulated bursts is the same, namely the number 0 (TSC_0).

The transmitted EDGE and GSM bursts propagate over the same AWGN (Additive White Gaussian Noise) multipath channel and are received with a 4th order Butterworth filter with cutoff frequency of 100kHz.

The received bursts are correlated with the training sequence 0, considering all possible combinations, i.e., for each transmitted burst, the correlation with the EDGE TSC_0 and the correlation with the GSM TSC_0 are calculated. The resulting correlation functions are then checked using the same rejection/acceptance criteria

500 Monte Carlo runs have been conducted. The MS speed has been fixed at 3km/h. Suburban (SU) and Urban A (UA) multipath channels have been considered, with SNR ranging from –10dB to +10dB. For reference, also the noiseless channel (SNR=Inf) has been considered.

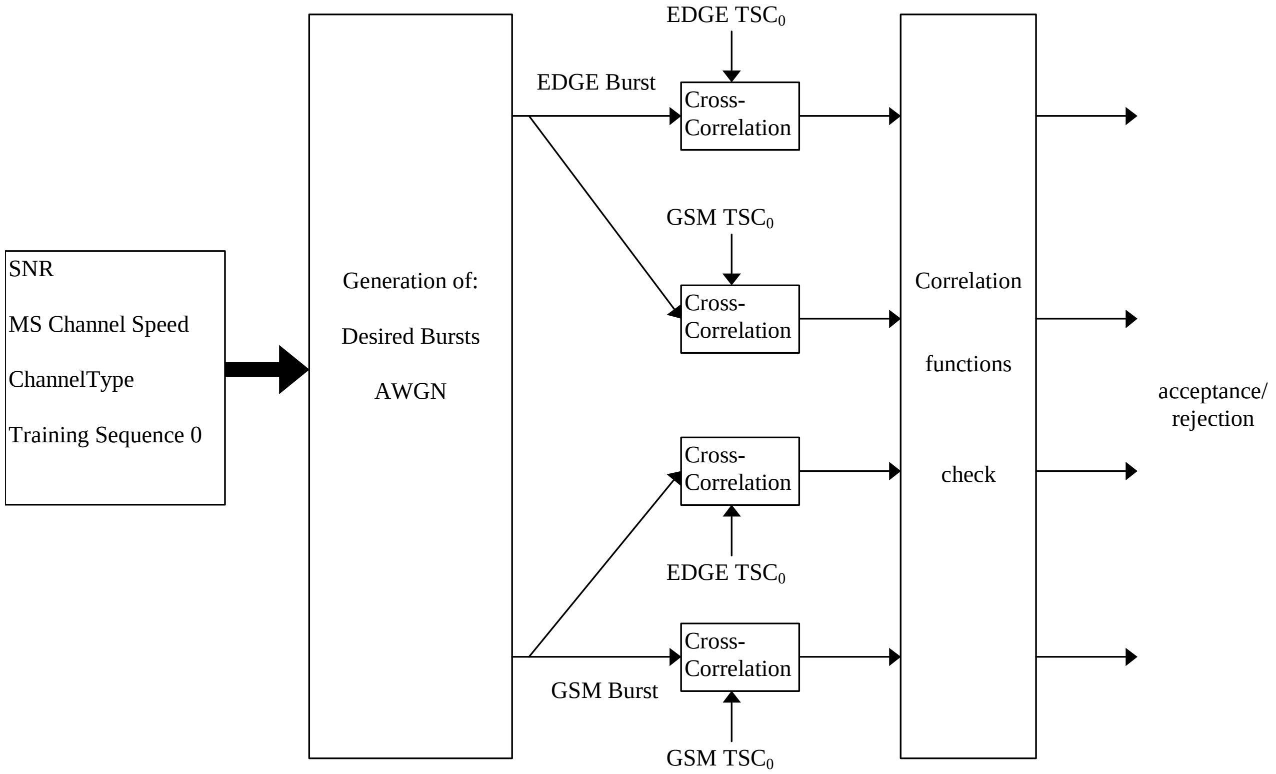


Figure 2: Simulation scheme.

Simulation Results

Table 3 report results when an EDGE modulated burst is transmitted. The probability that an EDGE burst is accepted, when correlated with the corresponding GSM training sequence ("GSM assumed"), is zero in all cases, with the only exception of the case Suburban@SNR=-10dB, where 2 bursts out of 500, i.e. the 0.4%, are not rejected.

This is the most relevant result; however, a general robustness of the EDGE modulation can be noticed: the probability of an EDGE burst to be rejected when correlated with the correct training sequence ("EDGE assumed") is almost zero for SNR≥0dB, less than 2% @SNR=-5dB and around 14-16% @SNR=-10dB.

The same observations basically apply when a GSM burst is transmitted, though the GMSK modulation results slightly less robust than the 8PSK modulation. In the worst conditions, the probability that GSM bursts are interpreted as EDGE modulated is less than 4% ("EDGE assumed"); while, even in absence of noise or very high SNRs, the multipath can generate rejections of GSM burst, when correlated with the correct training sequence ("GSM assumed").

Table 3: Percentage of rejected bursts when EDGE modulated bursts are transmitted.

		SNR, dB					
		-10	**-5**	**0**	**5**	**10**	**Inf**
EDGE assumed	UA, 3km/h	15.8	1.4	0.2	0	0	0
	SU, 3km/h	13.8	0.6	0	0	0	0
GSM assumed	UA, 3km/h	99.6	100	100	100	100	100
	SU, 3km/h	100	100	100	100	100	100

Table 4: Percentage of rejected bursts when GSM modulated bursts are transmitted.

		SNR, dB					
		-10	**-5**	**0**	**5**	**10**	**Inf**
EDGE assumed	UA, 3km/h	96.2	96.8	99.2	99.8	99.6	99.8
	SU, 3km/h	97.2	96.6	97.8	99.6	99.6	100
GSM assumed	UA, 3km/h	20.4	3.2	1.0	0.6	0.6	0.2
	SU, 3km/h	24.8	4.2	1.4	0.6	0.6	0.8

Figure 5 and Figure 4 are graphical representations of the results reported in the tables.

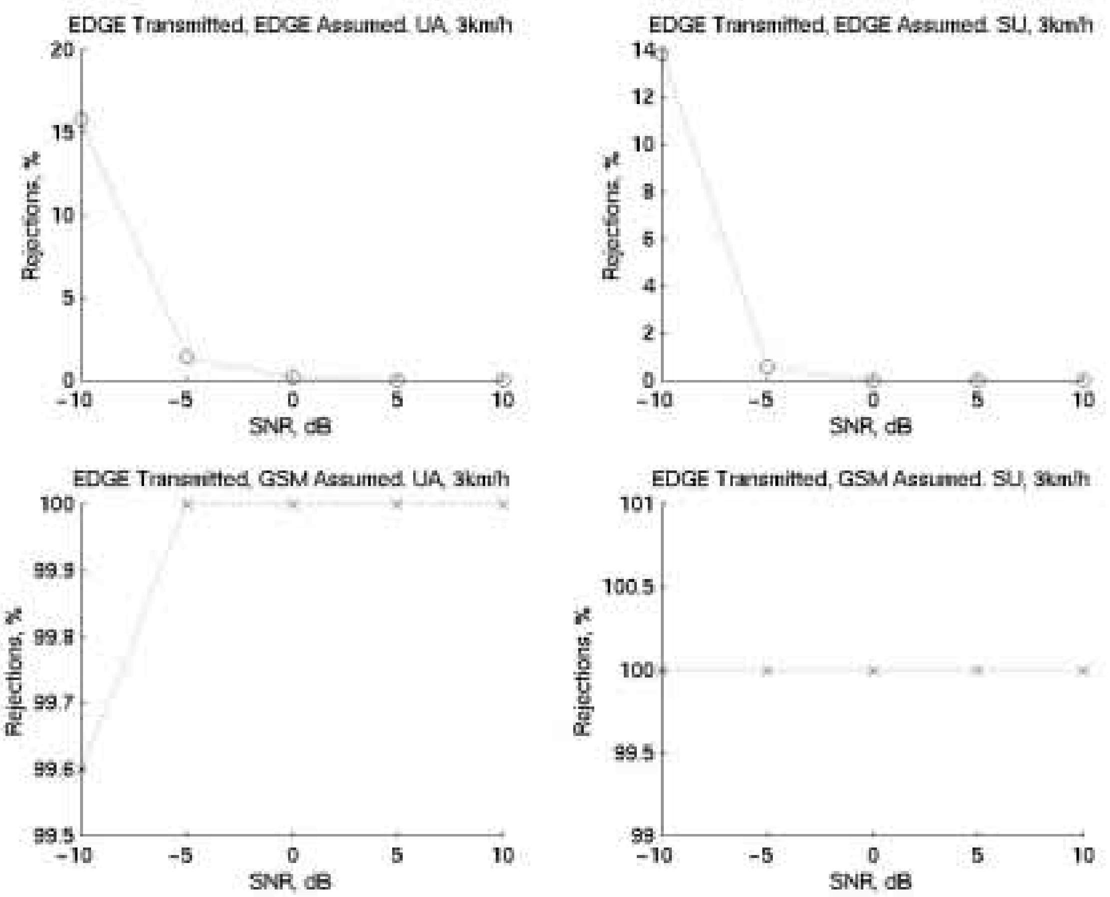


Figure 5: Percentage of rejected EDGE bursts in Urban A, 3km/h and Suburban, 3km/h channels.

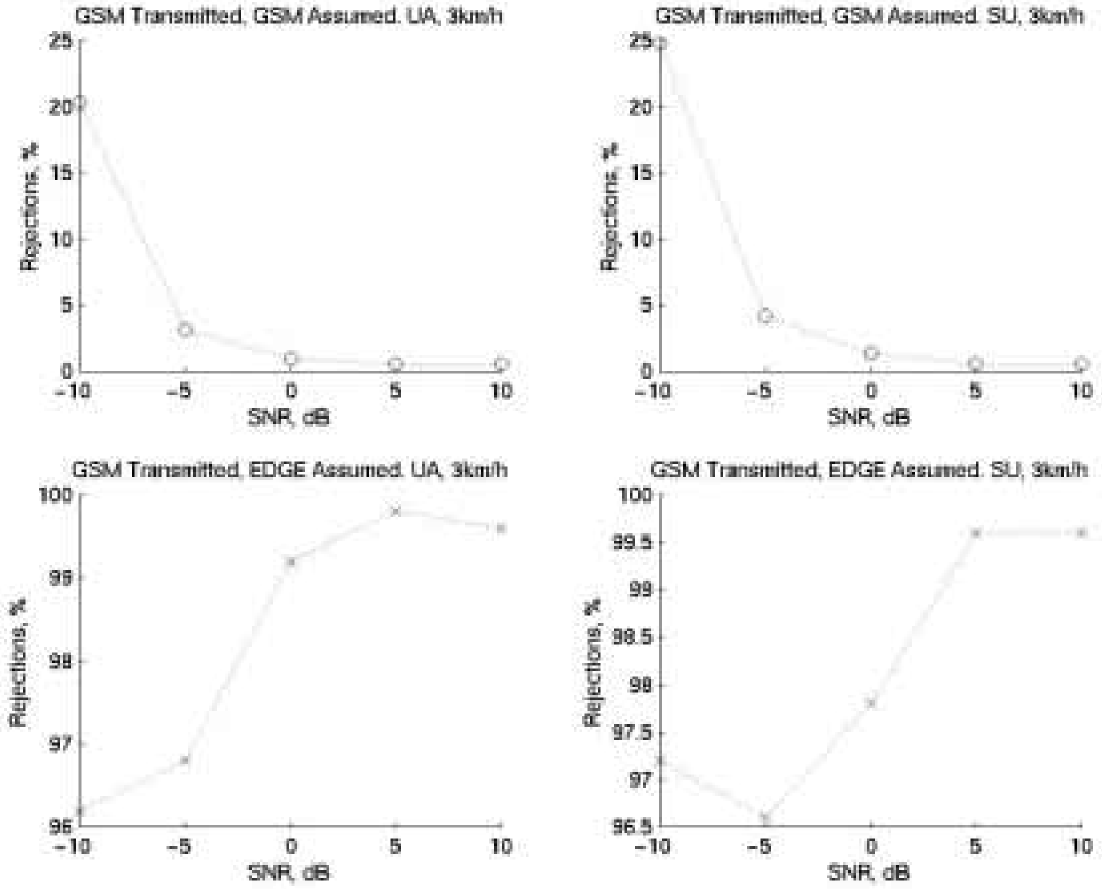


Figure 4: Percentage of rejected GSM bursts in Urban A, 3km/h and Suburban, 3km/h channels.

Conclusions

As a summary of the results reported in the present document, it can be stated that, in the scenarios considered, the orthogonality between GSM and EDGE modulations is basically maintained even at low levels of SNR, where communication is not feasible. In particular, when considering the application of TOA estimation algorithms for MS positioning, it is possible to discriminate one modulation from another by simply checking the correlation function between the received signal and the associated GSM and EDGE training sequences. The probability to mix up the modulations in Suburban and Urban A channels, with a MS speed of 3km/h and SNR≥-10dB is less than 1% for EDGE bursts and less than 4% for GSM bursts. These figures are so low that the performance of TOA estimation algorithms are most likely not affected by the presence of GSM and EDGE modulations.

Annex W:
Update of GPRS background information

ETSI STC SMG2 #34
Aalborg, Denmark **Agenda item 7.2.6.2**

10 - 14 January 2000

Source : Alcatel

Title : Justification of CR05.05 on GPRS CS4 receiver performance

W.1 Introduction

At the last SMG2 meetings, Alcatel raised the problem of GPRS receiver performance (reference interference) for CS4 in TU3 no FH and TU50 no FH propagation conditions. CRs to 05.05 are proposed on this issue in Tdoc SMG2 91/00, 92/00 and 93/00. This paper presents the background of these CRs based on simulation results.

As an introduction to the proposed relaxations, it should be noted that the GPRS receiver interference performance in CS4 case is tested at very high input levels compared to GSM: the usual Eb/N0 assumption of 28 dB (in the presence of a co-channel interference) remains applicable at these levels, meaning that no AGC convergence mechanism is considered. This constraint is particularly stringent for the MS receiver design, therefore the C/Ic requirements at these levels are to be carefully studied.

W.2 References

[1] GSM 05.50 v7.1.0 Release 98 "Background for Radio Frequency (RF) requirements"

Annex N : C/Ic and Eb/N0 Radio Performance for the GPRS Coding schemes

Annex P : Block Error Rate and USF Error Rate for GPRS

Annex Q : Block Error Rate and USF Error Rate for GPRS, 1800 MHz

[2] Tdoc SMG2 1258/99 Discussion on Noise Factor for GPRS receiver

[3] Tdoc SMG2 1697/99 Discussion on GPRS receiver performance

W.3 Simulation assumptions

The simulation assumptions are similar to the ones of 05.50 simulations (refer to [1], Annex K to Q), except that Alcatel simulator incorporates a certain number of impairments: Alcatel simulations aim at complementing the 05.50 simulations presented in the previous annexes, in a way similar to EDGE standardisation, where both ideal simulations and simulations with impairments are being performed (Alcatel simulator can be classified in this last category). Alcatel simulator can therefore be considered as more "realistic" and closer to a real implementation than the other two simulators considered for GPRS in GSM 05.50.

The impairments introduced in the Alcatel simulator are :

- fixed point calculation
- A/D and D/A converters
- the filters have a non-constant group delay characteristics
- synthesiser phase noise

Simulations are performed in the 900 MHz frequency band :

- for TU50 no FH,
- for TU3 no FH : the 900 MHz C/I requirement can be derived into a 1800 MHz C/I requirement for TU1.5 propagation conditions.

Additional simulations are also performed in the 1800 MHz frequency band, for TU50 no FH propagation conditions.

W.4 Co-channel interference simulations with varying C/I

Simulations similar to 05.50 simulations (i.e. varying C/I vs. BLER) were performed on interference performance for CS4 in TU50 no FH (900 and 1800 MHz) and TU3 no FH (900 MHz) propagation conditions. The results are depicted on Figures 1, 2 and 3 together with ETSI/05.50 simulation results (ETSI1 refers to CSELT simulations and ETSI2 refers to Ericsson simulations).

As already highlighted in document [3], the results show a gap of about 3 dB between the required C/I in ETSI/05.50 simulations and the C/I in Alcatel simulation, for both TU3 no FH and TU50 no FH (900 and 1800 MHz) propagation conditions. Note that this gap was less than 1 dB for CS1, CS2 and CS3, refer to document [3], and thus remains within the 2 dB implementation margin. The gap can therefore not be explained easily by the more realistic simulation conditions (fixed point calculation) and is greater than the 2 dB implementation margin.

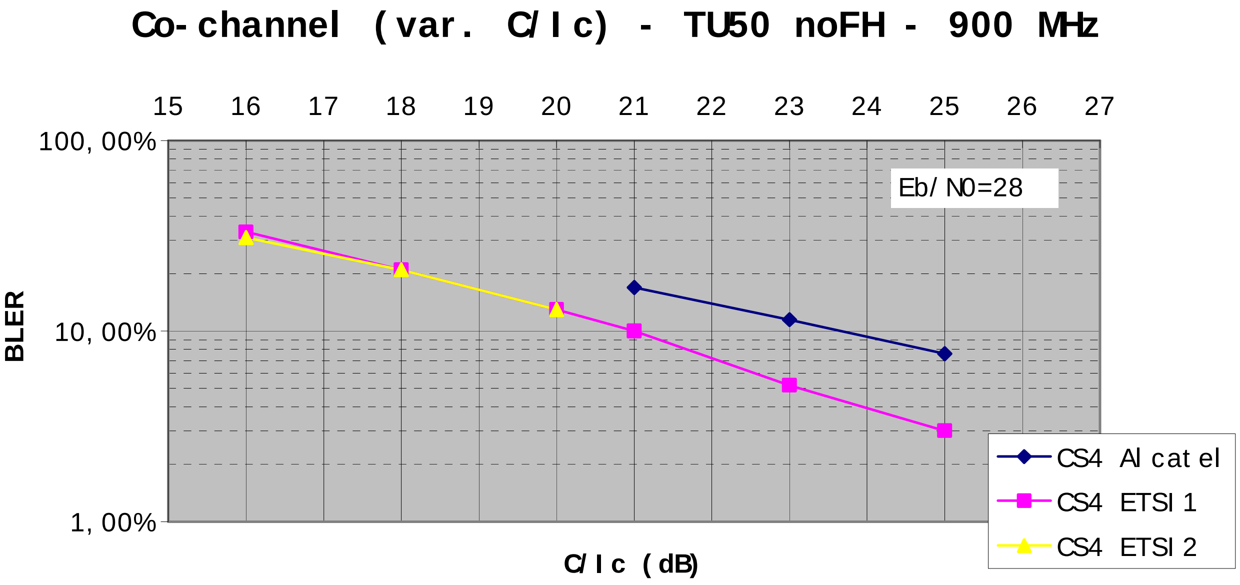


Figure 1 : TU50 no FH interference simulations (var. C/Ic) - 900 MHz

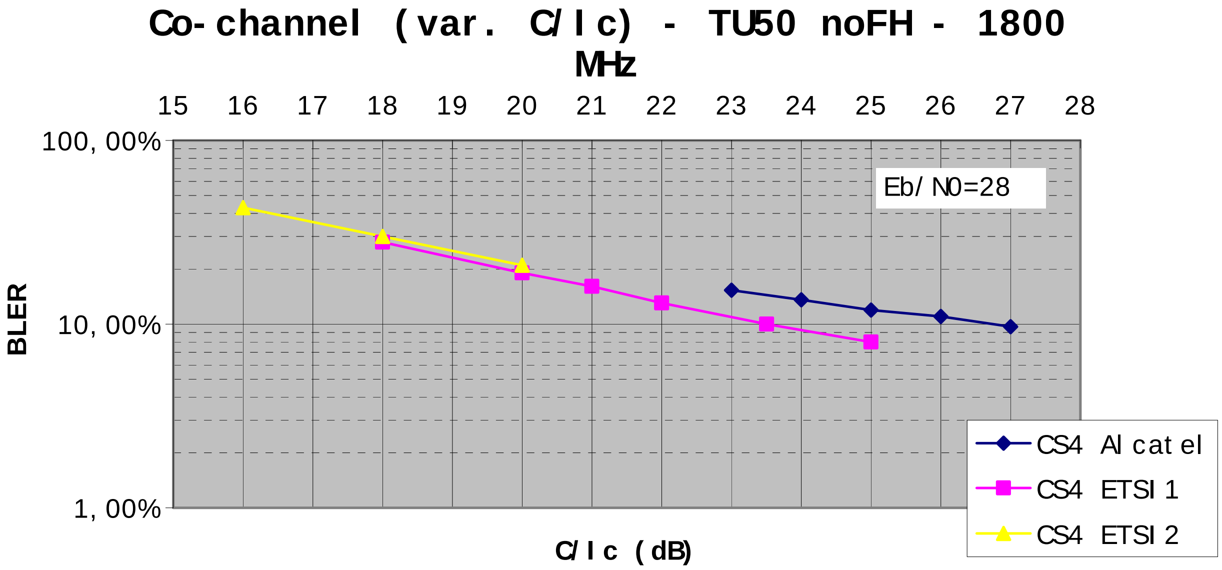


Figure 2 : TU50 no FH interference simulations (var. C/Ic) - 1800 MHz

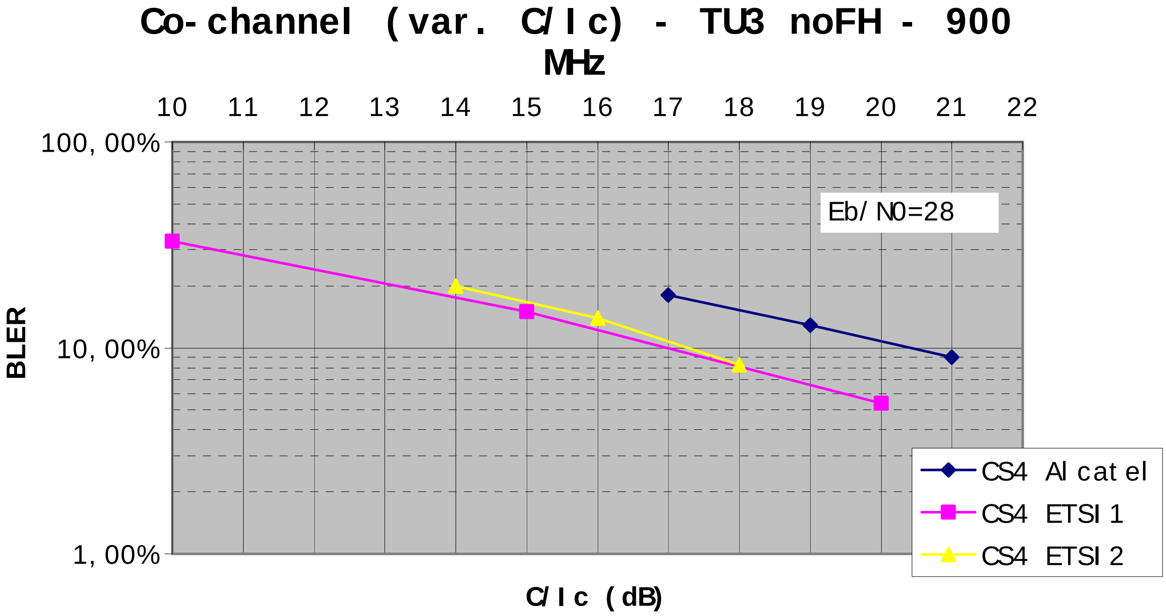


Figure 3 : TU3 no FH interference simulations (var. C/Ic) - 900 MHz

W.5 Co-channel interference simulations with varying Eb/N0

As proposed in document [3], simulations were performed with varying Eb/N0 levels, considering different co-channel interferers :

- for CS4 TU3 no FH : at C/I = 19 (05.05 specification) / 20 / 21 dB
- for CS4 TU50 no FH @ 900 MHz: at C/I = 23 (05.05 specification) / 24 / 25 dB

- for CS4 TU50 no FH @ 1800 MHz: at C/I = 25 (05.05 specification) / 26 / 27 dB

These simulations can not be compared to any simulations performed at ETSI. They are depicted in Figure 4, 5 and 6.

- CS4 TU3 no FH (Figure 6) :

As already mentioned in document [3], the 10% BLER performance is never achieved with the C/I specified in GSM 05.05 (C/I=19 dB), whereas it was expected to achieve it at Eb/N0=28 dB according to 05.50 simulation assumption. This result is off course coherent with the varying C/I simulations that are depicted in Figure 3 and the observed gap between the results of Alcatel and the other simulators.

With a relaxation of 1 dB (C/I=20 dB), the 10% BLER performance is not achieved at Eb/N0=28 dB, whereas with a relaxation of 2 dB (C/I=21 dB), the performance is achieved at a level slightly below Eb/N0=28 dB.

Therefore, it is proposed to relax the C/I of the co-channel interferer of 2 dB from C/I=19 to C/I=21 dB.

- CS4 TU50 no FH - 900 MHz (Figure 4) :

As already mentioned in document [3], the 10% BLER performance with the C/I specified in GSM 05.05 is achieved at an Eb/N0 greater than the 28 dB assumption of the 05.50 simulations. This result is coherent with the varying C/I simulations that are depicted in Figure 1 and the observed gap between the results of Alcatel and the other simulators.

With a relaxation of 1 dB (C/I=24 dB), the 10% BLER performance is achieved at Eb/N0 between 27 and 28 dB ; with a relaxation of 2 dB (C/I=25 dB), the performance is achieved at Eb/N0=26 dB.

Therefore, it is proposed to relax the C/I of the co-channel interferer of 1 dB from C/I=23 to C/I=24 dB.

- CS4 TU50 no FH - 1800 MHz (Figure 5) :

The 10% BLER performance with the C/I specified in GSM 05.05 (25 dB) is achieved at an Eb/N0 greater than the 28 dB assumption of the 05.50 simulations. This result is coherent with the varying C/I simulations that are depicted in Figure 2 and the observed gap between the results of Alcatel and the other simulators.

With a relaxation of 1 dB (C/I=26 dB), the 10% BLER performance is not achieved at Eb/N0=28 dB, whereas with a relaxation of 2 dB (C/I=27 dB), the performance is achieved at a level very close to Eb/N0=28 dB.

Therefore, it is proposed to relax the C/I of the co-channel interferer of 2 dB from C/I=25 to C/I=27 dB.

NOTE: it is proposed not to include an additional implementation margin to the raw results resulting from Alcatel simulations, as it is believed that the Alcatel simulator is close enough to a real implementation.

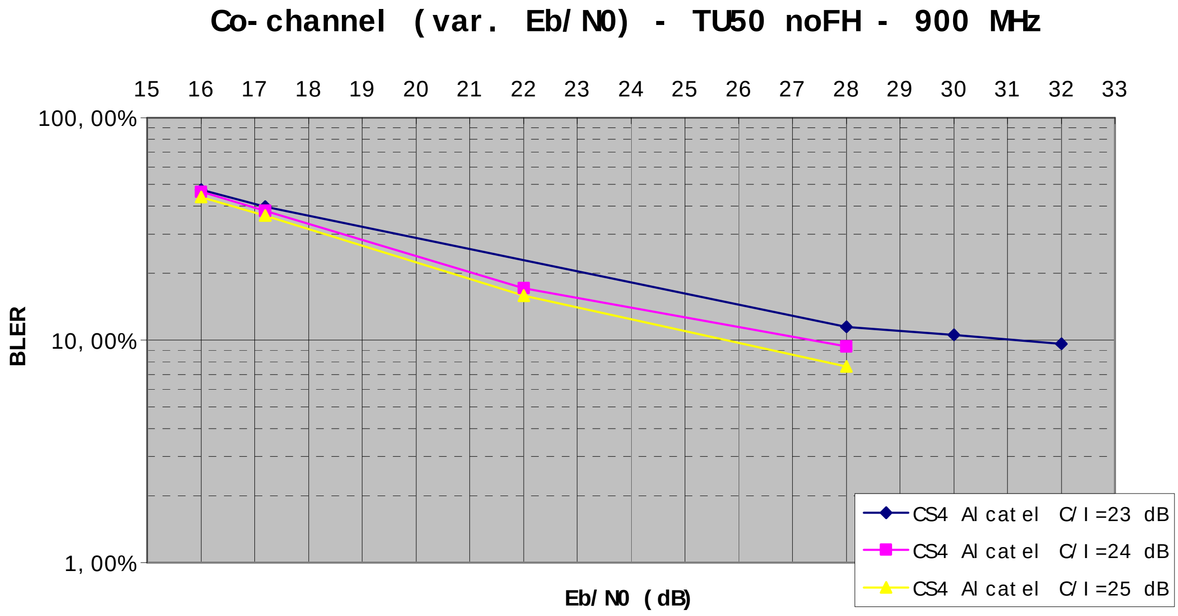


Figure 4 : TU 50 no FH interference simulations (var. Eb/N0) - 900 MHz

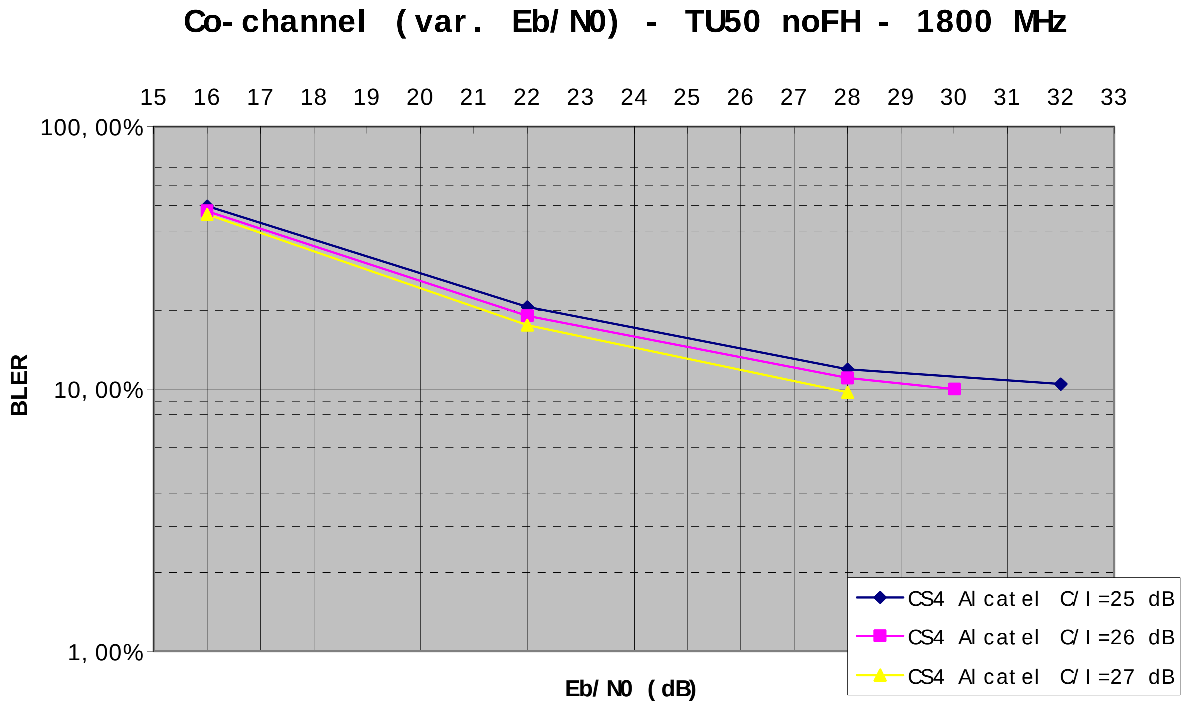


Figure 5 : TU 50 no FH interference simulations (var. Eb/N0) - 1800 MHz

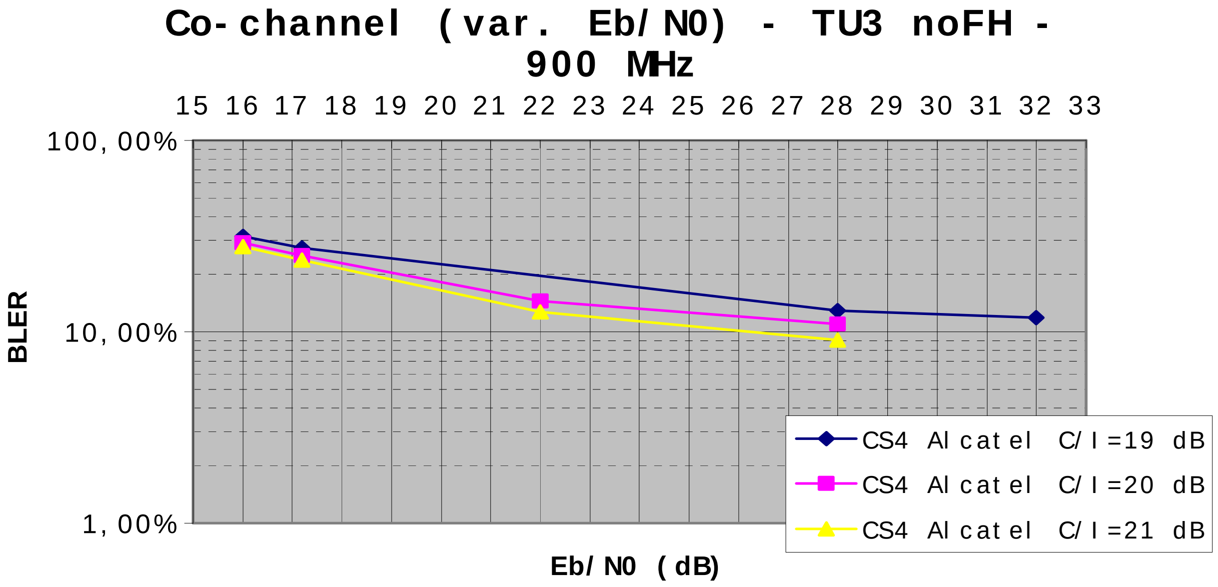


Figure 6 : TU 3 no FH interference simulations (var. Eb/N0) - 900 MHz

W.6 Effect on the MS receiver Noise Factor

In document [3], it is highlighted how the Eb/N0 requirement can be derived into a requirement on Noise Factor of the MS receiver.

With the proposed relaxations :

- in TU3 no FH case : the maximum receiver Noise Factor at SL=-70 dBm (Signal Level (SL) = -93 + C/I +2 dB) is 23,5 dB
- in TU50 no FH @ 900 MHz case : the maximum receiver Noise Factor at SL=-67 dBm is 25 dB
- in TU50 no FH @ 1800 MHz case : the maximum receiver Noise Factor at SL=-64 dBm is 27,5 dB

These requirements are comparable with the other requirements for CS1, CS2 and CS3 in different propagation conditions, which are in the range 23 to 28 dB (refer to document [3]) and seem therefore acceptable from an MS implementation point of view.

W.7 Conclusion

As requested in last SMG2 WPB meeting in Sophia, Alcatel further investigated the problems of GPRS interference performance with CS4 in TU3 no FH (900 MHz) and TU50 no FH (900 and 1800 MHz) propagation conditions, on the basis of simulations with receiver impairments. The results presented in this paper show that a C/Ic relaxation of 2 dB for CS4 - TU3 no FH and CS4 - TU50 no FH (1800 MHz) and of 1 dB for CS4 - TU50 no FH (900 MHz), allows to solve these problems : the 10% BLER performance is achieved with these relaxations at Eb/N0 very close to 28 dB, which was the original assumption of 05.50 simulations. A more reasonable constraint on the Noise Factor of the GPRS receiver is also finally obtained.

These relaxations are proposed to be introduced :

- for TU50 no FH in the 900 MHz and in the 1800 MHz bands
- for TU3 no FH in the 900 MHz band and for TU1.5 no FH in the 1800 MHz band, as these reference environments are equivalent.

CRs against GSM 05.05 Release 97, 98 and 99 are proposed for approval in SMG2 WPB in Tdoc SMG2 91/00, 92/00 and 93/00.

Annex X:
8-PSK Scenarios

X.1 Assumptions

Noise bandwidth of the uplink and downlink is:	200 kHz
BTS Transmit Power 900 MHz:	43 dBm
BTS Transmit Power 1800 MHz:	43 dBm
MS Transmit Power 900 MHz	33 dBm
MS Transmit Power 1800 MHz	30 dBm
BTS Noise Floor (200 kHz)	-112 dBm
MS Noise Floor (200 kHz)	-110 dBm

X.2 Closest Approach

In this situation it is necessary to understand how close an MS can be to a BTS and still maintain an operational up and downlink.

X.2.1 Closest Approach, Coordinated

X.2.1.1 Closest Approach BTS Transmitting, Coordinated

X.2.1.1.1 Nominal Error Rate Requirement at High Input Levels

An MS is specified to operate properly until the received tone exceeds -26 dBm for MS operating in the GSM 900 band and the DCS1800 band.

For a BTS transmitting 43 dBm with an antenna gain of 10 dBi this implies that the coupling loss would need to be:

Transmit Power + Antenna Gain (MS + BTS) - Static Level Req.

43 + 10 - (-26) = 79 dB

For a BTS which provides downlink power control the required coupling loss is reduced by the amount of power control. Assuming 30 dB of forward link dynamic power control this becomes:

Transmit Power + Antenna Gain (MS + BTS) - Power Control - Static Level Req.

43 + 10 - 30 - (-26) = 49 dB

X.2.1.1.2 MS Receiver Intermodulation Characteristics

In a situation where the BTS is transmitting multiple carriers at regular frequency spacing as would be the case for regular frequency reuse plans the MS will experience the generation if intermodulation products on it operating channel. Working backwards from the MS intermodulation characteristics in GSM 05.05 it can be shown that the input third order intercept of a MS is:

-9.5 dBm for GSM 900

-18.5 dBm for DCS 1800

Since the interfering tones, which are causing the MS to generate intermodulation products, are communicating with other mobiles in the same cell they can be assumed to be transmitting at maximum power. To operate MCS 1 at close range the intermodulation products must be at least 8 dB below the desired signal. To run MCS 9 the intermodulation products must be at least 24 dB below the desired signal.

Given a maximum allowable signal on channel of -26 dBm the intermodulation products need to be at least 8 and 24 dB below the desired signal to enable MCS 1 or MCS 9 respectively. The allowable intermodulation products are then -34 dBm and - 50 dBm. The following assumes that the desired and interfering signals are at the same power level out of the BTS. Where downlink power control is used on the desired channel the acceptable intermodulation energy is reduced and the required coupling loss for the interfering tones would have to be adjusted.

For GSM 900 the two rates are enabled with input interfering signal levels of:

Input power at MS = (Intermod Product + 2*IIP3)/3

(-34 + 2*(-9.5))/3 = -17.7 dBm

Input power at MS = (Intermod Product + 2*IIP3)/3

(-50 + 2*(-9.5))/3 = -23.0 dBm

For DCS 1800 the two rates are enabled with input interfering signal levels of:

Input power at MS = (Intermod Product + 2*IIP3)/3

(-34 + 2*(-18.5))/3 = -23.7 dBm

Input power at MS = (Intermod Product + 2*IIP3)/3

(-50 + 2*(-18.5))/3 = -29.0 dBm

	GSM 900		DCS 1800	
Rate	MCS1	MCS 9	MCS 1	MCS 9
BTS Transmit (dBm)	43.0	43.0	43.0	43.0
Antenna Gain (dBi)	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0
Tolerable Signal (dBm)	-17.7	-23.0	-23.7	-29.0
Coupling loss Req'd (dB)	70.7	76.0	76.7	82.0*

Table X.1 Minimum coupling losses based on MS receiver intermodulation requirements.

*When there is no power control the minimum coupling loss is 79 dB due to NER requirements. This will put desired signal at -26 dBm. With 82 dBm the desired signal goes to -29 dB and the intermodulation tones are at -50 dBm. This is 3 dB short of assumed MCS 9 operation at 24 dB Increasing the coupling loss 1.5 dB drops the desired by 1.5 abd the intermod products by 4.5 which then gived the required 24 dB.

X.2.1.2 Closest Approach MS Transmitting, Coordinated

X.2.1.2.1 Nominal Error Rate at High Input Levels

A BTS is required to operate properly until the received tone exceeds -26 dBm for BTS operating in the GSM 900 band and the DCS1800 band.

X.2.1.2.1.1 GSM 900 BTS

For a MS which is operating with uplink power control the required coupling loss is reduced by the amount of power control. For a class E1 mobile in the GSM 900 band the power control range is 28 dB and the resulting coupling loss required is:

Transmit Power + Antenna Gain (MS + BTS) - Power Control - Static Level Req.

33 + 10 - 28 - (-26) = 41 dB

X.2.1.2.1.2 DCS 1800 BTS

For a MS which is operating with uplink power control the required coupling loss is reduced by the amount of power control. For a class E1 mobile in the DCS 1800 band the power control range is 30 dB and the resulting coupling loss required is:

Transmit Power + Antenna Gain (MS + BTS) - Power Control - Static Level Req.

30 + 10 - 30 - (-26) = 36 dB

X.2.1.2.2 BTS Receiver Intermodulation Characteristics

In a situation where a BTS is receiving multiple high power carriers at regular frequency spacings from multiple close in coordinated mobiles, which are under power control, the BTS will experience the generation if intermodulation products on its operating channel. Working backwards from the BTS intermodulation characteristics in GSM 05.05 it can be shown that the input third order intercept of a BTS is:

-9.5 dBm for GSM 900

-18.5 dBm for DCS 1800

In the case of coordinated mobiles in close approach to the BTS the uplink power control protects the BTS. To operate MCS 1 at close range the intermodulation products must be at least 8 dB below the desired signal. To run MCS 9 the intermodulation products must be at least 24 dB below the desired signal.

Given a maximum allowable signal on channel of -26 dBm the intermodulation products need to be at least 8 and 24 dB below the desired signal to enable MCS 1 or MCS 9 respectively. The allowable intermodulation products are then -34 dBm and - 50 dBm

For GSM 900 the two rates are enabled with input interfering signal levels of:

Input power at MS = (Intermod Product + 2*IIP3)/3

(-34 + 2*(-9.5))/3 = -17.7 dBm

Input power at MS = (Intermod Product + 2*IIP3)/3

(-50 + 2*(-9.5))/3 = -23.0 dBm

For DCS 1800 the two rates are enabled with input interfering signal levels of:

Input power at MS = (Intermod Product + 2*IIP3)/3

(-34 + 2*(-18.5))/3 = -23.7 dBm

Input power at MS = (Intermod Product + 2*IIP3)/3

(-50 + 2*(-18.5))/3 = -29.0 dBm

	GSM 900		DCS 1800	
Rate	MCS1	MCS 9	MCS 1	MCS 9
MS Transmit (dBm)	5.0	5.0	0.0	0.0
Antenna Gain (dBi)	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0
Tolerable Signal (dBm)	-17.7	-23.0	-23.7	-29.0
Coupling loss Req'd (dB)	32.7	38.0	33.7	39

Table X.2 Minimum coupling losses based on BTS receiver intermodulation requirements.

X.2.1.3 Minimum Coupling for Coordinated Case

X.2.1.3.1 Downlink Power Control Enabled

If the MS receive intermodulation is not implicated then the downlink coupling loss could be as low as 49 dB where downlink power control is deployed. When MS intermodulation performance is implicated the minimum coupling loss required is 71 dB for GSM 900 and 77 dB for DCS 1800 for a functional coordinated link in the up and downlink (MCS 1). The limiting case was found to be in the downlink direction.

X.2.1.3.2 No Downlink Power Control

The worst case is found in subclause X.2.1.1.1, where downlink power control is not used, and was calculated to be 79 dB for GSM 900 and DCS 1800 due to nominal error rate specifications for EDGE MS. For GSM 900 this is sufficient to get the intermodulation products low enough to allow for MCS 9 operation. For DCS 1800 MCS 9 operations would require a coupling loss of 83.5 dB before the signal to intermod product ratio is large enough.

X.2.2 Closest Approach, Uncoordinated

The case of interest for uncoordinated MS/BTS interactions is the scenario where the MS is far from its serving cell and close to a BTS operating in a different sub-band. No power control can be assumed in the up or down link.

X.2.2.1 Closest Approach BTS Transmitting, Uncoordinated

X.2.2.1.1 Noise Masking

This occurs as a result of the wideband mask of the BTS, and it is a function of the frequency offset. Since the MS is far away from its serving cell it is assumed to be operating close to its sensitivity level. Given a noise floor, which is at -110 dBm (200 kHz) in the MS, the required coupling loss to get the BTS noise down to the MS noise floor can be calculated:

Frequency Band	GSM 900		DCS 1800	
Frequency Offset	1800 kHz	6000 kHz	1800 kHz	6000 kHz
BTS Power (dBm)	43	43	43	43
Mask (dBc) (200 kHz)	-80	-85	-80	-85
Antenna Gain (MS+BTS)	10	10	10	10
Noise Floor (dBm)	-110	-110	-110	-110
Coupling loss (dB)	83	78	83	78

Table X.3 Coupling loss required due to BTS noise masking.

X.2.2.1.2 MS Receiver Intermodulation Characteristics

From GSM 05.05 the input levels, which will generate intermodulation products at the same level as the MS noise floor are:

-43 dBm for GSM 900

-49 dBm for DCS 1800

	GSM 900	DCS 1800
BTS Transmit (dBm)	43.0	43.0
Antenna Gain (dBi)	10.0	10.0
Tolerable Signal (dBm)	-43.0	-49.0
Coupling loss Req'd (dB)	96.0	102.0

Table X.4 Minimum coupling losses based on MS receiver intermodulation requirements.

X.2.2.1.3 BTS Tx Inter/Intra Modulation Masking

This occurs as a result of the inter/intra modulation products of the BTS, and it is a function of the frequency offset. It should be noted that, the tx inter/intra modulation products generated by the BTS will be at exactly the same frequencies as those generated in the MS due to the transmit tones from the BTS. Since the MS is far away from its serving cell it is assumed to be operating close to its sensitivity level. Given a noise floor, which is at -110 dBm (200 kHz) in the MS, the required coupling loss to get the BTS inter/intra modulation products down to the MS noise floor can be calculated:

Frequency Band	GSM 900	DCS 1800
BTS Power (dBm)	43	43
Mask (dBc)	-80	-80
Antenna Gain (MS+BTS)	10	10
Noise Floor (dBm)	-110	-110
Coupling loss (dB)	83	83

Table X.5 Coupling loss required due to BTS Tx inter/intra modulation masking.

X.2.2.2 Minimum Coupling for Uncoordinated Case

From the above analysis the normal degradation mode will be that of BTS noise masking of the receiver performance. In that instance, depending on the relative frequency offset, the minimum coupling loss which allows an uncoordinated MS to operate is 83 dB for offsets from 1800 to 6000 kHz and 78 dB for >6000 kHz offset.

Where the uncoordinated MS is operating on an ARFCN, which is exposed to intermodulation products, it has been found that the MS receiver performance limits the link, since the BTS tx intermodulation products and the MS receiver intermodulation products will land on exactly the same frequencies. In that scenario, the required coupling losses were found to be 96 and 102 dB respectively for 900 and 1800 MHz operation respectively.

X.3 Analysis of Specifications

Given the analysis in subclause X.2 to establish propagation conditions which will allow coordinated and uncoordinated MSs to successfully operate on the up and down links this section will examine the specifications of GSM 05.05 for EDGE operation.

X.3.1 Scenario 1: Single BTS and MS

X.3.1.1 Specifications Affected (GSM 05.05)

Subclause 6.1	Nominal error rates (maximum receiver levels)
Subclause 6.2	Nominal error rates (maximum receiver levels)

X.3.1.2 Maximum Receiver Levels

This case has been analyzed in subclause X.2.1.1.1.

X.3.1.3 Reference Sensitivity Level

X.3.1.3.1 Coverage Limit

The absolute sensitivity of the BTS and MS will determine the coverage characteristics of the BTS and MS. The actual result is a complex function of building geometry, antenna height, building penetration loss, and a number of other factors.

X.3.1.3.2 Link Balance

Link balance for symmetric operation is determined from relatively few factors assuming that the uplink and downlink channels are reciprocal. Assuming equivalent Eb/No for the MS and BTS, and given a MS with a transmit power of 33 dBm at 900 MHz, and 30 dBm at 1800 MHz, and a receiver noise floor of -110 dBm in both bands, and a BTS with a noise floor of -112 dBm and a diversity benefit of 5 dB in the uplink balance occurs at the following BTS power:

BTS Transmit Power (Balanced) = MS tx power - BTS noise floor + BTS Diversity + MS noise floor

For 900 MHz

BTS Transmit Power (Balanced) = 33 dBm - (-112 dBm) + 5 dB + (-110 dBm) = 40 dBm

For 1800 MHz

BTS Transmit Power (Balanced) = 30 dBm - (-112 dBm) + 5 dB + (-110 dBm) = 37 dBm

X.3.2 Scenario 2: Multiple MS and BTS, Coordinated

Coordinated operation is assumed ie BTS's belong to same PLMN. Collocated MS's and collocated BTS's are dealt with in Scenarios 4 and 5, respectively.

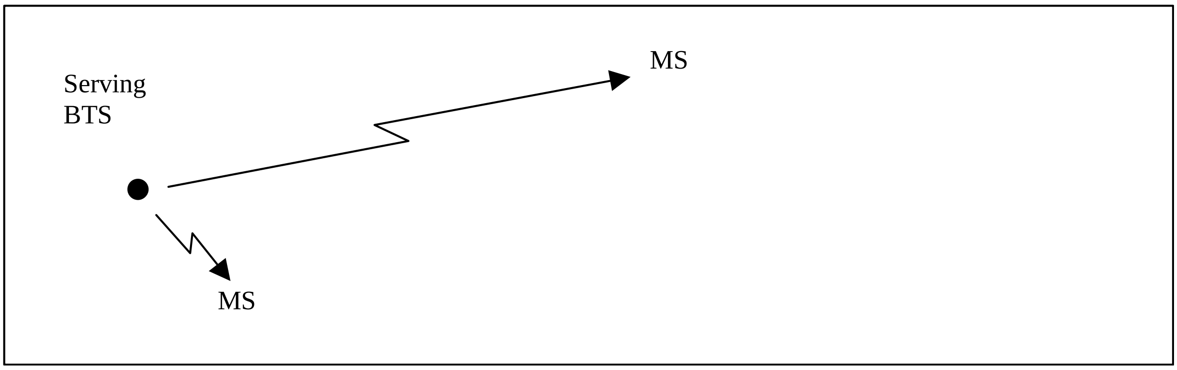


Figure X.1 Near/far.

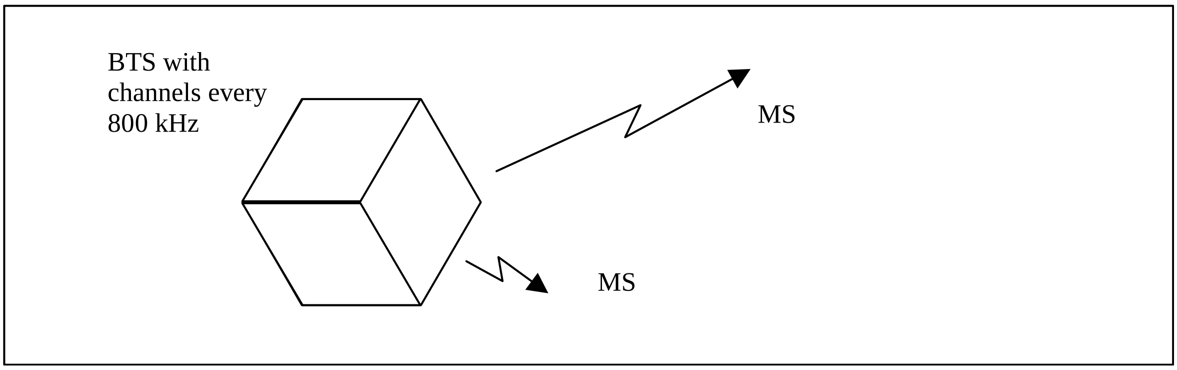


Figure X.2 BTS intermodulation.

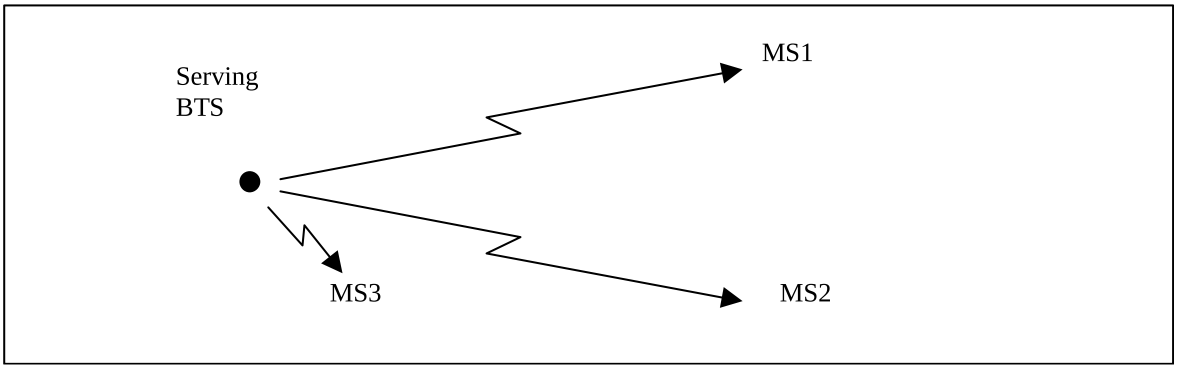


Figure X.3 Intra BTS intermodulation.

X.3.2.1 Specifications Affected (GSM 05.05)

Subclause 4.1 Adaptive power control

Subclause 4.2	Output RF spectrum
Subclause 4.7.1	Intermodulation attenuation, BTS (see Figure X.2)
Subclause 4.7.2	Intra BTS intermodulation attenuation (see Figure X.3)
Subclause 5.1	Blocking, in-band (near/far effect)
Subclause 6.3	Reference interference level

X.3.2.2 Adaptive Power Control (GSM 05.05, Subclause 4.1)

This was examined in X.2.1.1.1.

X.3.2.3 Output RF Spectrum (GSM 05.05, Subclause 4.1)

In closest approach to a BTS, a single MS will transmit energy into adjacent channels and beyond. For channels, which are offset from the MS ARFCN by 200, 400, and 600 kHz:

[TBD]

For larger offsets the amount of desensitization of the BTS can be calculated.

For GSM 900, given a BTS noise floor -112 dBm, with downlink power control enabled the closest approach mobile will induce:

Offset	1800 kHz	3000 kHz	6000 kHz
Mobile Power (dBm)	5	5	5
Mask at offset (200 kHz) (dB)	-68	-70	-76
Coupling loss (dB)	-49	-49	-49
Antenna Gain (MS + BTS)	10	10	10
Mask Power at BTS (dBm)	-102	-104	-110
Desensitization (dB)	10.4	8.6	4.1

Table X.6 Desensitization of BTS due to the presence of close in coordinated GSM 900 MS.

For DCS 1800, given a BTS noise floor -112 dBm, with downlink power control enabled the closest approach mobile will induce:

Offset	1800 kHz	6000 kHz
Mobile Power (dBm)	0	0
Mask at offset (200 kHz) (dB)	-64	-72
Antenna Gain (MS + BTS)	10	10
Coupling loss (dB)	-49	-49
Mask Power at BTS (dBm)	-103	-111
Desensitization (dB)	9.5	3.5

Table X.7 Desensitization of BTS due to the presence of close in coordinated DCS 1800 MS.

X.3.2.4 Inter/Intra Modulation Attenuation, BTS (GSM 05.05, Subclauses 4.7.1 and 4.7.2)

With 30 dB of coupling assumed between the antenna faces of a sectorized cellsite the intermodulation distortions should be same or less than the allowable intra BTS intermodulation levels.

For coordinated system with even channel spacing inter/intra modulation products can land on channel as in band interference.

Given an MCS 9 channel that requires, for example, 25 dB of C/I, and the BTS supports 30 dB of dynamic power control then the system would have to provide at least 55 dB of suppression to mitigate the impact of Inter/Intra Modulation products.

The uncoordinated problem is examined in more detail in X.5 below.

The impacts of transmit and receive intermodulations are also examined in X.2.1.1.2, X.2.2.1.2, X.2.2.1.3, and X.5.

X.3.2.5 Blocking (GSM 05.05, Subclause 5.1)

Blocking occurs when a receiver is unable to distinguish between a low power desired signal in the presence of a high powered interferer which is not on channel (distinct from C/I).

In a coordinated scenario these conditions are manifest where a desired MS is operating far from the serving BTS and there are other coordinated mobile in close proximity to the BTS. This case was analyzed for the uplink in X.3.2.3 and from those results it can be seen that the desensitization associated with the MS wide band noise is in fact a dominant mechanism for operational blocking.

For the downlink the coordinated case is not applicable since a single BTS has all of its transceivers in one place.

In the case of multiple BTSs this is an issue of network C/I performance and is a function of the deployed channel reuse rate. This is covered more extensively in X.4.

X.3.2.6 Reference Interference Level

[TBD]

X.3.3 Scenario 3: Multiple MS and BTS, Uncoordinated

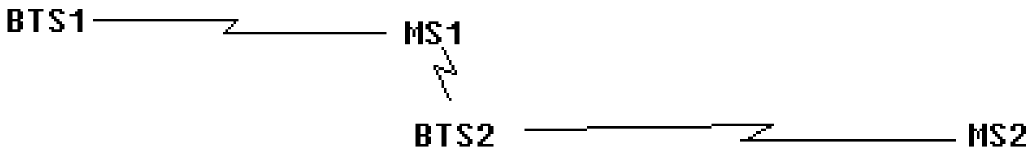


Figure X.4 Blocking scenario.

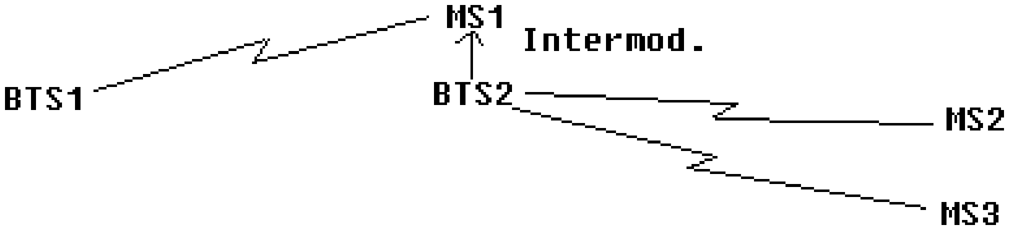


Figure X.5 BTS transmit intermodulation masking and MS transmit mask.

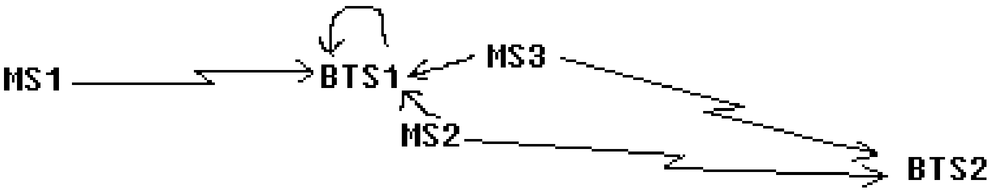


Figure X.6 BTS receiver intermodulation masking.

X.3.3.1 Specifications Affected (GSM 05.05)

Subclause 4.2 Output RF spectrum

Subclause 4.7	Intermodulation (see Figure X.5)
Subclause 5.1	Blocking, in-band, up and down links (see Figure X.4)
Subclause 5.3	Intermodulation, in-band (see Figure X.6)

X.3.3.2 Output RF Spectrum (GSM 05.05, Subclause 4.2)

This case was examined in X.2.2.1.1 for the downlink.

Uplink:

In closest approach to a BTS, a single MS will transmit energy into adjacent channels and beyond. For larger offsets, which is the case that applies to uncoordinated scenarios, the amount of desensitization of the BTS can be calculated.

For GSM 900, given a BTS noise floor -112 dBm, noise masking only, a closest approach uncoordinated mobile will induce:

Offset	1800 kHz	3000 kHz	6000 kHz
Mobile Power (dBm)	33	33	33
Mask at offset (200 kHz) (dB)	-68	-70	-76
Antenna Gain (BTS + MS)	10	10	10
Coupling loss (dB)	-83	-83	-78
Mask Power at BTS (dBm)	-108	-110	-111
Desensitization (dB)	5.4	4.1	3.5
MS Power at BTS (dBm)	-40	-40	-35

Table X.8 Desensitization of BTS due to the presence of close in uncoordinated GSM 900 MS.

For DCS 1800, given a BTS noise floor -112 dBm, noise masking only, a closest approach uncoordinated mobile will induce:

Offset	1800 kHz	6000 kHz
Mobile Power (dBm)	30	30
Mask at offset (200 kHz) (dB)	-70	-78
Antenna Gain (MS + BTS)	10	10
Coupling loss (dB)	-83	-78
Mask Power at BTS (dBm)	-113	-116
Desensitization (dB)	2.5	1.5
MS Power at BTS (dBm)	-43	-38

Table X.9: Desensitization of BTS due to the presence of close in uncoordinated DCS 1800 MS.

From the above, it can be seen, that even with relatively large coupling losses the wideband noise of the mobile is a dominant desensitization mechanism.

In situations where an uncoordinated mobile is experiencing receive intermodulation events the coupling loss required for it to work are much larger and would not be able to get close enough to the BTS to measurably desensitize it.

X.3.3.3 Transmit Intermodulation (GSM 05.05, Subclause 4.7)

This case was examined in X.2.2.1.3.

X.3.3.4 Blocking, In-Band Up and Down Links (GSM 05.05, Subclause 5.1)

The downlink scenario is examined in X.2.2.1.1.

Uplink:

From X.2.2.2, the minimum coupling losses when intermodulation products are not involved are 83 dB for MS operating 1800 to 6000 kHz away from the desired channel, and 78 dB for MS >6000 kHz offset in frequency. From the BTS these coupling losses set the noise at the MS antenna equal to the noise in the MS which yields a 3 dB desensitization in the MS. In the reverse direction these coupling losses yield:

MS Power + Antenna (BTS + MS) - Coupling loss

33 dBm + 10 dB - 83 dB = -40 dBm at the BTS (GSM 900, 1800 to 6000 kHz offset)

30 dBm + 10 dB - 83 dB = -43 dBm at the BTS (DCS 1800, 1800 to 6000 kHz offset)

33 dBm + 10 dB - 78 dB = -35 dBm at the BTS (GSM 900, > 6000 kHz offset)

30 dBm + 10 dB - 78 dB = -38 dBm at the BTS (DCS 1800, > 6000 kHz offset)

For these values the associated amount of BTS desensitization is:

	GSM 900		DCS 1800	
Offset	3000 kHz	6000 kHz	1800 kHz	6000 kHz
MS Mask (200 kHz) (dB)	-70	-76	-70	-78
Signal Level (dBm)	-40	-35	-43	-38
Noise Power at BTS (dBm)	-110	-111	-113	-116
Noise Floor of BTS (dBm)	-112	-112	-112	-112
Desensitization (dB)	4.1	3.5	2.5	1.5

Table X.10 Achievable Operational Blocking Levels

These values represent the signals that would be observed in practice at a BTS that is operating in a near far relationship with different PLMN. Since the exiting test levels in GSM 05.05 subclause 5.1 are significantly higher than the above the BTS response to the MS tone levels received operationally there is significant margin in that specification.

When the frequency planning of the serving network is such that the MS generates intermodulation products which land on its operating channel the MS will need significantly more coupling loss in order to operate.

X.3.3.5 BTS Receiver Intermodulation (GSM 05.05, Subclause 5.3)

From GSM 05.50, the input levels, which will generate intermodulation products at the same level as the BTS noise floor are:

-43 dBm for GSM 900

-49 dBm for DCS 1800

	GSM 900	DCS 1800
MS Transmit (dBm)	33.0	30.0
Antenna Gain (dBi)	10.0	10.0
Tolerable Signal (dBm)	-43.0	-49.0
Coupling loss Req'd (dB)	86.0	89.0

Table X.11 Minimum Coupling Losses Based on MS receiver Intermodulation Requirements.

If the coupling loss exceeds this the intermodulation products will not be high enough to cause a problem. As noted in X.2.2.2 in situations where intermodulation generation is possible on the up and down links the coupling losses required to allow a mobile to operate are much larger than and as such this should not be a normal operational impairment.

X.4 C/I Limited Coordinated MS and BTS

This is the situation where a mobile is operating in a system with many BTSs arranged in regular reuse patterns. In this case it is necessary to understand the baseline C/I condition that will apply in the coverage area. The following assumes that the system would be otherwise functional from an absolute signal level standpoint.

X.4.1 N=4/12 Reuse Pattern, Geometric C/I

The following figure shows the mean C/I levels expected in a N=4/12 reuse pattern. This was generated assuming a propagation factor of 38 dB/decade.

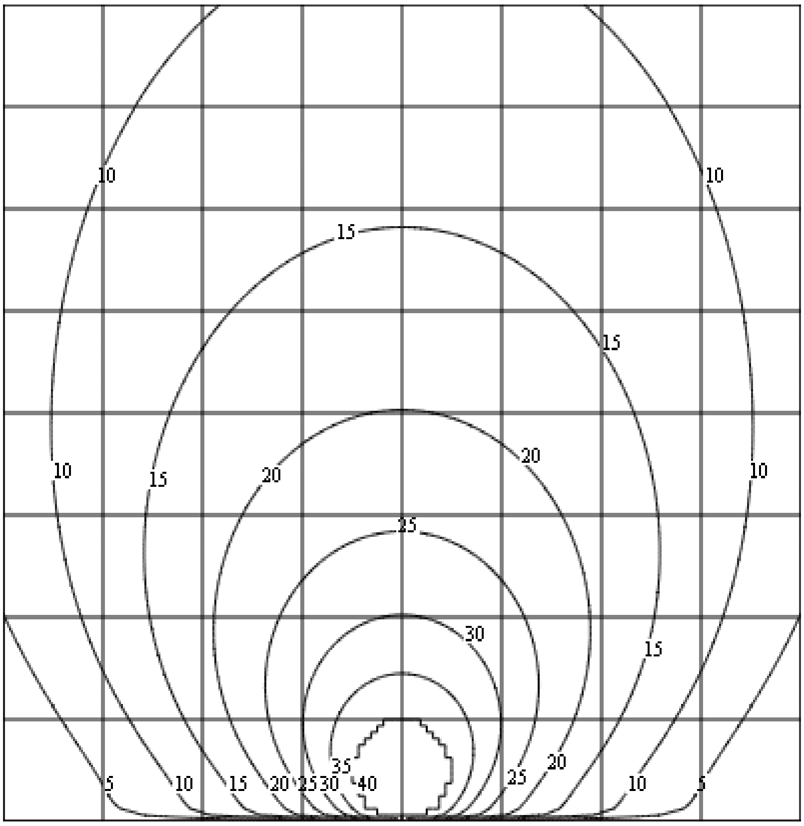


Figure X.7 Geometric C/I contours for N=4/12 reuse pattern.

X.4.2 N=4/12 Reuse Pattern, C/I CDF

The following figure shows the C/I CDF that corresponds to Figure X.7 with the assumption of a 6 dB standard deviation for the shadowing component.

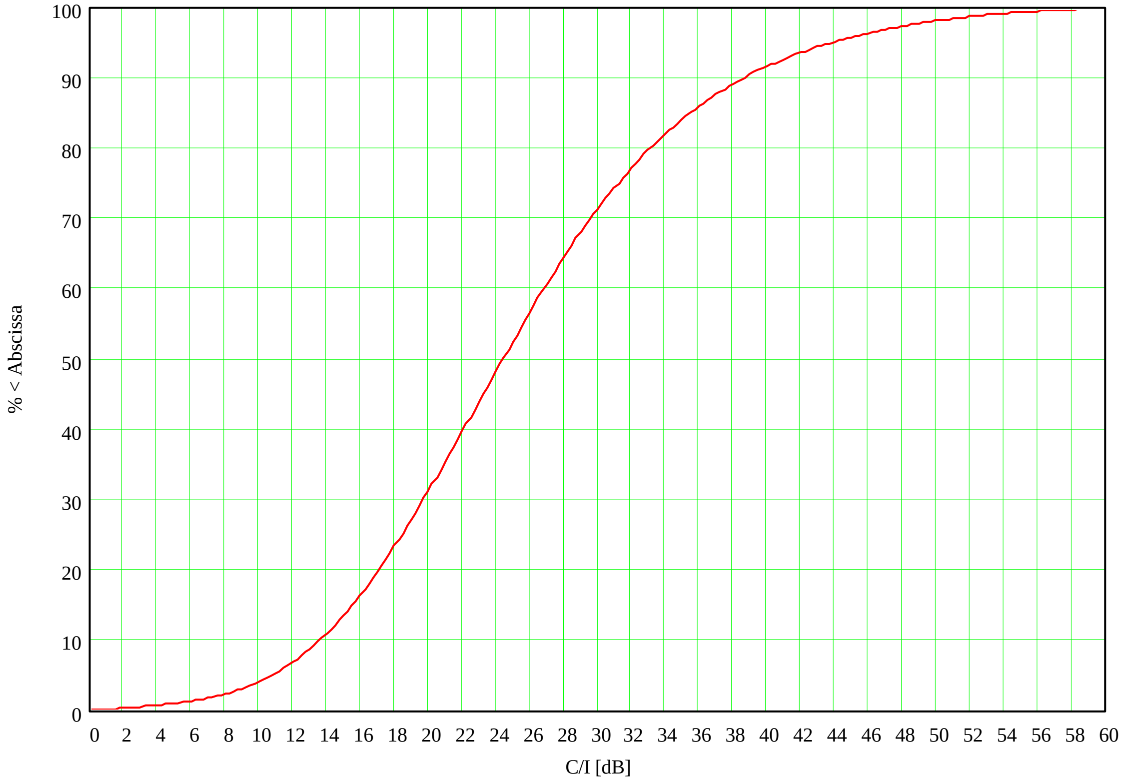


Figure X.8 CDF of C/I for an N=4/12 reuse plan with shadowing standard deviation of 6 dB.

X.4.3 Adjacent Channel Interference

Adjacent channel interference can be represented as a co channel interference which the system is more tolerant of.

[TBD]

X.5 BTS Inter and Intra Modulation

BTS inter and intra modulations are additional sources of interfering energy between systems. For coordinated MS if the inter/intra modulation energy is too high it would have the potential to limit the available downlink power control range. For uncoordinated MS there is potential for inter/intra modulation components falling on channel and causing undesirable interference. The worst case for the uncoordinated systems is that the serving and interfering cell are at opposite ends of the same coverage area with the uncoordinated MS close to the interferer and far from the serving BTS.

In operation, the use of DTX and forward link power control will significantly reduce the actual inter/intra modulation energy radiated from the interfering BTS. Figure X.7 illustrated the inherent C/I baseline for the network deployed on an N=4/12 reuse plan. That figure does not show the impact of shadowing, however, it can be seen that the average C/I at the cell EDGE at the extreme opposite end of the coverage is ~ 20 dB. It is thus desirable then that the inter /intra modulation performance would not adversely impact that performance.

X.5.1 Simplified Analysis

The following analysis examines the impact on performance of -60 dBc intra/inter intermodulation. (while the calculations make use of absolute values for distance, the results are dependent upon relative geometry).

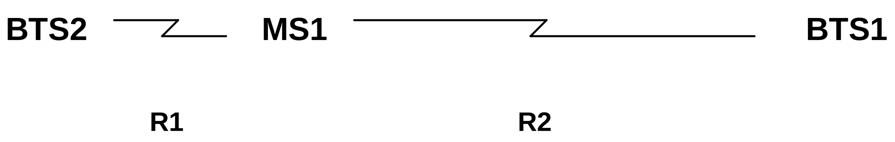


Figure X.9 Representation of relative geometry for BTS intra/inter modulation performance.

The parameters are:

IMD = -60 dBc (intra BTS intermodulation attentuation level).

γ = 38 (decade loss figure).

$DCI = 20$ **dB (minimum C/I).**

$DR = 10^{\frac{IMD-DCI}{\gamma}} = 11.3$ **(distance ratio which will meet desired C/I given IMD).**

$R_1 + R_2 = 1000$ **m (maximum cell site radius).**

$DR = \frac{R_2}{R_1}$ **(base to coordinated mobile R_2 / interfering base to mobile R_1).**

$R = (R_1 + R_2)\frac{DR}{1+DR} = 918.7$ **m (R where C/I due to interfering base meets required minimum C/I).**

Because the distance to the interfering base station is small, the reduction in antenna gain has to be accounted for. An additional factor of 10 dB needs to be accounted for.

Therefore, the region below 10 dB is restricted to:

$ANT\_CORR = 10$ **dB (assumed antenna gain correction).**

$$DR = 10^{\frac{IMD-DCI+ANT\_CORR}{\gamma}} = 20.7$$

$$R = (R_1 + R_2)\frac{DR}{1+DR} = 953.9 \ \mathbf{m}$$

So in this case, it has been shown that only the last 2.6% of the range is potentially exposed.

$$\frac{R_1}{R_2} = 4.8\%$$

This is 0.23% of the area.

$$\left(\frac{R_1}{R_2}\right)^2 = 0.23\%$$

Where power control is used and when less than the maximum number of channels is operating, the actual IMD levels will be significantly reduced.

X.5.2 Normal BTS to Normal BTS (Same EIRP)

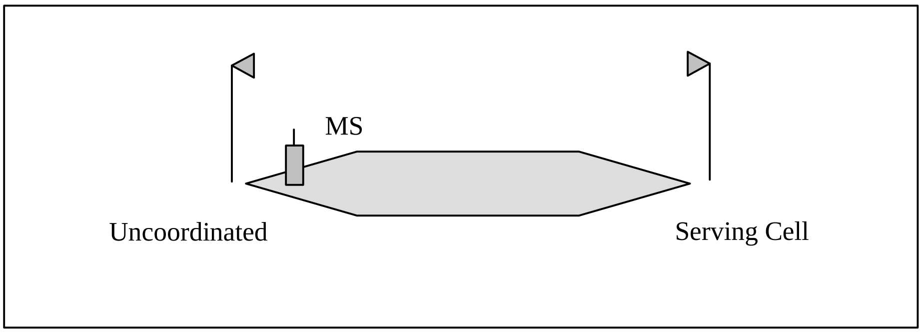


Figure X.10 Relative geometry for inter/intra modulation analysis.

The serving cell is part of a N=4/12 reuse plan. The serving cell and the uncoordinated cell are operating with the same EIRP.

In Figures X.11 and X.13 show the geometric C/I for a 60 and 70 dBc rms. interferer. The antenna height is 40 m. Low gain antennas are used which provide very little vertical pattern rolloff close in to the BTSs. Propagation constant is 38 dB per decade.

Figures X.12 and X.14 show the C/I CDFs for 60 and 70 dBc rms. interferers. There is no significant degradation compared to Figure X.8.

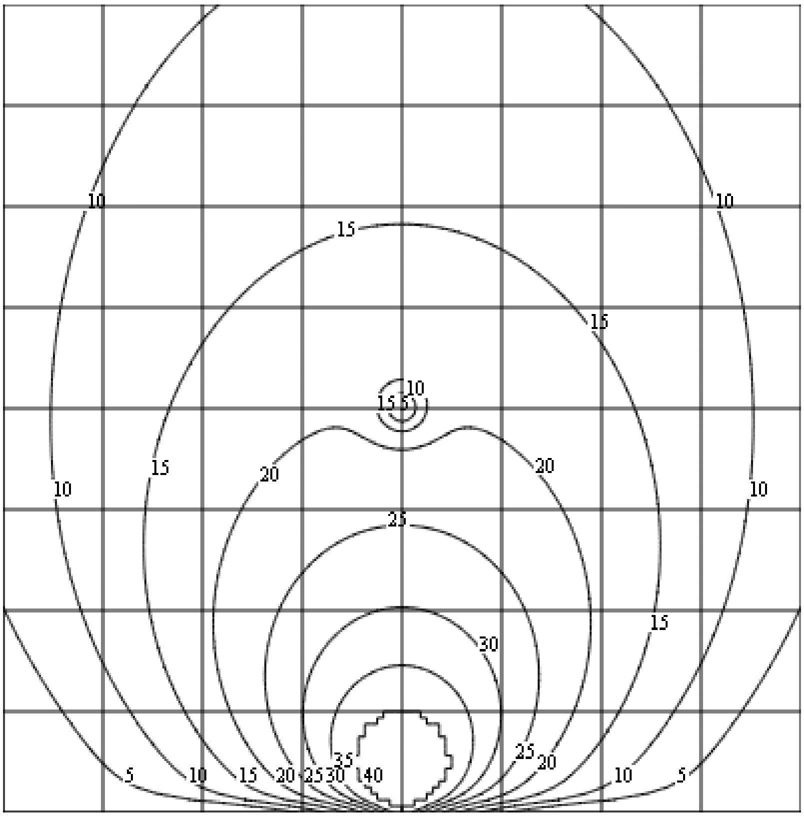


Figure X.11 Geometric C/I contours for worst-case interfering cell (interferer at -60 dBc).

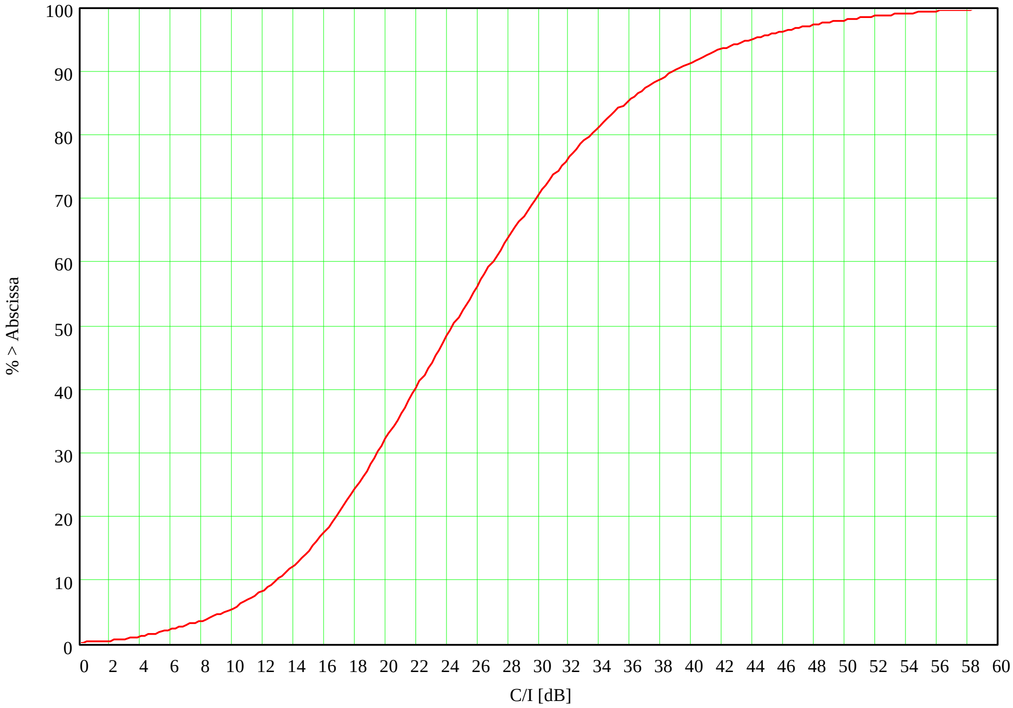


Figure X.12 C/I CDF for N=4/12 and interferer at -60 dBc, standard deviation = 6 dB.

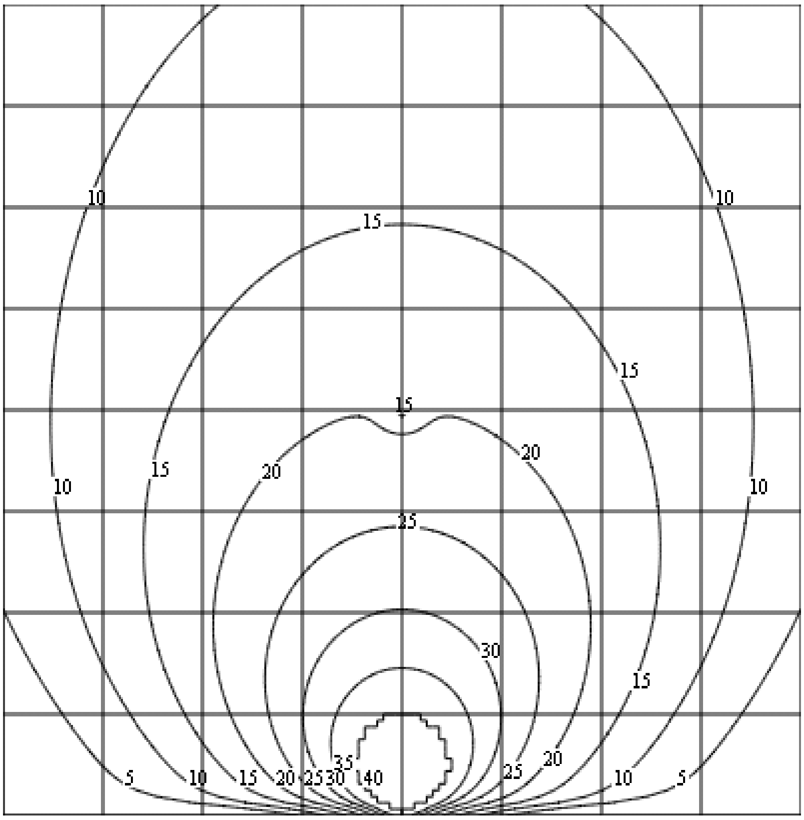


Figure X.13 Geometric C/I contours for worst-case interfering cell (interferer at -70 dBc).

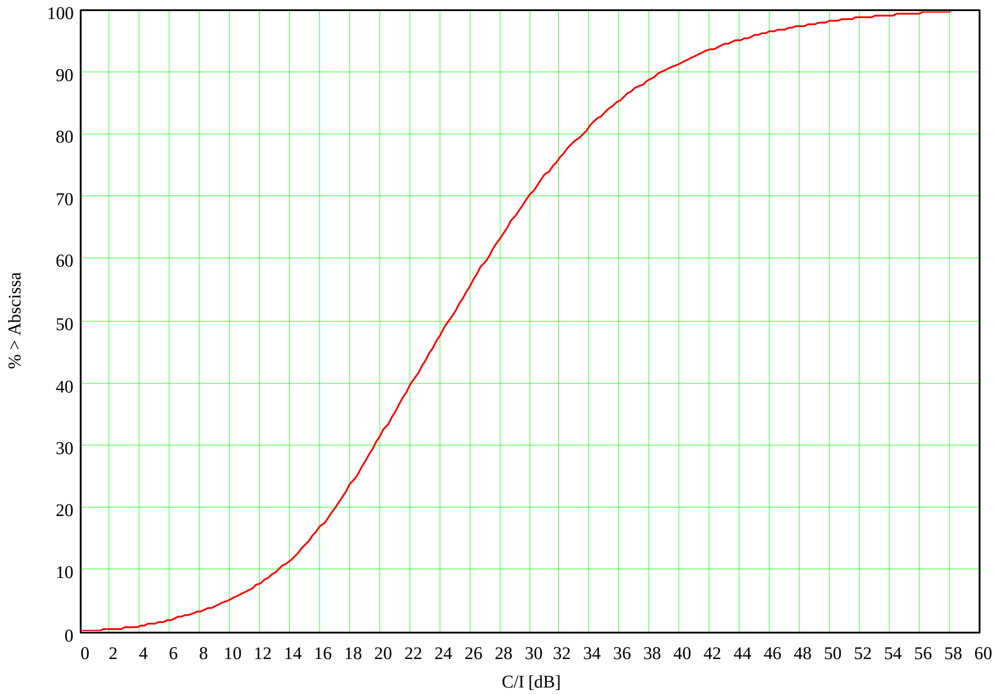


Figure X.14 C/I CDF for N=4/12 and interferer at -70 dBc, standard deviation = 6 dB.

X.5.3 Normal to Micro (Micro BTS EIRP is 20 dB less than Normal BTS)

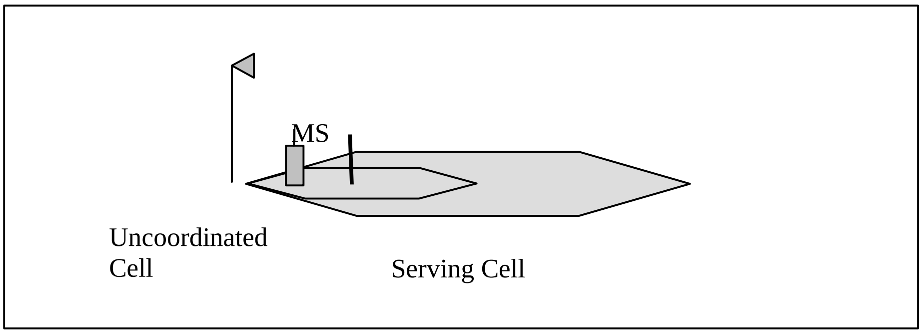


Figure X.15 Relative geometry for inter/intra modulation analysis for Normal to Micro BTS.

In this case the microcell is assumed to have an EIRP which is 20 dB less than the normal BTS. Since the normal BTS is transmitting with an EIRP which is 20 dB higher than the micro BTS the apparent inter/ intra modulation energy is 20 dB higher relative to the micro transmit power.

The serving cell is an omni microcell which is part of an N=7 reuse plan. The microcell network is assumed to have its antennas deployed at 20 m.

In Figures X.15 and X.18 show the geometric C/I for a 60 and 70 dBc rms. interferer. Thus, relative to the microcell, the intermodulation energy is apparently at 40 and 50 dBc relative to the microcell carriers. The uncoordinated antenna height is 40 m. Low gain antenna patterns are used which provide very little vertical pattern rolloff close in to the BTSs. Propagation constant is 35 dB per decade.

Figures X.17 and X.19 show the C/I CDFs for 60 and 70 dBc rms. interferers.

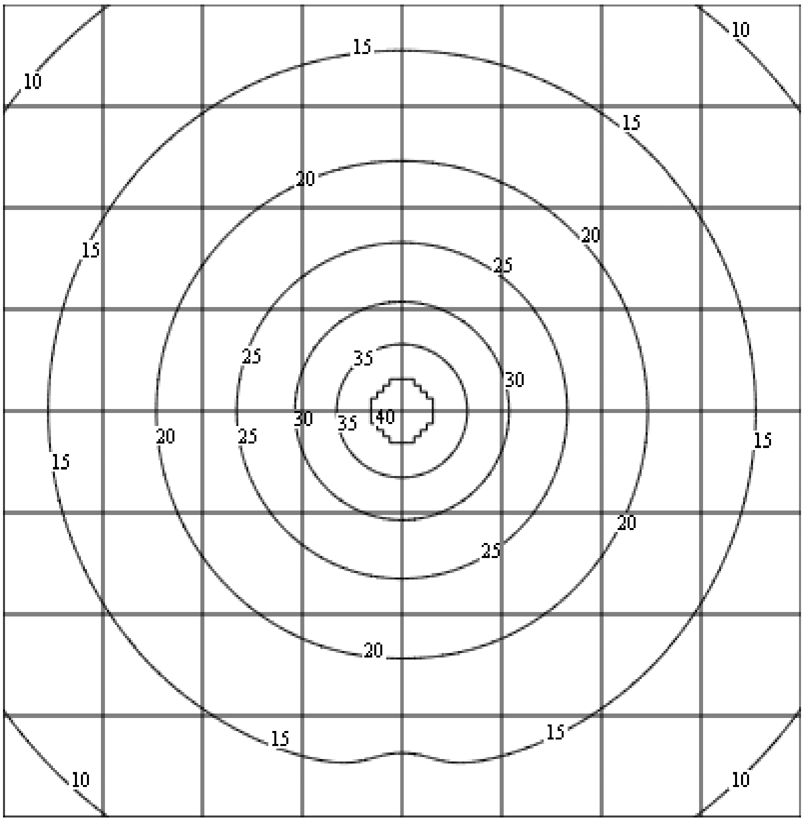


Figure X.16 Geometric C/I contours for a Microcell with Normal BTS interferer that is radiating intermodulation emissions at 40 dB rms below the Microcell EIRP.

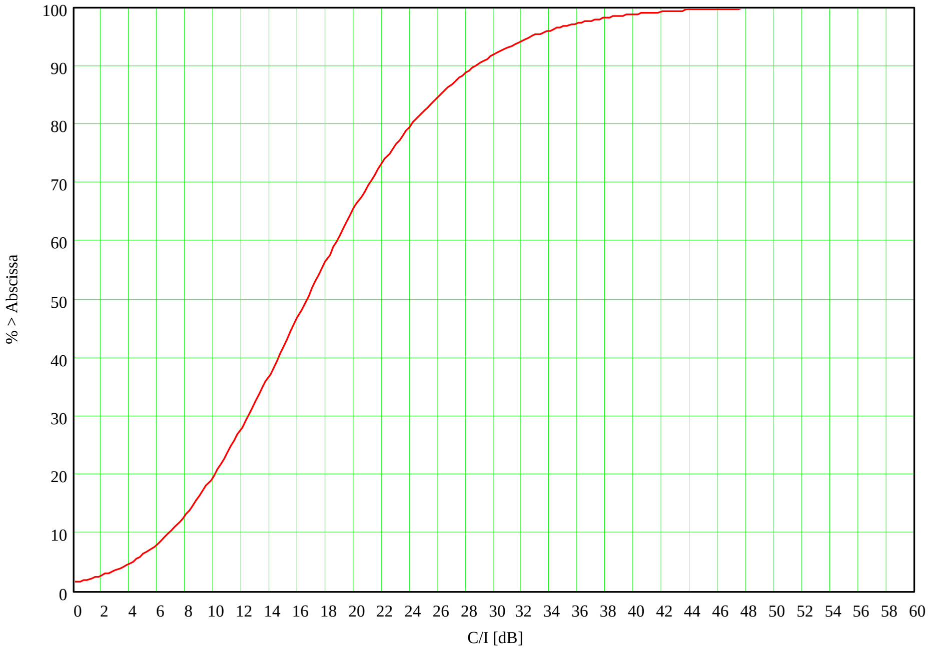


Figure X.17 C/I CDF for an N=7 omni network with an interfering Normal BTS that is radiating intermodulation emissiona at 40 dB rms below the Microcell EIRP, standard deviation = 6 dB.

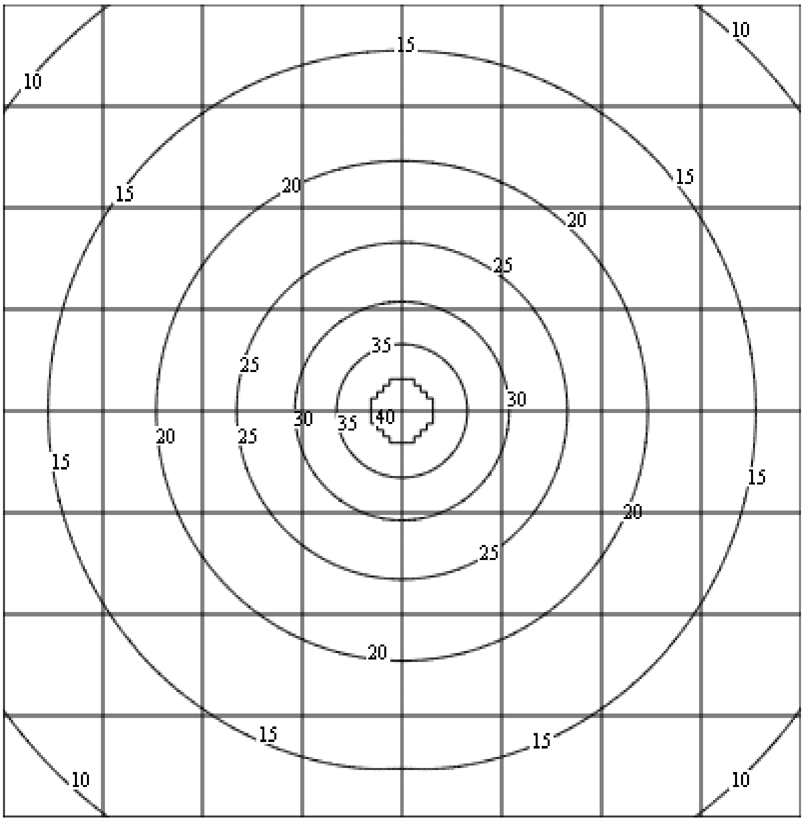


Figure X.18 Geometric C/I contours for a Microcell with Normal BTS interferer that is radiating intermodulation emissions at 50 dB rms below the Microcell EIRP.

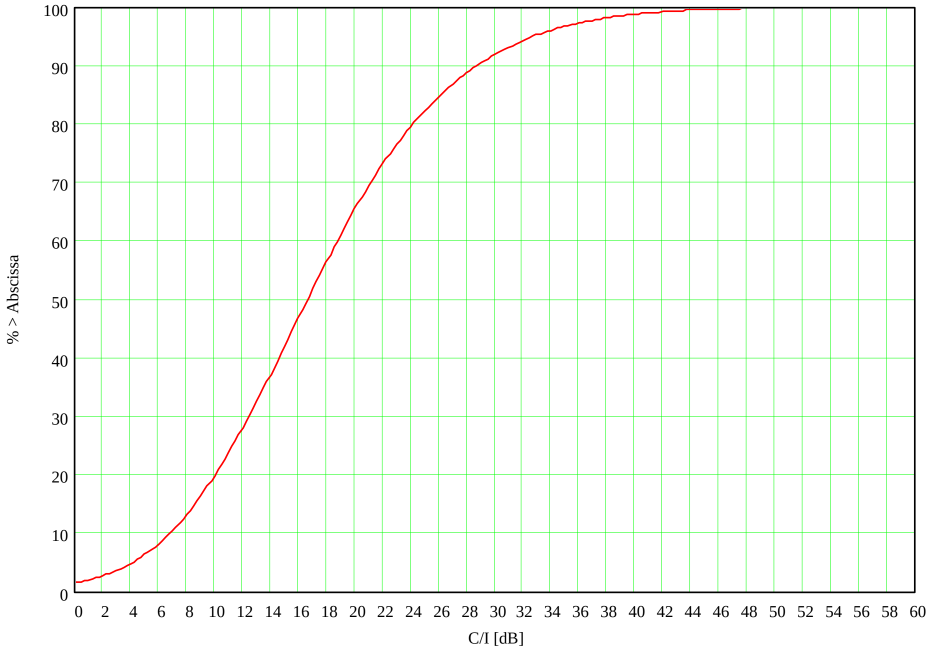


Figure X.19 C/I CDF for an N=7 omni network with an interfering Normal BTS that is radiating intermodulation emissiona at 50 dB rms below the Microcell EIRP, standard deviation = 6 dB.

Annex Y:
Change history

SPEC	SMG#	CR	PHA	VERS	NEW_VE	SUBJECT
05.50	s26	A006	R98	6.0.2	7.0.0	Pico BTS Scenarios
05.50	s29	A007	R98	7.0.0	7.1.0	Introduction of CTS system scenarios
05.50	s30	A010	R98	7.1.0	7.2.0	AMR performance simulation
05.50	s30	A008	R99	7.2.0	8.0.0	EDGE 850 MHz and 1900 MHz mixed mode scenarios
05.50	s30	A009	R99	7.2.0	8.0.0	Addition of GSM 400 system scenarios into GSM 05.50
05.50	s31	A011	R99	8.0.0	8.1.0	8-PSK scenarios in GSM 05.50
05.50	s31	A013	R99	8.0.0	8.1.0	Background Information for LCS Requirements in GSM 05.05
05.50	s31	A018	R99	8.0.0	8.1.0	Update of GPRS background information
05.50	s31b	A022	R99	8.1.0	8.2.0	BTS Synchronisation, Location Accuracy and LMU update rates

Change history

Date	TSG #	TSG Doc.	CR	Rev	Subject/Comment	Old	New
2001-04	4				Version for Release 4		4.0.0
2001-08					figures made legible	4.0.0	4.0.1
2002-06	10				Version for Release 5	4.0.1	5.0.0

History

Document history		
V5.0.0	June 2002	Publication